ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

World Journal of *Gastrointestinal Oncology*

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2023 February 15; 15(2): 215-371

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Contents

Monthly Volume 15 Number 2 February 15, 2023

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Monthly Volume 15 Number 2 February 15, 2023

Contents

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Monthly Volume 15 Number 2 February 15, 2023

Contents

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology*, Marina Senchukova, MD, PhD, Professor, Doctor, Department of Oncology, Orenburg State Medical University, Orenburg 460001, Russia. masenchukova@yandex.com

AIMS AND SCOPE

The primary aim of *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology* (*WJGO*, *World J Gastrointest Oncol*) is to provide scholars and readers from various fields of gastrointestinal oncology with a platform to publish high-quality basic and clinical research articles and communicate their research findings online.

WJGO mainly publishes articles reporting research results and findings obtained in the field of gastrointestinal oncology and covering a wide range of topics including liver cell adenoma, gastric neoplasms, appendiceal neoplasms, biliary tract neoplasms, hepatocellular carcinoma, pancreatic carcinoma, cecal neoplasms, colonic neoplasms, colorectal neoplasms, duodenal neoplasms, esophageal neoplasms, gallbladder neoplasms, *etc*.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

The *WJGO* is now abstracted and indexed in PubMed, PubMed Central, Science Citation Index Expanded (SCIE, also known as SciSearch®), Journal Citation Reports/Science Edition, Scopus, Reference Citation Analysis, China National Knowledge Infrastructure, China Science and Technology Journal Database, and Superstar Journals Database. The 2022 edition of Journal Citation Reports® cites the 2021 impact factor (IF) for *WJGO* as 3.404; IF without journal self cites: 3.357; 5-year IF: 3.250; Journal Citation Indicator: 0.53; Ranking: 162 among 245 journals in oncology; Quartile category: Q3; Ranking: 59 among 93 journals in gastroenterology and hepatology; and Quartile category: Q3. The *WJGO*'s CiteScore for 2021 is 3.6 and Scopus CiteScore rank 2021: Gastroenterology is 72/149; Oncology is 203/360.

RESPONSIBLE EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Production Editor: *Xiang-Di Zhang*; **Production Department Director:** *Xiang Li*; **Editorial Office Director:** *Jia-Ru Fan*.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

ISSN
ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
February 15, 2009

FREQUENCY
Monthly

EDITORS-IN-CHIEF
Monjur Ahmed, Florin Burada

EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS
https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/editorialboard.htm

PUBLICATION DATE
February 15, 2023

COPYRIGHT
© 2023 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/204

GUIDELINES FOR ETHICS DOCUMENTS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/287

GUIDELINES FOR NON-NATIVE SPEAKERS OF ENGLISH
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/240

PUBLICATION ETHICS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/288

PUBLICATION MISCONDUCT
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/208

ARTICLE PROCESSING CHARGE
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/242

STEPS FOR SUBMITTING MANUSCRIPTS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/239

ONLINE SUBMISSION
https://www.f6publishing.com

© 2023 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved. 7041 Koll Center Parkway, Suite 160, Pleasanton, CA 94566, USA
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com https://www.wjgnet.com

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2023 February 15; 15(2): 215-224

DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.215

ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

EDITORIAL

Challenges to addressing the unmet medical needs for immunotherapy targeting cold colorectal cancer

Keun-Yeong Jeong

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Liu Z, China; Rathnaswami A, India; Xu X, China

Received: September 28, 2022
Peer-review started: September 28, 2022
First decision: December 14, 2022
Revised: December 18, 2022
Accepted: January 9, 2023
Article in press: January 9, 2023
Published online: February 15, 2023

Keun-Yeong Jeong, Research and Development Center, PearlsinMires, Seoul 03690, South Korea

Corresponding author: Keun-Yeong Jeong, PhD, Chief Technician, Founder and CEO, Research and Development Center, PearlsinMires, 120 Geobukgol-ro, Seodaemun-gu, Seoul 03690, South Korea. alvirus@naver.com

Abstract

With the establishment of the immune surveillance mechanism since the 1950s, attempts have been made to activate the immune system for cancer treatment through the discovery of various cytokines or the development of antibodies up to now. The fruits of these efforts have contributed to the recognition of the 3rd generation of anticancer immunotherapy as the mainstream of cancer treatment. However, the limitations of cancer immunotherapy are also being recognized through the conceptual establishment of cold tumors recently, and colorectal cancer (CRC) has become a major issue from this therapeutic point of view. Here, it is emphasized that non-clinical strategies to overcome the immunosuppressive environment and clinical trials based on these basic investigations are being made on the journey to achieve better treatment outcomes for the treatment of cold CRC.

Key Words: Colorectal cancer; Immunotherapy; Cell therapy; Checkpoint inhibitor; Cancer vaccine; Cytokine therapy

©The Author(s) 2023. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: There have been continuing attempts to treat colorectal cancer (CRC) with immunotherapies, and various methods of converting cold into hot tumors have gone through trial and error up to now. Based on this background, this editorial introduces the concept of cold CRC and various strategies across non-clinical and clinical for enhancing immunotherapeutic efficacy and further encourages the journey to an advanced level of immunotherapies targeting cold CRC.

Citation: Jeong KY. Challenges to addressing the unmet medical needs for immunotherapy targeting cold colorectal cancer. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2023; 15(2): 215-224
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v15/i2/215.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.215

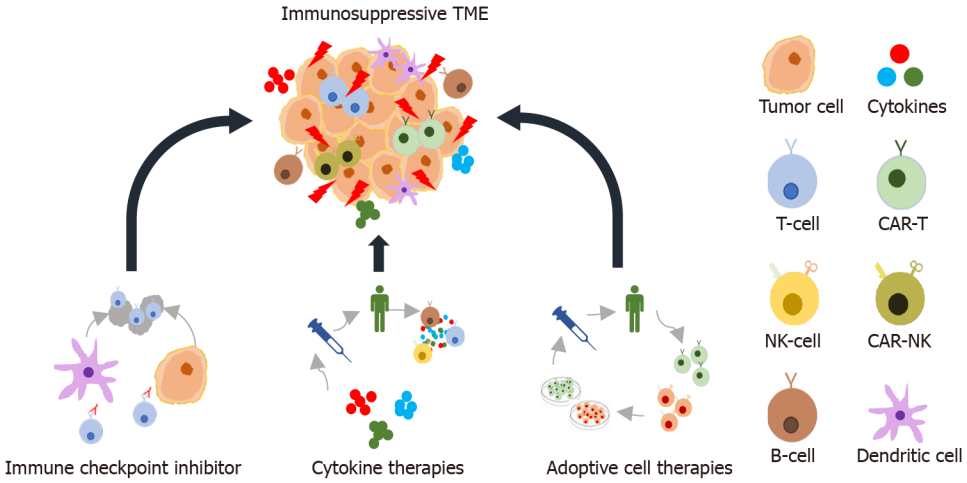
INTRODUCTION

Cancer immunotherapy provides a basis for activating the components of the immune system of cancer patients. Recently spotlighted methods of cancer immunotherapy utilize antibodies and peptides that bind to and inhibit the proteins related to immune evasion (*e.g.*, immune checkpoint inhibitors and cytokine therapies), DNA and RNA vaccines, and immune cell therapies such as chimeric antigen receptor natural killer (CAR-NK) and CAR-T cells (Figure 1)[1]. The idea of using immunotherapy for cancer treatment emerged with the first proposed theory of cancer immunosurveillance in the 1950s, which suggested that lymphocytes act as a monitoring system to identify and eliminate cells harboring somatic mutations[2]. However, due to a lack of non-clinical data to support these theories, it took a long time to establish a bridgehead for clinical applications[2]. Eventually, the identification of T-cell growth factor interleukin 2 (IL-2) in the 1970s allowed improved T-cell production through IL-2 exposure and led to positive results in patients with metastatic cancer[2,3]. Milstein and Köhler pioneered the production of monoclonal antibodies by fusion of lymphocytes around the same time, and antibody-based therapies led to the development of rituximab, which targets immature B cells-based NK cell activation[2,4]. After this discovery, development was stagnant because it was difficult to devise clinically effective cancer immunotherapy strategies until 2010. Ipilimumab [targeting cytotoxic T lymphocyte antigen 4 (CTLA-4)], nivolumab, and atezolizumab [targeting programmed cell death-1 (PD-1) or its ligand (PD-L1), respectively] have been approved in the 2010s as a result of ongoing research for the discovery of immune checkpoint molecules[1,5]. More recently, six CAR-T cell therapies have been approved for the treatment of lymphoma, some forms of leukemia, and multiple myeloma [6]. Such rapid development over the past decade established immunotherapy as the mainstream of cancer treatment as third-generation cancer treatment next to second-generation targeted therapies.

Meanwhile, it would be an erroneous attempt to follow in the footsteps of approaches focusing on only its potential while looking at the rapid development of immunotherapy. Given the extensive non-clinical research and clinical investigation efforts dedicated to advancing different immunotherapy approaches, such efforts should be accompanied by those focusing on the various prominent issues that emerge. A discussion may be required on the optimal model that can accurately reflect the human immune system by replacing the immunodeficient mouse used in the non-clinical efficacy evaluation studies or on the concerns about synthetic rather than endogenous immunity. However, here I would like to highlight organ-specific tumor immunity, especially in colorectal cancer (CRC), as a key concern among the multiple issues involved in the resistance to immunotherapies. The widely accepted concept of 'cold tumor' focuses on tumors that are unlikely to elicit a strong immune response due to the heterogeneity of the tumor microenvironment (TME)[7].

CONCEPT OF COLD TUMOR AND IMMUNE SIGNATURE OF CRC

The advancements in the knowledge of the interactions among different types of cells in the TME have enabled the establishment of the basis of therapeutic strategies focused on the immune system. Patient stratification with an immune score can be performed according to the types or densities of immune cells within the tumor, and it could be possible to make a more accurate prediction of prognosis compared with TNM staging[8]. This concept is based on the quantification of CD3+ and CD8+ T-cells abundance in and around the TME. The immune score ranges from I0 (immune score 0) to I4, where I0 denotes the absence of both CD3+ and CD8+ T-cell types, and I4 indicates a high density of immune cells positive for the expression of the T-cell types[9,10]. Such a system was proposed for immune-based tumor classification and allowed the discrimination between high-invasive immune score I4 (hot tumor) and non-invasive immune score I0 (cold tumor)[8-10]. The feasibility of the immune score has been proved in CRC and is recognized as having a greater relative prognostic value compared with pathological staging, lymphatic invasion, tumor differentiation, and microsatellite status[8,11]. Currently, the definition of cold tumor is routinely used to refer to tumors with little or no T-cell infiltration, inflamed but non-T-cell infiltrated, or non-inflammatory tumors[12]. In addition to the analysis of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes, it is characterized by the regulation of antigen-presenting machinery markers, such as low expression levels of PD-L1 or reduced presentation of neoantigens[13]. At this point, it is possible to characterize the immune signature in CRC represented by the propensity for cold tumors. A neoantigen is an abnormal peptide mainly generated by a genetic mutation or gene fusion and is encoded by mutant genes in tumor cells[14]. Tumor-associated antigens, a type of neoantigen, are



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.215 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 1 The basic categories of immunotherapy. Different forms of cancer immunotherapy, including immune checkpoint inhibitors, cytokine therapies, adoptive cell transfer, and oncolytic virus therapies, target the immunosuppressive tumor microenvironment. CAR: Chimeric antigen receptor; NK: Natural killer; TME: Tumor microenvironment.

proteins that are overexpressed in tumor cells but also expressed in normal cells, limiting specific immune responses[14]. For example, carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) is an important tumor-associated antigen in CRC and is frequently found on the surfaces of most metastatic CRC cells, but it induces immune tolerance since CEA is also expressed at the embryonic stage[14,15]. Further, the presence of various mechanisms that interfere with antigen presentation is a hallmark of metastatic CRC, typically with low microsatellite instability (MSI)/DNA mismatch repair deficient molecular characteristics[16,17]. Such mechanisms interfere with antigen presentation and proteasome processing of antigens, impede transporter functions involved in antigen processing and inhibit the expression of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) structural components through genetic mutations[16]. In particular, loss of β-2-microglobulin heterozygosity may affect antigen presentation of the MHC-I, which is known to induce resistance to T-cell invasion[18]. Furthermore, the immune signature of CRC indicates that it could interfere with the recruitment or activation of T-cells through various molecular biological changes as a result of the inter-communication between the constituents of the TME[19]. It has been reported that activation of Wnt/β-catenin signaling is associated with T-cell exclusion and inversely proportional to T-cell infiltration in CRC tissues[20]. Signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3) can reduce the expression of interferon-gamma (IFN-γ) in CD8-positive T-cells[21]. This, in turn, inhibits chemokine (C-X-C motif) ligand secretion by tumor-associated myeloid cells and interferes with T-cell recruitment[21,22]. The mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) signaling cascade upregulates the expression levels of the immunosuppressive cytokines such as vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) and IL-8, suppressing T-cell function and its infiltration into the TME[23-25]. These immune signatures in cold CRC by their genetic and molecular complexity may be a major cause of resistance to cancer therapies (especially in immunotherapy). Therefore, a variety of attempts are currently being made to overcome these obstacles through non-clinical and clinical studies.

NON-CLINICAL STRATEGIES TO TARGET COLD CRC

Non-clinical strategies are being designed to overcome the obstacles in cancer immunotherapy, and these strategies can be classified into key categories as follows: Increasing the number of antigen-specific T-cells, T-cell priming, and promoting T-cell trafficking and infiltration[26-29]. First, the method of increasing the number of antigen-specific T-cells and T-cell priming includes the application of adoptive cell therapy[30,31], adjuvant immunotherapy[32,33], epigenetic modification inhibitors[34,35], cancer vaccines[36,37], oncolytic viruses[38,39], and their combination with conventional therapies[40-43] (Table 1). Adoptive cell therapy enhances the immune response through CAR-T or CAR-NK cells. Utilization of CAR-T or CAR-NK cells involves the genetic modification of T lymphocytes or NK cells to express specific antigens to target the tumor cells. The activities of CAR-T or CAR-NK cells are not limited by the presence or absence of MHC and can further enhance the immune response against tumor cells through the addition of costimulatory molecules such as CD28, OX40, or 4-1BB[30,44]. The strategy utilizes the direct recognition of tumor antigens by CARs and has the potential to treat cold CRC[30]. Adjuvant immunotherapy is based on innate immune responses through the activity of the pattern recognition receptor family[45]. The pattern recognition receptor family includes Toll-like receptors, nucleotide oligomerization domain-like receptors, retinoic acid-inducible gene-I-like

Table 1 Key categories for non-clinical strategies to overcome obstacles in cancer immunotherapy

Strategy	Therapeutic approach	Ref.
Increase in antigen-specific T-cells and T-cell priming	Adoptive cell therapy (CAR-T and -NK)	[30-44,49]
	Adjuvant immunotherapy	
	Epigenetic modification inhibitors	
	Cancer vaccine	
	Oncolytic viruses	
	Combined with conventional therapies	
Promoting T-cell trafficking and infiltration	TGF-β suppression	[50-58,60,61]
	Oncogenic pathway inhibitors	
	Angiogenesis inhibitors	
	CXCR4 inhibitors	
	Immunocytokines	

CAR: Chimeric antigen receptor; NK: Natural killer; TGF: Transforming growth factor; CXCR: C-X-C motif chemokine receptor.

receptors, and type C lectin receptors. Agonistic activation of these receptors can generate a variety of proinflammatory cytokines including type I IFNs to promote T-cell priming[45]. Targeting DNA methyltransferase and histone deacetylase activities to inhibit epigenetic modifications has been shown to enhance the expression levels of tumor antigens and other immune-related genes, as a specific therapy for tumors with low antigen expression[46]. Cancer vaccines enhance the treatment efficacy and overcome the limitations of immunotherapy by increasing the number of specific effector T-cells. They include molecular-based vaccines using peptides, protein, DNA and mRNA prepared with isolated cancer cells and adenovirus for the expression of cancer-specific antigens[47]. Oncolytic viruses capable of selectively targeting and destroying cancer cells contribute to the maturation of antigen-presenting cells that carry out the activation of antigen-specific CD4+ and CD8+ T-cell responses and activate both innate and adaptive immune responses to convert a cold tumor into a hot tumor[38]. Chemotherapy and radiotherapy can exert anti-tumor effects by directly killing tumor cells while contributing to immune system stimulation[41,42]. Radiotherapy promotes the activation of dendritic cells and the expression of cell adhesion molecules that promote the attraction of immune cells[42,45]. Chemotherapy regulates immunogenicity and increases T-cell infiltration. 5-fluorouracil and oxaliplatin-based chemotherapies and MAPK and epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitors are some examples[41,48,49]. Methods for promoting T-cell trafficking and infiltration include the application of transforming growth factor (TGF)-β suppression[50,51], oncogenic pathway inhibitors[52,53], angiogenesis inhibitors, CXC chemokine receptors (CXCR) inhibitors[54,55], and immune cytokines[56] (Table 1). TGF-β is associated with a lack of immune responses in the noninflamed T-cell phenotype with a deterioration in the ability to produce type I IFNs in tumor-associated dendritic cells, leading to STAT3 up-regulation and an imbalance in T-cell infiltration. Non-clinical studies have shown that a combination of TGF-β blocking antibodies induces T-cell penetration into tumors, allowing for anti-tumor immunity and tumor regression[50,51]. Targeting oncogenic pathways helps to reverse intrinsic T cell exclusion in tumors. Inhibition of the WNT/β-catenin pathway by p21-activated kinase 4 inhibitors or the endogenous Dickkopf family binding to lipoprotein receptor-associated proteins may increase tumor invasion of cytotoxic T lymphocytes[52,53]. Inhibition of well-established biochemical pathways, CDK4/6, phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K)/AKT, or MAPK, involved in tumor growth and differentiation can lead to a significant upregulation of tumor-infiltrating T lymphocytes with the regulation of granzyme B and CC chemokine ligand 4/5[49,57,58]. Angiogenesis inhibitors play a role in the normalization of the unregulated balance between angiogenesis-promoting and antiangiogenic signals by upregulation of the leukocyte adhesion molecules in tumor endothelial cells resulting in amelioration of tumor vascular abnormalities, improved tissue perfusion, and increased infiltration of immune effector cells[54,59]. CXCR4 is a receptor for CXC ligand (CXCL) 12 and is overexpressed in tumors, and it can reduce the infiltration of cytotoxic T lymphocytes into the TME and mediate the invasion of immunosuppressive cells, such as regulatory T-cells (Treg), into the tumor. Regulation of CXCL12 by inhibiting CXCR4 can promote the infiltration of T lymphocytes into the tumor and reverse immune resistance[60,61]. Finally, since immune cytokines mediate the influx and expansion of leukocytes at tumor sites, cognate receptor expression on tumor and immune cells may induce an antitumor effect. IL-2, IFN, tumor necrosis factor, IL-12, granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor, promotion of MHC-I expression, and T-cell activation and infiltration enhance antitumor immunity[56,62].

Table 2 A list of completed clinical trials to improve response to immunotherapies targeting colorectal cancer

Regimen	NCT number	Outcome	Completion
T-cell bispecific antibody and CEA combined with atezolizumab	NCT02650713	20% PR and 50% SD	January 2020
Copanlisib plus nivolumab	NCT03711058	No results available	January 2022
Fruquintinib plus geptanolimab	NCT03977090	26.7% ORR, 80% DCR, and 7.33 mo median PFS	December 2021
Regorafenib plus toripalimab	NCT03946917	15.2% ORR and the 36.4% DCR	November 2021
Durvalumab plus tremelimumab	NCT02870920	2% DCR, 1.8 mo PFS, and 6.6 mo OS	December 2021
Anti-TGF-β antibody plus spartalizumab	NCT02947165	Clinical proof of concept with 2 PR cases	June 2021
Pembrolizumab plus celebrex	NCT03638297	83.3% ORR, 12.5% SD, and 4.2% PD	August 2021
Durvalumab and tremelimumab plus FOLFOX	NCT03202758	31.2% PR and CR, 25% SD, and 6 mo PFS	August 2020

CR: Colorectal; CEA: Carcinoembryonic antigen; PR: Partial response; SD: Stable disease; ORR: Objective response rate; DCR: Disease control rate; PFS: Progression-free survival; OS: Overall survival; PD: Progression disease; FOLFOX: Folinic acid, fluorouracil, and oxaliplatin; TGF: Transforming growth factor.

CLINICAL STRATEGIES TO TARGET COLD CRC

Over the past two decades, a multidisciplinary approach to graft novel therapeutic modalities onto the backbone of fluoropyrimidine-based chemotherapy in local and advanced CRC has achieved significant improvements in the therapeutic efficiency of immunotherapy[63]. However, the expected overall survival of patients with microsatellite stable (MSS) CRC is only about 30 mo, indicating an unmet medical need[64]. Therefore, several clinical trials evaluating immune checkpoint inhibitors have focused on designs that can overcome resistance and achieve clinically meaningful responses, but mono and combination therapies utilizing immune checkpoint inhibitors as the mainstay have not yet shown significant clinical success[65-68]. For example, studies using the single agent of pembrolizumab and nivolumab did not find any objective response rates (ORR)[65-67]. In a study of a combination of ipilimumab, nivolumab, and anti-CTLA-4 antibody in CRC patients with high MSI and MSS, the median progression-free survival (PFS) was only 1.4 mo, and no ORR was observed[68]. These results represent the limitations of approaches that do not target multiple molecular pathways involved in immune exclusion. Strategies for converting the cold CRC into hot CRC, which can enhance the responses to immune checkpoint inhibitors by promoting activation or recruitment of cytotoxic T lymphocytes in TME, should have been included in clinical trials. Recently, several trials have been conducted in favor of strategies to enhance immune activity and T lymphocyte infiltration into the TME to achieve substantial anti-tumor immune responses targeting CRC (Table 2). The list of completed clinical trials reflecting the non-clinical strategies includes the following: A phase I study (NCT02650713) in which a T-cell bispecific antibody and CEA combined with atezolizumab (targeting PD-L1) in CEA-positive solid tumors, indicating 20% partial response (PR) and 50% stable disease (SD)[69]; a phase I/II study (NCT03711058) with a combination of copanlisib (PI3K inhibitor) and nivolumab (anti-PD-1 antibody) targeting relapsed/refractory MSS CRC, with a decreasing trend of CD4+ T-lymphocytes mainly comprised of Treg and helper subsets[70]; a phase Ib study (NCT03977090) evaluating the safety and preliminary efficacy of fruquintinib (VEGF inhibitor) with geptanolimab (anti-PD-1 antibody) targeting metastatic CRC, indicating 26.7% ORR, 80% disease control rate (DCR), and 7.33 mo median PFS[71]; a phase Ib/II study (NCT03946917) of regorafenib plus toripalimab (anti-PD-1 antibody) targeting CRC, with 15.2% ORR and the 36.4% DCR[72]; a phase II randomized study (NCT02870920) of durvalumab (anti-PD-L1 antibody) plus tremelimumab (anti-CTLA-4 antibody) in patients with refractory CRC, resulting in 22% DCR, 1.8 mo PFA, and 6.6 mo overall survival[73]; a phase Ib study (NCT02947165) of the anti-TGF-β monoclonal antibody combined with spartalizumab (anti-PD-1 antibody) in patients with MSS CRC, providing a clinical proof of concept with 2 PR cases[74]; a phase II study (NCT03638297) to assess the efficacy of pembrolizumab (anti-PD-1 antibody) combined with celebrex (COX inhibitor) in patients with high MSI metastatic CRC, with 83.3% ORR, 12.5% SD, and 4.2% progressive disease[75]; and a phase I/II study (NCT03202758) to determine the safety and efficacy of durvalumab (anti-PD-L1 antibody) and tremelimumab (anti-CTLA-4 antibody) in combination with folinic acid, fluorouracil, and oxaliplatin in patients with metastatic CRC, with 31.2% PR and CR, 25% SD, and 6 mo PFS[76]. In summary, positive results were obtained targeting cold CRC through a variety of strategies for increasing immune responses, therefore, follow-up studies continue to be performed for treatment found to show significant results. Further, many clinical trials with

Table 3 Ongoing clinical trials to improve response to immunotherapies targeting colorectal cancer

Strategy	NCT number	Intervention
Targeting tyrosine kinase	NCT04764006	Surufatinib (VEGFR1, VEGFR2, VEGFR3, FGFR1, and CSF-1R inhibitor)
	NCT04819516	High-intensity focused ultrasound therapy; toripalimab (anti-PD-1 antibody)
	NCT04963283	Cabozantinib (anti-VEGFR2) plus nivolumab (anti-PD-1 antibody)
Targeting TGF-β	NCT03724851	TEW-7197 (TGF-β receptor ALK4/ALK5 inhibitor)
Targeting Wnt signaling	NCT02521844	ETC-159 (Porcupine inhibitor) plus Pembrolizumab (anti-PD-1 antibody)
Combination with chemotherapy	NCT04301557	Pembrolizumab plus binimetinib (MEK 1/2 inhibitor) plus FOLFOX plus irinotecan
	NCT04895137	FOLFOX6 plus bevacizumab (anti-VEGF A) plus anti-PD-1 antibody
	NCT03374254	Anti-PD-1 antibody plus oxaliplatin plus capecitabine plus radiotherapy then mesorectal excision
Cancer vaccine	NCT04046445	ATP128 (chimeric recombinant protein vaccine) plus BI754091 (IgG4Pro antibody inhibitor) plus VSV-GP128 (recombinant vesicular stomatitis virus)
	NCT04117087	KRAS peptide vaccine plus nivolumab (anti-PD-1 antibody) plus ipilimumab (anti-CTLA4 inhibitor)
	NCT04912765	Neoantigen dendritic cell vaccine plus nivolumab

VEGFR: Vascular endothelial growth factor receptor; FGFR1: Fibroblast growth factor receptor 1; CSF-1R: Colony stimulating factor 1 receptor; PD-1: Programmed cell death 1; TGF-β: Transforming growth factor beta; MEK 1/2: Mitogen-activated protein kinase 1/2; FOLFOX: Folinic acid, fluorouracil, and oxaliplatin; VEGF A: Vascular endothelial growth factor A; CTLA4: Cytotoxic T lymphocyte antigen-4.

various combinatory strategies by tyrosine kinase inhibitors, TGF-β inhibitors, Wnt signaling inhibitors, chemotherapies, and cancer vaccines to enhance immunotherapeutic efficacy are also ongoing (Table 3).

CONCLUSION

Recently, several attempts have been made to conquer CRC with immunotherapies, but poor clinical outcomes were obtained due to the non-immunogenic characteristics of cold CRC. However, a variety of methods of converting cold into hot tumors were obtained through trial and error, and positive results have been drawn based on this background. We will have to carry our journey to a higher level to target cold CRC by discovering useful biomarkers through various efforts that span non-clinical and clinical studies in the future.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Jeong KY designed the overall concept and outline of the manuscript; Jeong KY contributed to the discussion and design of the manuscript, the writing, and editing of the manuscript, illustrations, and review of the literature.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The author reports no relevant conflicts of interest for this article.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: South Korea

ORCID number: Keun-Yeong Jeong 0000-0002-4933-3493.

S-Editor: Wang JJ
L-Editor: A

P-Editor: Wang JJ

REFERENCES

1 **Waldman AD**, Fritz JM, Lenardo MJ. A guide to cancer immunotherapy: from T cell basic science to clinical practice. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2020; **20**: 651-668 [PMID: 32433532 DOI: 10.1038/s41577-020-0306-5]

2 **Dobosz P**, Dzieciątkowski T. The Intriguing History of Cancer Immunotherapy. *Front Immunol* 2019; **10**: 2965 [PMID: 31921205 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.02965]

3 **Berraondo P**, Sanmamed MF, Ochoa MC, Etxeberria I, Aznar MA, Pérez-Gracia JL, Rodríguez-Ruiz ME, Ponz-Sarvise M, Castañón E, Melero I. Cytokines in clinical cancer immunotherapy. *Br J Cancer* 2019; **120**: 6-15 [PMID: 30413827 DOI: 10.1038/s41416-018-0328-y]

4 **Pierpont TM**, Limper CB, Richards KL. Past, Present, and Future of Rituximab-The World's First Oncology Monoclonal Antibody Therapy. *Front Oncol* 2018; **8**: 163 [PMID: 29915719 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2018.00163]

5 **Qin S**, Xu L, Yi M, Yu S, Wu K, Luo S. Novel immune checkpoint targets: moving beyond PD-1 and CTLA-4. *Mol Cancer* 2019; **18**: 155 [PMID: 31690319 DOI: 10.1186/s12943-019-1091-2]

6 **Sengsayadeth S**, Savani BN, Oluwole O, Dholaria B. Overview of approved CAR-T therapies, ongoing clinical trials, and its impact on clinical practice. *EJHaem* 2022; **3**: 6-10 [PMID: 35844299 DOI: 10.1002/jha2.338]

7 **Kamal Y**, Schmit SL, Frost HR, Amos CI. The tumor microenvironment of colorectal cancer metastases: opportunities in cancer immunotherapy. *Immunotherapy* 2020; **12**: 1083-1100 [PMID: 32787587 DOI: 10.2217/imt-2020-0026]

8 **Malka D**, Lièvre A, André T, Taïeb J, Ducreux M, Bibeau F. Immune scores in colorectal cancer: Where are we? *Eur J Cancer* 2020; **140**: 105-118 [PMID: 33075623 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2020.08.024]

9 **Trabelsi M**, Farah F, Zouari B, Jaafoura MH, Kharrat M. An Immunoscore System Based On CD3(+) And CD8(+) Infiltrating Lymphocytes Densities To Predict The Outcome Of Patients With Colorectal Adenocarcinoma. *Onco Targets Ther* 2019; **12**: 8663-8673 [PMID: 31695425 DOI: 10.2147/OTT.S211048]

10 **Angell H**, Galon J. From the immune contexture to the Immunoscore: the role of prognostic and predictive immune markers in cancer. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2013; **25**: 261-267 [PMID: 23579076 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2013.03.004]

11 **Angell HK**, Bruni D, Barrett JC, Herbst R, Galon J. The Immunoscore: Colon Cancer and Beyond. *Clin Cancer Res* 2020; **26**: 332-339 [PMID: 31413009 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-18-1851]

12 **Bonaventura P**, Shekarian T, Alcazer V, Valladeau-Guilemond J, Valsesia-Wittmann S, Amigorena S, Caux C, Depil S. Cold Tumors: A Therapeutic Challenge for Immunotherapy. *Front Immunol* 2019; **10**: 168 [PMID: 30800125 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00168]

13 **Mpakali A**, Stratikos E. The Role of Antigen Processing and Presentation in Cancer and the Efficacy of Immune Checkpoint Inhibitor Immunotherapy. *Cancers (Basel)* 2021; **13** [PMID: 33406696 DOI: 10.3390/cancers13010134]

14 **Jiang T**, Shi T, Zhang H, Hu J, Song Y, Wei J, Ren S, Zhou C. Tumor neoantigens: from basic research to clinical applications. *J Hematol Oncol* 2019; **12**: 93 [PMID: 31492199 DOI: 10.1186/s13045-019-0787-5]

15 **Kass E**, Schlom J, Thompson J, Guadagni F, Graziano P, Greiner JW. Induction of protective host immunity to carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), a self-antigen in CEA transgenic mice, by immunizing with a recombinant vaccinia-CEA virus. *Cancer Res* 1999; **59**: 676-683 [PMID: 9973217]

16 **Randrian V**, Evrard C, Tougeron D. Microsatellite Instability in Colorectal Cancers: Carcinogenesis, Neo-Antigens, Immuno-Resistance and Emerging Therapies. *Cancers (Basel)* 2021; **13** [PMID: 34205397 DOI: 10.3390/cancers13123063]

17 **Lizardo DY**, Kuang C, Hao S, Yu J, Huang Y, Zhang L. Immunotherapy efficacy on mismatch repair-deficient colorectal cancer: From bench to bedside. *Biochim Biophys Acta Rev Cancer* 2020; **1874**: 188447 [PMID: 33035640 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbcan.2020.188447]

18 **Middha S**, Yaeger R, Shia J, Stadler ZK, King S, Guercio S, Paroder V, Bates DDB, Rana S, Diaz LA Jr, Saltz L, Segal N, Ladanyi M, Zehir A, Hechtman JF. Majority of B2M-Mutant and -Deficient Colorectal Carcinomas Achieve Clinical Benefit From Immune Checkpoint Inhibitor Therapy and Are Microsatellite Instability-High. *JCO Precis Oncol* 2019; **3** [PMID: 31008436 DOI: 10.1200/PO.18.00321]

19 **Plundrich D**, Chikhladze S, Fichtner-Feigl S, Feuerstein R, Briquez PS. Molecular Mechanisms of Tumor Immunomodulation in the Microenvironment of Colorectal Cancer. *Int J Mol Sci* 2022; **23** [PMID: 35269922 DOI: 10.3390/ijms23052782]

20 **Xue J**, Yu X, Xue L, Ge X, Zhao W, Peng W. Intrinsic β-catenin signaling suppresses CD8(+) T-cell infiltration in colorectal cancer. *Biomed Pharmacother* 2019; **115**: 108921 [PMID: 31078045 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopha.2019.108921]

21 **Gargalionis AN**, Papavassiliou KA, Papavassiliou AG. Targeting STAT3 Signaling Pathway in Colorectal Cancer. *Biomedicines* 2021; **9** [PMID: 34440220 DOI: 10.3390/biomedicines9081016]

22 **Zou S**, Tong Q, Liu B, Huang W, Tian Y, Fu X. Targeting STAT3 in Cancer Immunotherapy. *Mol Cancer* 2020; **19**: 145 [PMID: 32972405 DOI: 10.1186/s12943-020-01258-7]

23 **Yang J**, Yan J, Liu B. Targeting VEGF/VEGFR to Modulate Antitumor Immunity. *Front Immunol* 2018; **9**: 978 [PMID: 29774034 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00978]

24 **Kumar S**, Principe DR, Singh SK, Viswakarma N, Sondarva G, Rana B, Rana A. Mitogen-Activated Protein Kinase Inhibitors and T-Cell-Dependent Immunotherapy in Cancer. *Pharmaceuticals (Basel)* 2020; **13** [PMID: 31936067 DOI: 10.3390/ph13010009]

25 **Fousek K**, Horn LA, Palena C. Interleukin-8: A chemokine at the intersection of cancer plasticity, angiogenesis, and immune suppression. *Pharmacol Ther* 2021; **219**: 107692 [PMID: 32980444 DOI: 10.1016/j.pharmthera.2020.107692]

26 **Hont AB**, Powell AB, Sohai DK, Valdez IK, Stanojevic M, Geiger AE, Chaudhary K, Dowlati E, Bollard CM, Cruz CRY. The generation and application of antigen-specific T cell therapies for cancer and viral-associated disease. *Mol Ther* 2022;

30: 2130-2152 [PMID: 35149193 DOI: 10.1016/j.ymthe.2022.02.002]
27 **Westcott PMK**, Sacks NJ, Schenkel JM, Ely ZA, Smith O, Hauck H, Jaeger AM, Zhang D, Backlund CM, Beytagh MC, Patten JJ, Elbashir R, Eng G, Irvine DJ, Yilmaz OH, Jacks T. Low neoantigen expression and poor T-cell priming underlie early immune escape in colorectal cancer. *Nat Cancer* 2021; **2**: 1071-1085 [PMID: 34738089 DOI: 10.1038/s43018-021-00247-z]
28 **Qiao G**, Kone LB, Phillips EH, Lee SS, Brown GE, Khetani SR, Thakur A, Lum LG, Prabhakar BS, Maker AV. LIGHT enhanced bispecific antibody armed T-cells to treat immunotherapy resistant colon cancer. *Oncogene* 2022; **41**: 2054-2068 [PMID: 35177811 DOI: 10.1038/s41388-022-02209-w]
29 **Bai Z**, Zhou Y, Ye Z, Xiong J, Lan H, Wang F. Tumor-Infiltrating Lymphocytes in Colorectal Cancer: The Fundamental Indication and Application on Immunotherapy. *Front Immunol* 2021; **12**: 808964 [PMID: 35095898 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2021.808964]
30 **Li H**, Yang C, Cheng H, Huang S, Zheng Y. CAR-T cells for Colorectal Cancer: Target-selection and strategies for improved activity and safety. *J Cancer* 2021; **12**: 1804-1814 [PMID: 33613769 DOI: 10.7150/jca.50509]
31 **Xiao L**, Cen D, Gan H, Sun Y, Huang N, Xiong H, Jin Q, Su L, Liu X, Wang K, Yan G, Dong T, Wu S, Zhou P, Zhang J, Liang W, Ren J, Teng Y, Chen C, Xu XH. Adoptive Transfer of NKG2D CAR mRNA-Engineered Natural Killer Cells in Colorectal Cancer Patients. *Mol Ther* 2019; **27**: 1114-1125 [PMID: 30962163 DOI: 10.1016/j.ymthe.2019.03.011]
32 **Ju H**, Xing W, Yang J, Zheng Y, Jia X, Zhang B, Ren H. An effective cytokine adjuvant vaccine induces autologous T-cell response against colon cancer in an animal model. *BMC Immunol* 2016; **17**: 31 [PMID: 27669687 DOI: 10.1186/s12865-016-0172-x]
33 **Dai Y**, Zhao W, Yue L, Dai X, Rong D, Wu F, Gu J, Qian X. Perspectives on Immunotherapy of Metastatic Colorectal Cancer. *Front Oncol* 2021; **11**: 659964 [PMID: 34178645 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2021.659964]
34 **Nagarsheth N**, Peng D, Kryczek I, Wu K, Li W, Zhao E, Zhao L, Wei S, Frankel T, Vatan L, Szeliga W, Dou Y, Owens S, Marquez V, Tao K, Huang E, Wang G, Zou W. PRC2 Epigenetically Silences Th1-Type Chemokines to Suppress Effector T-Cell Trafficking in Colon Cancer. *Cancer Res* 2016; **76**: 275-282 [PMID: 26567139 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-15-1938]
35 **Peng D**, Kryczek I, Nagarsheth N, Zhao L, Wei S, Wang W, Sun Y, Zhao E, Vatan L, Szeliga W, Kotarski J, Tarkowski R, Dou Y, Cho K, Hensley-Alford S, Munkarah A, Liu R, Zou W. Epigenetic silencing of TH1-type chemokines shapes tumour immunity and immunotherapy. *Nature* 2015; **527**: 249-253 [PMID: 26503055 DOI: 10.1038/nature15520]
36 **Jia W**, Zhang T, Huang H, Feng H, Wang S, Guo Z, Luo Z, Ji X, Cheng X, Zhao R. Colorectal cancer vaccines: The current scenario and future prospects. *Front Immunol* 2022; **13**: 942235 [PMID: 35990683 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2022.942235]
37 **Corulli LR**, Cecil DL, Gad E, Koehnlein M, Coveler AL, Childs JS, Lubet RA, Disis ML. Multi-Epitope-Based Vaccines for Colon Cancer Treatment and Prevention. *Front Immunol* 2021; **12**: 729809 [PMID: 34526999 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2021.729809]
38 **Ren Y**, Miao JM, Wang YY, Fan Z, Kong XB, Yang L, Cheng G. Oncolytic viruses combined with immune checkpoint therapy for colorectal cancer is a promising treatment option. *Front Immunol* 2022; **13**: 961796 [PMID: 35911673 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2022.961796]
39 **Wang N**, Wang J, Zhang Z, Cao H, Yan W, Chu Y, Chard Dunmall LS, Wang Y. A novel vaccinia virus enhances anti-tumor efficacy and promotes a long-term anti-tumor response in a murine model of colorectal cancer. *Mol Ther Oncolytics* 2021; **20**: 71-81 [PMID: 33575472 DOI: 10.1016/j.omto.2020.11.002]
40 **Taniura T**, Iida Y, Kotani H, Ishitobi K, Tajima Y, Harada M. Immunogenic chemotherapy in two mouse colon cancer models. *Cancer Sci* 2020; **111**: 3527-3539 [PMID: 32816355 DOI: 10.1111/cas.14624]
41 **Guan Y**, Kraus SG, Quaney MJ, Daniels MA, Mitchem JB, Teixeiro E. FOLFOX Chemotherapy Ameliorates CD8 T Lymphocyte Exhaustion and Enhances Checkpoint Blockade Efficacy in Colorectal Cancer. *Front Oncol* 2020; **10**: 586 [PMID: 32391270 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2020.00586]
42 **Witek M**, Blomain ES, Magee MS, Xiang B, Waldman SA, Snook AE. Tumor radiation therapy creates therapeutic vaccine responses to the colorectal cancer antigen GUCY2C. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2014; **88**: 1188-1195 [PMID: 24661671 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2013.12.043]
43 **Ji D**, Song C, Li Y, Xia J, Wu Y, Jia J, Cui X, Yu S, Gu J. Combination of radiotherapy and suppression of Tregs enhances abscopal antitumor effect and inhibits metastasis in rectal cancer. *J Immunother Cancer* 2020; **8** [PMID: 33106387 DOI: 10.1136/jitc-2020-000826]
44 **Ebert LM**, Yu W, Gargett T, Brown MP. Logic-gated approaches to extend the utility of chimeric antigen receptor T-cell technology. *Biochem Soc Trans* 2018; **46**: 391-401 [PMID: 29540509 DOI: 10.1042/BST20170178]
45 **Bai L**, Li W, Zheng W, Xu D, Chen N, Cui J. Promising targets based on pattern recognition receptors for cancer immunotherapy. *Pharmacol Res* 2020; **159**: 105017 [PMID: 32561479 DOI: 10.1016/j.phrs.2020.105017]
46 **Liu Z**, Ren Y, Weng S, Xu H, Li L, Han X. A New Trend in Cancer Treatment: The Combination of Epigenetics and Immunotherapy. *Front Immunol* 2022; **13**: 809761 [PMID: 35140720 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2022.809761]
47 **Liu J**, Fu M, Wang M, Wan D, Wei Y, Wei X. Cancer vaccines as promising immuno-therapeutics: platforms and current progress. *J Hematol Oncol* 2022; **15**: 28 [PMID: 35303904 DOI: 10.1186/s13045-022-01247-x]
48 **Ebert PJR**, Cheung J, Yang Y, McNamara E, Hong R, Moskalenko M, Gould SE, Maecker H, Irving BA, Kim JM, Belvin M, Mellman I. MAP Kinase Inhibition Promotes T Cell and Anti-tumor Activity in Combination with PD-L1 Checkpoint Blockade. *Immunity* 2016; **44**: 609-621 [PMID: 26944201 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2016.01.024]
49 **Napolitano S**, Matrone N, Muddassir AL, Martini G, Sorokin A, De Falco V, Giunta EF, Ciardiello D, Martinelli E, Belli V, Furia M, Kopetz S, Morgillo F, Ciardiello F, Troiani T. Triple blockade of EGFR, MEK and PD-L1 has antitumor activity in colorectal cancer models with constitutive activation of MAPK signaling and PD-L1 overexpression. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 2019; **38**: 492 [PMID: 31842958 DOI: 10.1186/s13046-019-1497-0]
50 **Calon A**, Espinet E, Palomo-Ponce S, Tauriello DV, Iglesias M, Céspedes MV, Sevillano M, Nadal C, Jung P, Zhang XH, Byrom D, Riera A, Rossell D, Mangues R, Massagué J, Sancho E, Batlle E. Dependency of colorectal cancer on a TGF-β-driven program in stromal cells for metastasis initiation. *Cancer Cell* 2012; **22**: 571-584 [PMID: 23153532 DOI:

10.1016/j.ccr.2012.08.013]
51 **Wei N**, Li J, Fang C, Chang J, Xirou V, Syrigos NK, Marks BJ, Chu E, Schmitz JC. Targeting colon cancer with the novel STAT3 inhibitor bruceantinol. *Oncogene* 2019; **38**: 1676-1687 [PMID: 30348989 DOI: 10.1038/s41388-018-0547-y]
52 **Abril-Rodriguez G**, Torrejon DY, Liu W, Zaretsky JM, Nowicki TS, Tsoi J, Puig-Saus C, Baselga-Carretero I, Medina E, Quist MJ, Garcia AJ, Senapedis W, Baloglu E, Kalbasi A, Cheung-Lau G, Berent-Maoz B, Comin-Anduix B, Hu-Lieskovan S, Wang CY, Grasso CS, Ribas A. PAK4 inhibition improves PD-1 blockade immunotherapy. *Nat Cancer* 2020; **1**: 46-58 [PMID: 34368780 DOI: 10.1038/s43018-019-0003-0]
53 **Qi L**, Sun B, Liu Z, Li H, Gao J, Leng X. Dickkopf-1 inhibits epithelial-mesenchymal transition of colon cancer cells and contributes to colon cancer suppression. *Cancer Sci* 2012; **103**: 828-835 [PMID: 22321022 DOI: 10.1111/j.1349-7006.2012.02222.x]
54 **Rahbari NN**, Kedrin D, Incio J, Liu H, Ho WW, Nia HT, Edrich CM, Jung K, Daubriac J, Chen I, Heishi T, Martin JD, Huang Y, Maimon N, Reissfelder C, Weitz J, Boucher Y, Clark JW, Grodzinsky AJ, Duda DG, Jain RK, Fukumura D. Anti-VEGF therapy induces ECM remodeling and mechanical barriers to therapy in colorectal cancer liver metastases. *Sci Transl Med* 2016; **8**: 360ra135 [PMID: 27733559 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aaf5219]
55 **Jung K**, Heishi T, Incio J, Huang Y, Beech EY, Pinter M, Ho WW, Kawaguchi K, Rahbari NN, Chung E, Kim JK, Clark JW, Willett CG, Yun SH, Luster AD, Padera TP, Jain RK, Fukumura D. Targeting CXCR4-dependent immunosuppressive Ly6C(low) monocytes improves antiangiogenic therapy in colorectal cancer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2017; **114**: 10455-10460 [PMID: 28900008 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1710754114]
56 **Chen X**, Xu J, Guo Q, Wang L, Yang Y, Guo H, Gu N, Zhang D, Qian W, Hou S, Li J, Dai J, Guo Y, Wang H. Therapeutic efficacy of an anti-PD-L1 antibody based immunocytokine in a metastatic mouse model of colorectal cancer. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2016; **480**: 160-165 [PMID: 27720718 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2016.10.011]
57 **Tong J**, Tan X, Song X, Gao M, Risnik D, Hao S, Ermine K, Wang P, Li H, Huang Y, Yu J, Zhang L. CDK4/6 Inhibition Suppresses p73 Phosphorylation and Activates DR5 to Potentiate Chemotherapy and Immune Checkpoint Blockade. *Cancer Res* 2022; **82**: 1340-1352 [PMID: 35149588 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-21-3062]
58 **Santiago L**, Castro M, Sanz-Pamplona R, Garzón M, Ramirez-Labrada A, Tapia E, Moreno V, Layunta E, Gil-Gómez G, Garrido M, Peña R, Lanuza PM, Comas L, Jaime-Sanchez P, Uranga-Murillo I, Del Campo R, Pelegrín P, Camerer E, Martínez-Lostao L, Muñoz G, Uranga JA, Alcalde A, Galvez EM, Ferrandez A, Bird PI, Metkar S, Arias MA, Pardo J. Extracellular Granzyme A Promotes Colorectal Cancer Development by Enhancing Gut Inflammation. *Cell Rep* 2020; **32**: 107847 [PMID: 32640217 DOI: 10.1016/j.celrep.2020.107847]
59 **Lee WS**, Yang H, Chon HJ, Kim C. Combination of anti-angiogenic therapy and immune checkpoint blockade normalizes vascular-immune crosstalk to potentiate cancer immunity. *Exp Mol Med* 2020; **52**: 1475-1485 [PMID: 32913278 DOI: 10.1038/s12276-020-00500-y]
60 **Khare T**, Bissonnette M, Khare S. CXCL12-CXCR4/CXCR7 Axis in Colorectal Cancer: Therapeutic Target in Preclinical and Clinical Studies. *Int J Mol Sci* 2021; **22** [PMID: 34298991 DOI: 10.3390/ijms22147371]
61 **D'Alterio C**, Zannetti A, Trotta AM, Ieranò C, Napolitano M, Rea G, Greco A, Maiolino P, Albanese S, Scognamiglio G, Tatangelo F, Tafuto S, Portella L, Santagata S, Nasti G, Ottaiano A, Pacelli R, Delrio P, Botti G, Scala S. New CXCR4 Antagonist Peptide R (Pep R) Improves Standard Therapy in Colorectal Cancer. *Cancers (Basel)* 2020; **12** [PMID: 32708431 DOI: 10.3390/cancers12071952]
62 **Runbeck E**, Crescioli S, Karagiannis SN, Papa S. Utilizing Immunocytokines for Cancer Therapy. *Antibodies (Basel)* 2021; **10** [PMID: 33803078 DOI: 10.3390/antib10010010]
63 **Gmeiner WH**. Fluoropyrimidine Modulation of the Anti-Tumor Immune Response-Prospects for Improved Colorectal Cancer Treatment. *Cancers (Basel)* 2020; **12** [PMID: 32575843 DOI: 10.3390/cancers12061641]
64 **Sahin IH**, Ciombor KK, Diaz LA, Yu J, Kim R. Immunotherapy for Microsatellite Stable Colorectal Cancers: Challenges and Novel Therapeutic Avenues. *Am Soc Clin Oncol Educ Book* 2022; **42**: 1-12 [PMID: 35658496 DOI: 10.1200/EDBK_349811]
65 **Asaoka Y**, Ijichi H, Koike K. PD-1 Blockade in Tumors with Mismatch-Repair Deficiency. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **373**: 1979 [PMID: 26559583 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc1510353]
66 **Le DT**, Durham JN, Smith KN, Wang H, Bartlett BR, Aulakh LK, Lu S, Kemberling H, Wilt C, Luber BS, Wong F, Azad NS, Rucki AA, Laheru D, Donehower R, Zaheer A, Fisher GA, Crocenzi TS, Lee JJ, Greten TF, Duffy AG, Ciombor KK, Eyring AD, Lam BH, Joe A, Kang SP, Holdhoff M, Danilova L, Cope L, Meyer C, Zhou S, Goldberg RM, Armstrong DK, Bever KM, Fader AN, Taube J, Housseau F, Spetzler D, Xiao N, Pardoll DM, Papadopoulos N, Kinzler KW, Eshleman JR, Vogelstein B, Anders RA, Diaz LA Jr. Mismatch repair deficiency predicts response of solid tumors to PD-1 blockade. *Science* 2017; **357**: 409-413 [PMID: 28596308 DOI: 10.1126/science.aan6733]
67 **Brahmer JR**, Drake CG, Wollner I, Powderly JD, Picus J, Sharfman WH, Stankevich E, Pons A, Salay TM, McMiller TL, Gilson MM, Wang C, Selby M, Taube JM, Anders R, Chen L, Korman AJ, Pardoll DM, Lowy I, Topalian SL. Phase I study of single-agent anti-programmed death-1 (MDX-1106) in refractory solid tumors: safety, clinical activity, pharmacodynamics, and immunologic correlates. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 3167-3175 [PMID: 20516446 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2009.26.7609]
68 **Hellmann MD**, Rizvi NA, Goldman JW, Gettinger SN, Borghaei H, Brahmer JR, Ready NE, Gerber DE, Chow LQ, Juergens RA, Shepherd FA, Laurie SA, Geese WJ, Agrawal S, Young TC, Li X, Antonia SJ. Nivolumab plus ipilimumab as first-line treatment for advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (CheckMate 012): results of an open-label, phase 1, multicohort study. *Lancet Oncol* 2017; **18**: 31-41 [PMID: 27932067 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(16)30624-6]
69 **Tabernero J**, Melero I, Ros W, Argilés G, Marabelle A, Rodriguez-Ruiz ME, Albanell J, Calvo E, Moreno V, Cleary JM, Eder JP, Karanikas V, Bouseida S, Sandoval F, Sabanes D, Sreckovic S, Hurwitz H, Paz-Ares LG, Saro J, Segal NH. Phase Ia and Ib studies of the novel carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) T-cell bispecific (CEA CD3 TCB) antibody as a single agent and in combination with atezolizumab: Preliminary efficacy and safety in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC). *J Clin Oncol* 2017; **35**: 3002-3002 [DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2017.35.15_suppl.3002]
70 **Jakubowski C**, Collins NB, Sugar EA, Berg M, Cao H, Giannakis M, Jaffee EM, Azad NS. A phase I/II study of PI3Kinase inhibition with copanlisib combined with the anti-PD-1 antibody nivolumab in relapsed/refractory solid tumors

with expansions in MSS colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2020; **38**: TPS4114-TPS4114 [DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2020.38.15_suppl.TPS4114]

71 **Bai Y**, Xu N, An S, Chen W, Gao C, Zhang D. A phase ib trial of assessing the safety and preliminary efficacy of a combination therapy of geptanolimab (GB 226) plus fruquintinib in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC). *J Clin Oncol* 2021; **39**: e15551-e15551 [DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2021.39.15_suppl.e15551]

72 **Wang F**, He MM, Yao YC, Zhao X, Wang ZQ, Jin Y, Luo HY, Li JB, Wang FH, Qiu MZ, Lv ZD, Wang DS, Li YH, Zhang DS, Xu RH. Regorafenib plus toripalimab in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer: a phase Ib/II clinical trial and gut microbiome analysis. *Cell Rep Med* 2021; **2**: 100383 [PMID: 34622226 DOI: 10.1016/j.xcrm.2021.100383]

73 **Loree JM**, Topham JT, Kennecke HF, Feilotter H, Lee YS, Virk S, Kopetz S, Duose DY, Manyam GC, Morris JS, Maru DM, Renouf D, Jonker DJ, Tu D, O'Callaghan CJ, Chen EX. Impact of consensus molecular subtyping (CMS) on survival in the CO.26 trial of durvalumab plus tremelimumab *vs* best supportive care (BSC) in metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC). *J Clin Oncol* 2022; **40**: 3551-3551 [DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2022.40.16_suppl.3551]

74 **Bauer TM**, Lin CC, Greil R, Goebeler ME, Huetter-Kroenke ML, Garrido-Laguna I, Santoro A, Perotti A, Spreafico A, Yau T, Joerger M, Cremasco V, Dostalek M, Pelletier M, Barys L, Lu D, Katsanou V, Fabre C, Doi T. Phase Ib study of the anti-TGF-β monoclonal antibody (mAb) NIS793 combined with spartalizumab (PDR001), a PD-1 inhibitor, in patients (pts) with advanced solid tumors. *J Clin Oncol* 2021; **39**: 2509-2509 [DOI: 10.1200/jco.2021.39.15_suppl.2509]

75 **Wu Z**, Hu H, Zhang J, Cai Y, Xie X, Ling J, Li W, Deng Y. PD-1 blockade combined with COX inhibitor in patients with MSI-H/dMMR or high TMB, advanced or metastatic colorectal cancer (PCOX study). *J Clin Oncol* 2020; **38**: 111-111 [DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2020.38.4_suppl.111]

76 **Ghiringhelli F**, Chibaudel B, Taieb J, Bennouna J, Martin-Babau J, Fonck M, Borg C, Cohen R, Thibaudin M, Limagne E, Fumet J-D. Durvalumab and tremelimumab in combination with FOLFOX in patients with RAS-mutated, microsatellite-stable, previously untreated metastatic colorectal cancer (MCRC): Results of the first intermediate analysis of the phase Ib/II MEDETREME trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2020; **38**: 3006-3006 [DOI: 10.1200/jco.2020.38.15_suppl.3006]

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2023 February 15; 15(2): 225-239

DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.225

ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

REVIEW

Role of ferroptosis in colorectal cancer

Ya-Qi Song, Xiao-Dan Yan, Yi Wang, Zhen-Zhen Wang, Xin-Li Mao, Li-Ping Ye, Shao-Wei Li

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Lamballe F, France; Sato T, Japan

Received: September 19, 2022
Peer-review started: September 19, 2022
First decision: December 1, 2022
Revised: December 15, 2022
Accepted: January 9, 2023
Article in press: January 9, 2023
Published online: February 15, 2023

Ya-Qi Song, Li-Ping Ye, Taizhou Hospital of Zhejiang Province, Zhejiang University, Linhai 317000, Zhejiang Province, China

Xiao-Dan Yan, Yi Wang, Zhen-Zhen Wang, Xin-Li Mao, Li-Ping Ye, Shao-Wei Li, Department of Gastroenterology, Taizhou Hospital of Zhejiang Province Affiliated to Wenzhou Medical University, Linhai 317000, Zhejiang Province, China

Li-Ping Ye, Shao-Wei Li, Institute of Digestive Disease, Taizhou Hospital of Zhejiang Province Affiliated to Wenzhou Medical University, Linhai 317000, Zhejiang Province, China

Shao-Wei Li, Key Laboratory of Minimally Invasive Techniques & Rapid Rehabilitation of Digestive System Tumor of Zhejiang Province, Taizhou Hospital of Zhejiang Province Affiliated to Wenzhou Medical University, Linhai 317000, Zhejiang Province, China

Corresponding author: Shao-Wei Li, PhD, Associate Professor, Department of Gastroenterology, Taizhou Hospital of Zhejiang Province Affiliated to Wenzhou Medical University, No. 150 Ximen Street, Linhai 317000, Zhejiang Province, China.
li_shaowei81@hotmail.com

Abstract

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is the second deadliest cancer and the third-most common malignancy in the world. Surgery, chemotherapy, and targeted therapy have been widely used to treat CRC, but some patients still develop resistance to these treatments. Ferroptosis is a novel non-apoptotic form of cell death. It is an iron-dependent non-apoptotic cell death characterized by the accumulation of lipid reactive oxygen species and has been suggested to play a role in reversing resistance to anticancer drugs. This review summarizes recent advances in the prognostic role of ferroptosis in CRC and the mechanism of action in CRC.

Key Words: Ferroptosis; Colorectal cancer; System X_c^-; Glutathione; Glutathione peroxidase 4

©The Author(s) 2023. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: The prognosis of patients with advanced colorectal cancer is still poor, largely due to resistance to anticancer drugs. Ferroptosis is a novel form of non-apoptotic cell death, mainly characterized by abnormal iron metabolism and the excessive accumulation of lipid peroxidation. Studies have shown that ferroptosis can participate in the process of colorectal cancer (CRC) through the accumulation of lipid peroxides, inhibition of the System X_c^-, disruption of the glutathione/glutathione peroxidase 4 balance, imbalance of iron homeostasis, and mediation of the P53 pathway. Induction of ferroptosis can reverse the resistance of anticancer drugs and improve the prognosis of CRC patients.

Citation: Song YQ, Yan XD, Wang Y, Wang ZZ, Mao XL, Ye LP, Li SW. Role of ferroptosis in colorectal cancer. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2023; 15(2): 225-239
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v15/i2/225.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.225

INTRODUCTION

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is a common gastrointestinal malignancy and the second-most common cause of cancer death. During the last decade (2010-2019), CRC mortality declined by about 2% *per* year but increased among those under 50 years old[1]. The oncogenesis and development of CRC involve multiple genes and steps, which is an extremely complex process.

Studies have shown that CRC cells have characteristics of strong proliferation, easy recurrence and easy metastasis[2], but there are few effective therapeutic targets for CRC patients[3]. At present, the comprehensive treatment of CRC includes surgical resection, neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy, postoperative chemoradiotherapy, targeted therapy, immunotherapy and other methods, but the prognosis of patients with advanced CRC is still poor.

Cell death is a basic life process and can be divided into accidental cell death and regulated cell death (RCD). RCD can be further divided into the category of apoptosis, pyroptosis, necroptosis and ferroptosis[4]. Ferroptosis, first reported in 2012, is a newly defined form of RCD involving iron-dependent, non-apoptotic cell death. The characterization methods included free iron and lipid reactive oxygen species (ROS), particularly lipid hydroperoxides[5], and by cytoplasmic and organelle swelling, chromatin condensation and mitochondrial disorder[6,7]. Studies have shown that the tumor cell survival is highly dependent on an abnormally activated antioxidant system.

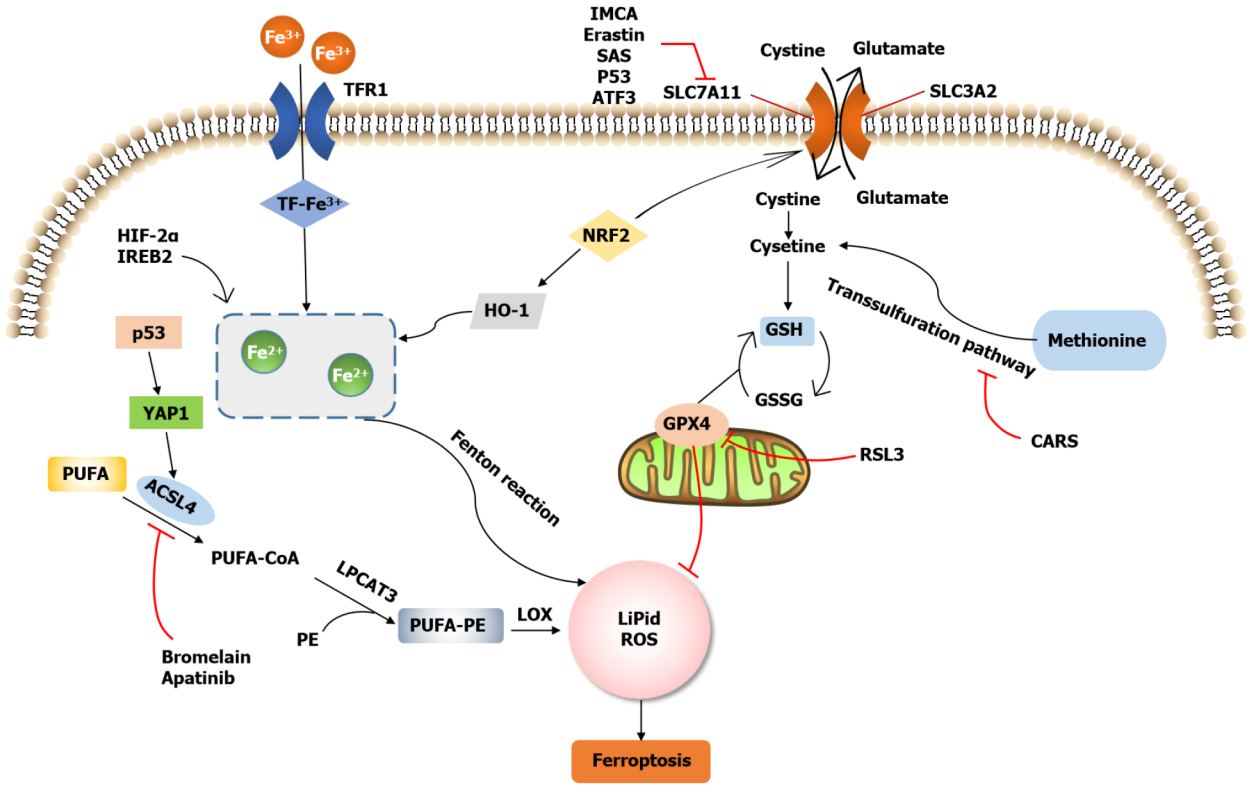
Several therapeutic targets associated with ferroptosis have been identified in CRC (Figure 1). The induction of ferroptosis is also considered a promising research direction in cancer resistance.

FERROPTOSIS-RELATED INDICATORS CAN PREDICT THE PROGNOSIS OF CRC

Recently, a growing number of studies have shown that genes involved in ferroptosis are associated with the prognosis of CRC patients. CRC has a high recurrence rate and individual heterogeneity, so it is desirable to have good prognostic biomarkers that can be used to predict high-risk patients in order to help patients obtain appropriate treatment.

In an analytical study combining samples from eight CRC patients with the TCGA public database, changes in ferroptosis in CRC patients at various molecular levels, ranging from DNA, RNA and proteins to epigenetic modifications, were described, and four ferroptosis-related genes associated with the prognosis were identified: Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2A (CDKN2A), glutathione peroxidase 4 (GPX4), arachidonic acid lipoxygenase 3 (ALOXE3) and LINC00336[8]. Another study constructed a clinical prediction model including GPX4, NOX1 and Acyl-CoA synthetase long-chain family member 4 (ACSL4) that effectively reflected the prognosis, tumor progression and asthma control test responsiveness of CRC patients. It is also worth noting that tumors with low ferroptosis scores may infiltrate more CD4+ and CD8+ T cells and fewer M1 macrophages[9]. ALOX5 is considered a key ferroptosis-related gene associated with a poor prognosis in CRC patients, and it regulates ferroptosis in cancer cells through lipid peroxidation[10,11]. CRC patients with an increased NOX1 expression and decreased BRAF status have a higher survival rate than others, and genes positively correlated with NOX1 are also significantly correlated with the CRC survival rate. The mechanism underlying NOX1 and BRAF mutations needs to be further explored[12]. A prognostic model combining genes related to oxidative stress and ferroptosis can distinguish CRC as hot and cold tumors. Patients in the low-risk group responded better to fluorouracil chemotherapy and immune checkpoint blocking therapy than those in the high-risk group[13].

Long non-coding RNA (lncRNA) is non-coding RNA longer than 200 nucleotides and refers to the major class of transcripts encoded by the genome but mostly not translated into proteins[14]. LncRNA plays a key role in regulating cancer proliferation, the cell cycle, metastasis and programmed death[15,



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.225 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 1 Mechanisms of ferroptosis in colorectal cancer. The diagram shows several potential regulatory pathways for ferroptosis. Including Xc-system, lipid peroxide accumulation, sulfur transfer pathway, glutathione/glutathione peroxidase 4 lipid repair system, Nrf2-H0-1, cellular iron homeostasis, p53, *etc*. TFR1: Transferrin receptor 1; TF: Transferrin; IREB2: Iron response element-binding protein 2; PUFA: Polyunsaturated fatty acid; ACSL4: Acyl-CoA synthetase long-chain family member 4; LPCAT3: Lysophosphatidylcholine acyltransferase 3; PE: Phosphatidylethanolamine; LOX: Lipoxygenase; NRF2: Nuclear factor erythroid 2-related factor; HO-1: Haem oxygenase 1; SLC7A11: Solute carrier family 7 member 11; IMCA: Benzopyran derivative 2-imino-6-methoxy-2H-chromene-3-carbothioamide; SAS: Sulphasalazine; GSH: Glutathione; GSSG: Oxidized glutathione; GPX4: Glutathione peroxidase 4; RSL3: Ras-selective lethal 3; CARS: Cysteinyl-tRNA synthetase; ATF3: Activating transcription factor 3; YAP1: Yes-associated protein 1.

16]. The abnormal expression of lncRNA is associated with the risk of CRC, imbuing it with clinical potential as a stratification marker, diagnostic index and therapeutic target of CRC[17-20]. A model containing only four lncRNAs was able to well predict the prognosis, vein invasion and lymphatic metastasis in CRC patients, and it was proven that AP003555.1 and AC005841.1 induced ferroptosis by regulating Erastin[21]. The lncRNA model including AC016027.1, AC099850.3, ELFN1-AS1 and VPS9D1-AS1 was able to accurately predict the prognosis of CRC patients and showed great potential to guide individualized treatment[22]. Cai *et al*[23] summarized the details of seven ferroptosis-related lncRNAs to predict the prognosis of CRC patients and found that these lncRNAs were mainly enriched in the mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) signaling pathway, mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) signaling pathway and glutathione (GSH) metabolism pathway[23]. LINC00239 increased Nrf2 protein stability by inhibiting Nrf2 ubiquitination and decreased the antitumor activity of erastin and Ras-selective lethal 3 (RSL3)[24]. Circular RNA also plays an important role in ferroptosis. CircABCB10 serves as a sponge of Mir-326 and eventually regulates ferroptosis of CRC by regulating CCL5[25].

In addition to being an independent clinical prognostic factor for CRC patients, genes associated with ferroptosis can also accurately predict the clinical status, including tumor occurrence and progression, drug resistance, somatic mutations and the immune function[26,27], which provides a new research direction for targeted therapy or immunotherapy.

MECHANISM OF ACTION OF FERROPTOSIS IN CRC

The accumulation of lipid peroxides is the core process of ferroptosis

The process of lipid peroxide accumulation in cells is the crucial section of ferroptosis. Polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs) containing diallyl matrigel are prone to hydrogen deprivation, causing the formation of lipid peroxides and inducing ferroptosis[28]. When PUFAs are replaced by monounsaturated fatty acids (MUFAs) in the plasma membrane, lipid ROS accumulation is hindered, and ferroptosis is prevented[29]. With the process of esterification into membrane phospholipids and

oxidation into ferroptosis signals, free PUFAs then can be joined into the lipid signaling mediator syntheses[30]. Several studies have shown that phosphatidylethanolamines, a key phospholipid containing arachidonic acid (AA) or its derivative epinephrine (AdA), are oxidized to oxophosphatidylethanolamines to induce ferroptosis[31]. Elongation of very-long-chain fatty acid protein 5 (ELOVL5) and fatty acid desaturase 1 are can participate in AA and AdA synthesis, which can effectively inhibit ferroptosis[32]. Furthermore, regulatory enzymes involved in membrane phospholipid biosynthesis of PUFAs, such as ACSL4[33] and lysophosphatidylcholine acyltransferase 3 (LPCAT3)[34], can also trigger or prevent ferroptosis. However, the effect of LPCAT3 on ferroptosis was mild compared to that of ASCL4[34].

Bromelain, a pineapple stem extract, potently induces cell ferroptosis and inhibits the proliferation of Kras mutant CRC in Kras mutant cell lines by regulating ACSL-4 Levels compared to Kras wild-type cells[35]. The behavers of Emodin, inhibiting ACSL4 expression, which can inhibit the proliferation and invasion of CRC, bring new research directions for CRC[36].

Apatinib, also known as YN968D1, as a third-line therapy can effectively improve the prognosis of patients with metastatic CRC[37]. ELOVL6 is a target of apatinib. By orienting the ELOVL6, Apatinib can promote ferroptosis with result of ACSL4 regulation, which has been verified by a co-IP assay. This suggests that apatinib inhibits CRC cell viability, at least in part, by targeting ELOVL6/ACSL4 signaling, thus providing novel mechanistic support for the use of apatinib in the clinical treatment of CRC patients[38].

Inhibition of System X_c^- induces ferroptosis

GSH has been known as a crucial antioxidant. It can bind toxic molecules, such as free radicals and heavy metals, and convert them into harmless substances that are excreted[39]. GSH is also the first line of defense in the body to scavenge free radicals, which can effectively inhibit ferroptosis, and has a strong protective effect on the body[40]. System X_c^- is a heterodimer, which was constructed by a heavy-chain subunit and a light-chain subunit (SLC7A11) that assists in the transmembrane transport of cystine and glutamate. Upon entry into the cell, cystine is reduced to cysteine[41], and together with cysteine and glycine, GSH is synthesized intracellularly. Therefore, System X_c^- plays an important role in maintaining GSH homeostasis.

Studies have suggested that System X_c^- may mediate ferroptosis by affecting the glutamate uptake and GSH synthesis[42,43]. Erastin and sulfasalazine are inhibitors of System Xc^- that can lead to intracellular GSH deficiency and ferroptosis by affecting intracellular GSH homeostasis[44,45]. By regulating the expression of SLC7A11, a functional subunit of X_c^-, it can affect the activity of System X_c^- and the susceptibility to ferroptosis in cancer cells[46-48].

Knockdown of SLC7A11 attenuates the viability of CRC stem cells by increasing ROS levels and decreasing cysteine and GSH levels[49]. Talaroconvolutin A is a natural product, and studies have shown that, in addition to inducing ferroptosis by increasing ROS levels in cancer cells, this compound can also promote ferroptosis by down-regulating the SLC7A11 expression and up-regulating the ALOXE3 expression, becoming a new potentially powerful drug candidate for CRC therapy[50]. Copper overload mediated by the copper chelator elesclomol inhibits CRC both *in vitro* and *in vivo*, and one of its pathways may induce ferroptosis by promoting the degradation of SLC7A11[51].

The benzopyran derivative 2-imino-6-methoxy-2H-chromene-3-carbothioamide (IMCA) is considered to significantly inhibit the viability of CRC cells. IMCA can downregulate the expression of SLC7A11 and reduce cysteine and GSH glycine content, which leads to the accumulation of ROS and ferroptosis. In contrast, the overexpression of SLC7A11 was shown to attenuate ferroptosis induced by IMCA, which was confirmed to be involved in the activated protein kinase/mTOR/p70S6k signaling pathway [52].

Petunidin 3-O-[rhamnopyranosyl-(trans-p-coumaroyl)]-5-O-(β-D-glucopyranoside) is a flavonoid compound. CRC cell proliferation can be inhibited by down-regulating SLC7A11 to reduce ferroptosis [53].

Resveratrol (RSV) has been shown to promote ferroptosis by down-regulating the expression of SLC7A11 and GPX4. Combined with bionic nanocarriers, RSV's therapeutic potential as ferroptosis inducing anticancer agent has been developed. The bionic nanomaterial coated the RSV-supported poly (ε-caprolactone) poly (ethylene glycol) nanoparticles on the erythrocyte membrane to improve the transmission efficiency of RSV[54].

Several ferroptosis-related genes are concentrated on System X_c^-. Activating transcription factor 3 (ATF3) promotes ferroptosis by inhibiting System X_c^-[55]. Deficiency of CDKN2A and growth differentiation factor 15 downregulates SLC7A11 expression, thereby sensitizing cells to ferroptosis[56,57].

Radiotherapy and poly-ADP-ribose polymerase inhibitors have been used in clinical trials in the treatment of CRC, the mechanism of which may be ionizing radiation activation of dsDNA that modulates ferroptosis through activation of the ATF3-SLC7A11 pathway. Triggers cGAS signaling mediated tumor control in cancer cell lines and mouse xenograft models[58].

The transsulfuration pathway is a regulator of ferroptosis resistance

More than 40% of the source of cysteine came from diet, and transfer to GSH *via* a biochemical process in body, which can combat the excessive deposition of peroxide. In addition to being transported into

cells by System X_c^-, cysteine can also be converted intracellularly by methionine *via* the transsulfuration pathway[59].

Cystathionine-β-synthase (CBS), an enzymatic component of the transsulfuration pathway, is significantly increased in cells resistant to Erastin-induced ferroptosis[60]. CBS has also been shown to be an independent regulator of ferroptosis[61,62]. Endogenous H2S, a by-product of the transsulfuration pathway, is closely related to tumor cell physiology and is finely regulated in a variety of cancers[63, 64]. Xc(-) transporter-related protein (xCT), a functional subunit of system X_c^-, was shown to interfere with xCT in colon cancer cells, resulting in an increased expression of cystathionine-γ-lyase and CBS, which are majority of the transsulfuration pathway. Additionally, the endogenous H2S levels can be significantly decreased by interfering with xCT. The correlation of xCT and transsulfuration pathway has been investigated that is a makeable metabolic vulnerability.

Cysteinyl-tRNA synthetase, a genetic suppressor of ferroptosis, upturns the sulfur pathway and re-sensitizes cells to erastin, demonstrating a new mechanism for resistance to ferroptosis[65]. This implies that the transsulfuration pathway is a regulator of ferroptosis resistance.

Zinc oxide has outstanding desulfurization ability, and VZnO can effectively reduce the content of H_2S in CRC, effectively deplete GSH in tumor cells and ultimately lead to ferroptosis in CRC cells, providing an effective strategy for CRC treatment[66].

Disruption of the GSH/GPX4 lipid repair system can promote the accumulation of lipid ROS

ROS levels in the body are regulated by the antioxidant defense system, and oxidant/antioxidant imbalance may also contribute to ferroptosis[67]. GPX4 is an important selenoprotein that belongs to the GPX antioxidant defense system and is a considerable enzyme to balance the concentration of GSH and GS-SG. GPX4 protects membrane lipid bilayers by transferring toxic lipid hydroperoxides to nontoxic lipid alcohols[68]. GPX4 has been literately proved as a factor of ferroptosis promotor and can be trigger by ferroptosis inducers, such as Erastin and RSL3. Likewise, direct knockdown of GPX4 Leading to the excessive accumulation of intracellular lipid peroxidation and cell death[69]. Thus, GPX4 is consider as a crucial target to trigger ferroptosis[70,71].

In experiments with three different CRC cells (HCT116, LoVo and HT29), RSL3 was found to trigger cellular ferroptosis in a dose- and time-dependent manner due to increased ROS levels and destabilization of the intracellular iron pool. In a further analysis, GPX4 inhibition was proven to be a key determinant of RSL3-induced ferroptosis, and overexpression of GPX4 rescued RSL3-induced ferroptosis[72]. Aspirin has been reported to have therapeutic benefits for CRC carrying carcinogenic PIK3CA. The mechanism may be that aspirin inhibits protein kinase B/mTOR signaling. The expression of downstream sterol regulatory elm-binding protein 1 was inhibited, and the production of MUFA fat by stearoyl-CoA desaturase-1 was reduced. Thus promoting RSL3-induced ferroptosis in CRC cells[73].

Serine- and arginine-rich splicing factor 9 (SRSF9) is frequently overexpressed in multiple tumor types and manifests as a proto-oncogene[74-76]. SFRS9 upregulates GPX4 protein, which is an obstacle to ferroptosis[77]. Knockdown of SFRS9 may be an effective treatment for CRC. In CRC tissues, the expression of SFRS9 mRNA and protein was significantly higher than that in adjacent tissues. Experiments in mice demonstrate that regulation of GPX4 by SRSF9 is an important mechanism driving CRC tumorigenesis and resistance to Erastin-induced ferroptosis. This molecular mechanism may provide a novel approach to improving the sensitivity of CRC to Erastin[78].

ACADSB is a member of the Acyl-CoA dehydrogenase family, and its overexpression inhibits the migration, invasion and proliferation of CRC cells. Studies have shown that ACADSB negatively regulates the expression of GSH reductase and GPX4 while increasing the concentrations of malondialdehyde, Fe ions and superoxide dismutase. This suggests that ACADSB may affect CRC cell migration, invasion and proliferation by regulating CRC cell ferroptosis[79].

ROS causes GSH accumulation through nuclear factor erythroid 2-related factor

Antioxidant proteins, such as Nrf2, are major antioxidant transcription factors that help prevent the accumulation of excess ROS and maintain redox homeostasis. Downregulation of Nrf2 enhances the sensitivity of cancer cells to ferroptosis promoters[80].

The Warburg effect is thought to be a characteristic of cancer cells, that is, cancer cells will undergo glycolysis beyond very high levels under aerobic conditions[81]. Inhibition of the Warburg effect reduces the ability of cells to proliferate. Therefore, inhibiting the Warburg effect may be a therapeutic strategy for cancer. *In vivo* and *in vitro* experiments in CRC showed that iron-induced ROS activated the expression of Nrf2 in the nucleus has the positive correlation with Warbury enzymes expression and CRC cell proliferation by enhancing the Warburg effect.

Heme oxygenase 1 (HO-1) is a downstream gene of Nrf2, and NGF2 protects against lipid peroxidation[80] and ferroptosis through the transcription of enzymes such as HO-1[82]. Ferroptosis can be effectively alleviated by the elimination of lipid oxidation through the Nrf2/HO-1 axis activation[83, 84].

Tagitin C, a sesquiterpene lactone[85], can induce ferroptosis in HCT116 cells and inhibit the growth of CRC cells. Mechanistically, Tagitinin C induces endoplasmic reticulum stress and oxidative stress as well as nuclear translocation of Nrf2. As a downstream gene of Nrf2, HO-1 was significantly increased with Tagitinin C treatment[86].

Tagitinin C-induced ferroptosis was accompanied by a decrease in GSH levels and an increase in lipid peroxidation. Cetuximab combined with chemotherapy has made great progress in the treatment of metastatic CRC[87], but cetuximab is not effective in CRC patients with KRAS mutations[88,89].

Lysionotin (Lys), a flavonoid, has been demonstrated to successfully inhibit cell proliferation, migration and invasion of HCT116 and SW480 CRC cells *in vitro*. Lys treatment worked by increasing Nrf2 cells' degradation rate to reduce the concentration of Nrf2 protein, inducing ferroptosis and ROS accumulation in CRC cells[90].

P38 MAPK has been investigated that participate in the regulation of Nrf2/HO-1[91,92]. It has been shown that cetuximab can significantly inhibit Nrf2/HO-1 signaling through p38 MAPK activation in KRAS-mutant CRC cell lines, thereby promoting RSL3-induced ferroptosis. This provides a research direction for cetuximab in the treatment of KRAS-mutant CRC[93].

Oxaliplatin is the first-line chemotherapy drug for CRC. By inhibiting the Nrf2 signaling pathway, the sensitivity of CRC cells to oxaliplatin can be enhanced[94,95]. Furthermore, the study found that oxaliplatin significantly inhibited the protein expression of Nrf2, HO-1 and NQ in the Nrf2 signaling pathway in a dose-dependent manner. Therefore, the anticancer effect of oxaliplatin may be enhanced by inhibiting the Nrf2 signaling pathway, leading to ferroptosis and oxidative stress in CRC cells[96].

Cellular iron homeostasis is a key factor in ferroptosis

The primary condition for the initiation of ferroptosis pathway is the need of iron ion. Dietary iron is absorbed primarily in the gut as ferric ion and delivered to the blood by transferrin (TF). In general, extracellular iron transport into the cell through the sequence of complexing with circulating TF, then binds to membrane TF receptor proten-1 (TFR1), finally to the cytoplasmic unstable iron pool. Excess cellular iron is stored as ferritin or transported extracellularly by ferritin[97,98]. Maintenance of cellular iron homeostasis prevents oxidative damage, cytotoxicity and death.

Lipid reactions can be divided into enzymatic and non-enzymatic reactions. Iron can promote the production of ROS through the Fenton reaction, leading to enzymatic lipid peroxidation[99,100], and also acts in a non-enzymatic manner as a cofactor for lipid-oxidizing lipoxygenase. Supplementation of exogenous iron ions can accelerate erastin-induced ferroptosis[5]. Knockout the gene encoding the TFR or upregulate the expression of iron storage proteins can inhibit iron overload and ferroptosis. Iron metabolism can be regulated by inhibition of the major transcription factors, like iron regulatory protein 2, significantly upregulates the expression of iron metabolism-related genes, such as *FTH1* and *FTL*, thereby inhibiting erastin-induced ferroptosis[101]. Iron chelators can prevent the transfer of electrons from iron to oxides, thus inhibiting the production of oxygen free radicals and inhibiting lipid peroxidation to prevent ferroptosis. Therefore, the regulation of iron metabolism and ferritin phagocytosis may become new targets and new pathways for regulating ferroptosis.

Hypoxia-inducible factor-2α (HIF-2α) is a master transcriptional regulator of cellular iron levels[102]. Activation of HIF-2α increases cellular iron in CRC, leading to an increase in lipid ROS and a decrease in GSH production, thus enhancing cellular sensitivity to ferroptosis[103].

There is a conserved miR-545 binding site in the 3' untranslated region of TF, and the overexpression of TF in CRC cells was found to induce increased levels of ROS, MDA and Fe^{2+}, thereby promoting CRC cell death. This suggests that miR-545 may play an oncogenic role in CRC by regulating the iron accumulation in cells[104].

Dichloroacetate attenuates the stemness of CRC cells by chelating iron in lysosomes, leading to the up-regulation of iron concentrations and lipid peroxide levels, thus triggering ferroptosis[105].

OTUD1 is a deubiquitinase of iron-responsive element-binding protein 2 (IREB2), which is mainly expressed in intestinal epithelial cells. OTUD1 promotes TFR1-mediated iron transport through deubiquitination and stabilization of IREB2, leading to increased ROS production and ferroptosis, which is highly associated with a poor prognosis in CRC[106].

Dual role of p53 in mediating tumor ferroptosis

The tumor suppressor gene p53 plays a dual role in mediating ferroptosis in a variety of cancers[99]. Studies have found that p53 can enhance ROS-mediated ferroptosis by inhibiting SLC7A11 protein expression, resulting in decreased cystine import and thus reduced GSH production[46,107]. However, unlike in CRC, p53 can protect CRC cells from ferroptosis by stirring SLC7A11[108]. In addition, p53 can also inhibit CRC cell ferroptosis by blocking dipeptidyl peptidase 4 activity[97,109].

Cytoglobin (CYGB) is a regulator of ROS that plays an important role in oxygen homeostasis and acts as a tumor suppressor[110]. Yes-associated protein 1 (YAP1) is a key downstream target of CYGB. CYGB modulates cellular ferroptosis through p53-YAP1 signaling in CRC cells[111]. A novel antitumor compound optimized from the natural saponin biocide A has also been shown to trigger ferroptosis by activating p53[112].

Ginsenoside Rh4 can increase ROS accumulation, lead to the activation of ROS/p53 signaling pathway, and induce ferroptosis to inhibit the proliferation of cancer cells[113]. Cullin-9 can bind p53 to ubiquitinized heteroribo nucleoprotein C for degradation through whole genome sequencing and external differential expression analysis. Cullin-9 overexpression increases resistance to erastin-induced ferroptosis and is a novel and important regulator of CRC ferroptosis[114].

INDUCTION OF FERROPTOSIS REVERSES RESISTANCE TO ANTICANCER DRUGS

Oxaliplatin prolongs the median disease-free survival and overall survival in patients with advanced CRC, but clinical data suggest that < 40% of patients with advanced CRC benefit from it[115,116]. This may be related to oxaliplatin resistance, and recent studies have shown that induction of ferroptosis can significantly reverse oxaliplatin resistance in CRC cells.

Ferroptosis in CRC cells may be inhibited through the KIF20A/NUAK1/PP1β/GPX4 pathway, which may underlie CRC resistance to oxaliplatin[117]. Deletion of cysteine desulfurase (NFS1) can significantly enhance the sensitivity of CRC cells to oxaliplatin. The mechanism may involve NFS1 deficiency synergizing with oxaliplatin to induce PANoptosis (apoptosis, necroptosis, pyroptosis and ferroptosis), thus increasing the intracellular ROS levels. This also demonstrated that ferroptosis is involved in the oxaliplatin resistance pathway[118]. Obesity is strongly associated with a poor prognosis in patients with advanced CRC, and adipose-derived exosomes reduce susceptibility to ferroptosis in CRC, thereby promoting chemoresistance to oxaliplatin[119].

Combination with chemotherapy with monoclonal antibodies against anti-epidermal growth factor receptor or vascular endothelial growth factor has advanced in the treatment of metastatic CRC. However, inherent resistance to downstream KRAS mutations, so the effect of combination chemotherapy is often less optimistic. β-elemene has broad-spectrum anticancer effects, and it has been demonstrated that combined treatment of β-elemene and cetuximab can induce ferroptosis and inhibit epithelial-mesenchymal transition, thereby improving resistance to KRAS-mutated CRC cells[120].

FAM98A is a microtubule-associated protein involved in cell proliferation and migration. Increased expression of FAM98A can inhibit ferroptosis and promote CRC resistance to 5-fluorouracil (5-FU)[121]. Similarly, PYCR is an oncogene that desensitizes CRC cells to 5-FU cytotoxicity by promoting ferroptosis in CRC cells[122].

In addition, Andrographis Paniculata may also exert a sensitizing effect on CRC treatment by activating ferroptosis[123,124]. Andrographis Paniculata-mediated sensitivity to 5-FU-based chemotherapy in CRC is primarily mediated through activation of ferroptosis and inhibition of the β-catenin/Wnt signaling pathway[123].

NANOTECHNOLOGY PROMOTES FERROPTOSIS IN CRC CELLS

Although increasing iron concentration promotes ferroptosis in tumor cells has been demonstrated experimentally, direct administration of Fe^{2+} is not feasible in the clinic due to the protective effect of cell membranes and the defense mechanism of the tumor immune microenvironment (TME). Nano-drug delivery system (nano-DDSs) has unique physical and chemical properties of nanomaterials, which can not only enhance drug solubility and improve drug circulation time in the body, but also achieve targeted delivery and controlled release of drugs[125]. Therefore, the use of novel nanodelivery systems to improve the efficiency of iron release has great prospects in CRC targeted therapy.

Nano DDS can directly drive the death of iron in tumor cells, and iron-based nanoparticles can be catabolized by acid lysosomes of tumor cells to release Fe^{2+} and iron 3+[126]. Iron-based nanoparticles induce ferroptosis by catalyzing the Fenton reaction, but because of their low reactive oxygen production, they are often used in conjunction with other treatments. Liang *et al*[127] synthesized ultra-small single crystal Fe nanoparticles (bcc-USINPs) that are highly active in the tumor microenvironment and can effectively induce tumor cell ferroptosis and immunogenetic cell death at very low concentrations[127].

In addition to acting directly on cancer cells, nanotechnology also works by acting on key components of TME. Due to TME's weak acidity, abundant angiogenesis and hypoxia conditions, the effectiveness of conventional cytotoxic therapy delivery is limited, while active targeting of nanoparticles may be more useful[128].

Sodium persulfate (NaSO) is a novel chemodynamic therapy (CDT) that can produce •SO and Na, which can cause ferroptosis in cells. Ir780-iodide (IR780) is a phototherapy agent that produces ROS in conjunction with NaSO's CDT to overcome CRC chemotherapeutic resistance. Co-assembly of NaSO and IR780 on the nano platform improved the stability of NaSO and solubility of IR780, significantly enhancing the anti-tumor effect on CRC cell lines[129]. A novel composite nanomaterial PPy@Fe_3O_4 has been demonstrated to regulate the nuclear factor-kappaB signaling pathway and then then inhibit the proliferation, migration and invasion of CRC cells *in vitro*. Interestingly, Fer-1, an ferroptosis inhibitor, reversed changes in transfer-related proteins induced by nanoparticle therapy[130].

CONCLUSION

Ferroptosis, a newly discovered type of RCD mediated by iron-dependent lipid ROS accumulation, plays a role in a variety of diseases of the gastrointestinal tract. Many ferroptosis-related genes have been confirmed to be associated with the prognosis of CRC, and various models have been confirmed to

Table 1 Key molecular targets and inducers involved in the regulation of colorectal cancer ferroptosis

Target	Ferroptosis inducers	Ref.
ACSL4	Bromelain	[35]
	Apatinib	[37]
	Emodin	[36]
SLC7A11	Erastin	[42]
	SAS	[44,45]
	Talaroconvolutin A	[50]
	Copper chelator elesclomol	[51]
	IMCA	[52]
	Pt3R5G	[53]
	RSV	[54]
Transsulfuration pathway	CARS	[65]
	VZnO	[66]
GPX4	Erastin	[67]
	RSL3	[67]
	ACADSB	[79]
Nrf2/HO-1	Cetuximab	[87]
	Lys	[90]
	Oxaliplatin	[94,95]
Cellular iron homeostasis	HIF-2α	[102]
	miR-545	[104]
	Dichloroacetate	[105]
	IREB2	[106]
P53	Ginsenoside Rh4	[113]
	Cullin-9	[114]

ACSL4: Acyl-CoA synthetase long-chain family member 4; SLC7A11: Solute carrier family 7 member 11; SAS: Sulphasalazine; IMCA: Benzopyran derivative 2-imino-6-methoxy-2H-chromene-3-carbothioamide; Pt3R5G: Petunidin 3-O-[rhamnopyranosyl-(trans-p-coumaroyl)]-5-O-(β-D-glucopyranoside); RSV: Resveratrol; CARS: Cysteinyl-tRNA synthetase; RSL3: Ras-selective lethal 3; Nrf2: Nuclear factor erythroid 2-related factor; HO-1: Haem oxygenase 1; Lys: Lysionotin; IREB2: Iron response element-binding protein 2; GPX4: Glutathione peroxidase 4; HIF-2α: Hypoxia-inducible factor-2α.

be able to stratify CRC patients well and facilitate the early identification of high-risk patients. Iron metabolism and the accumulation of lipid peroxides are the core processes in ferroptosis. As mentioned above, GPX4, SLC7A11, ACSL4 and p53 act as key regulators in ferroptosis-related CRC mediation (Table 1). Induction of ferroptosis can reverse the resistance of anticancer drugs or exert a synergistic effect with other anticancer drugs to enhance the sensitivity of antitumor drugs and improve the prognosis of CRC patients. Furthermore, in colon cancer, copper chelators have also been shown to facilitate CRC cell death by promoting the degradation of SLC7A11. The mechanism underlying ferroptosis and the relationship between key regulators and other RCDs, such as autophagy and apoptosis, should be explored in future research.

In animal studies, the underlying mechanism of ferroptosis is complex, involving multiple targeted enzyme systems and metabolic networks. However, the actual clinical situation is more complicated, which requires the combination of gene mutation, epigenetic modification, metabolomics, *etc*. The absorption, transport, storage and metabolism of iron in the body is a very complex process, and how to define the therapeutic iron concentration needs to be carefully considered. In practice, increasing iron concentration to promote ferroptosis in tumor cells seems difficult to achieve due to the presence of defense mechanisms in the TME. At present, many studies have mentioned the promotion of ferroptosis in CRC cells through nanotechnology, and nano-DDSs seems to be able to effectively help solve this problem due to the advantages of targeted delivery and controlled release. In fact, ferroptosis seems to be a double-edged sword in the treatment of gastrointestinal diseases. The role of ferroptosis in different

gastrointestinal diseases is different, and the pros and cons of ferroptosis treatment need to be evaluated more carefully.

At present, research on the mechanism underlying ferroptosis in the colorectum is still in its infancy, and other ferroptosis pathways or related targets, such as the ferroptosis suppressor protein 1/CoQ/nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate pathway, still need to be further explored. In the future, ferroptosis genes related to the prognosis of CRC also need to be verified. The mechanism underlying ferroptosis and tumor escape in CRC is also worth further in-depth study in order to promote the development of new and effective therapeutic strategies.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Song YQ, Ye LP, Mao XL, and Wang Y drafted the manuscript; Wang ZZ, Yan XD, and Li SW contributed to the editing of the manuscript; All authors contributed to the article and approved the submitted version.

Supported by Medical Health Science and Technology Project of Zhejiang Province, No. 2021PY083; Program of Taizhou Science and Technology Grant, No. 22ywb09 and No. 1901ky18; Key Technology Research and Development Program of Zhejiang Province, No. 2019C03040; Major Research Program of Taizhou Enze Medical Center Grant, No. 19EZZDA2.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All the authors report no relevant conflicts of interest for this article.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Ya-Qi Song 0000-0001-9648-8159; Xiao-Dan Yan 0000-0002-1493-6817; Yi Wang 0000-0002-9817-1769; Zhen-Zhen Wang 0000-0002-6274-2646; Xin-Li Mao 0000-0003-4548-1867; Li-Ping Ye 0000-0001-9839-2062; Shao-Wei Li 0000-0002-3276-1037.

S-Editor: Fan JR
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Fan JR

REFERENCES

1 **Siegel RL**, Miller KD, Fuchs HE, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2022. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2022; **72**: 7-33 [PMID: 35020204 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21708]

2 **Kleppe A**, Albregtsen F, Vlatkovic L, Pradhan M, Nielsen B, Hveem TS, Askautrud HA, Kristensen GB, Nesbakken A, Trovik J, Wæhre H, Tomlinson I, Shepherd NA, Novelli M, Kerr DJ, Danielsen HE. Chromatin organisation and cancer prognosis: a pan-cancer study. *Lancet Oncol* 2018; **19**: 356-369 [PMID: 29402700 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(17)30899-9]

3 **Wang X**, Ward PA. Opportunities and challenges of disease biomarkers: a new section in the Journal of Translational Medicine. *J Transl Med* 2012; **10**: 240 [PMID: 23217078 DOI: 10.1186/1479-5876-10-240]

4 **Galluzzi L**, Vitale I, Aaronson SA, Abrams JM, Adam D, Agostinis P, Alnemri ES, Altucci L, Amelio I, Andrews DW, Annicchiarico-Petruzzelli M, Antonov AV, Arama E, Baehrecke EH, Barlev NA, Bazan NG, Bernassola F, Bertrand MJM, Bianchi K, Blagosklonny MV, Blomgren K, Borner C, Boya P, Brenner C, Campanella M, Candi E, Carmona-Gutierrez D, Cecconi F, Chan FK, Chandel NS, Cheng EH, Chipuk JE, Cidlowski JA, Ciechanover A, Cohen GM, Conrad M, Cubillos-Ruiz JR, Czabotar PE, D'Angiolella V, Dawson TM, Dawson VL, De Laurenzi V, De Maria R, Debatin KM, DeBerardinis RJ, Deshmukh M, Di Daniele N, Di Virgilio F, Dixit VM, Dixon SJ, Duckett CS, Dynlacht BD, El-Deiry WS, Elrod JW, Fimia GM, Fulda S, García-Sáez AJ, Garg AD, Garrido C, Gavathiotis E, Golstein P, Gottlieb E, Green DR, Greene LA, Gronemeyer H, Gross A, Hajnoczky G, Hardwick JM, Harris IS, Hengartner MO, Hetz C, Ichijo H, Jäättelä M, Joseph B, Jost PJ, Juin PP, Kaiser WJ, Karin M, Kaufmann T, Kepp O, Kimchi A, Kitsis RN, Klionsky DJ, Knight RA, Kumar S, Lee SW, Lemasters JJ, Levine B, Linkermann A, Lipton SA, Lockshin RA, López-Otín C, Lowe SW, Luedde T, Lugli E, MacFarlane M, Madeo F, Malewicz M, Malorni W, Manic G, Marine JC, Martin SJ, Martinou JC, Medema JP, Mehlen P, Meier P, Melino S, Miao EA, Molkentin JD, Moll UM, Muñoz-Pinedo C, Nagata S, Nuñez G, Oberst A, Oren M, Overholtzer M, Pagano M, Panaretakis T, Pasparakis M, Penninger JM, Pereira DM, Pervaiz S, Peter ME, Piacentini M, Pinton P, Prehn JHM, Puthalakath H, Rabinovich GA, Rehm M, Rizzuto R, Rodrigues CMP, Rubinsztein DC, Rudel T, Ryan KM, Sayan E, Scorrano L, Shao F, Shi Y, Silke J, Simon HU, Sistigu A, Stockwell BR, Strasser A, Szabadkai G, Tait SWG, Tang D, Tavernarakis N, Thorburn A, Tsujimoto Y, Turk B, Vanden Berghe T,

Vandenabeele P, Vander Heiden MG, Villunger A, Virgin HW, Vousden KH, Vucic D, Wagner EF, Walczak H, Wallach D, Wang Y, Wells JA, Wood W, Yuan J, Zakeri Z, Zhivotovsky B, Zitvogel L, Melino G, Kroemer G. Molecular mechanisms of cell death: recommendations of the Nomenclature Committee on Cell Death 2018. *Cell Death Differ* 2018; **25**: 486-541 [PMID: 29362479 DOI: 10.1038/s41418-017-0012-4]

5 **Dixon SJ**, Lemberg KM, Lamprecht MR, Skouta R, Zaitsev EM, Gleason CE, Patel DN, Bauer AJ, Cantley AM, Yang WS, Morrison B 3rd, Stockwell BR. Ferroptosis: an iron-dependent form of nonapoptotic cell death. *Cell* 2012; **149**: 1060-1072 [PMID: 22632970 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2012.03.042]

6 **Tang D**, Chen X, Kang R, Kroemer G. Ferroptosis: molecular mechanisms and health implications. *Cell Res* 2021; **31**: 107-125 [PMID: 33268902 DOI: 10.1038/s41422-020-00441-1]

7 **Vabulas RM**. Ferroptosis-Related Flavoproteins: Their Function and Stability. *Int J Mol Sci* 2021; **22** [PMID: 33406703 DOI: 10.3390/ijms22010430]

8 **Zhong Y**, Zhang W, Yu H, Lin L, Gao X, He J, Li D, Chen Y, Zeng Z, Xu Y, Tang D, Dai Y. Multi-platform-based characterization of ferroptosis in human colorectal cancer. *iScience* 2022; **25**: 104750 [PMID: 35942097 DOI: 10.1016/j.isci.2022.104750]

9 **Lv Y**, Feng QY, Zhang ZY, Zheng P, Zhu DX, Lin Q, Chen SM, Mao YH, Xu YQ, Ji ML, Xu JM, He GD. Low ferroptosis score predicts chemotherapy responsiveness and immune-activation in colorectal cancer. *Cancer Med* 2022 [PMID: 35855531 DOI: 10.1002/cam4.4956]

10 **Zhu L**, Yang F, Wang L, Dong L, Huang Z, Wang G, Chen G, Li Q. Identification the ferroptosis-related gene signature in patients with esophageal adenocarcinoma. *Cancer Cell Int* 2021; **21**: 124 [PMID: 33602233 DOI: 10.1186/s12935-021-01821-2]

11 **Li C**, Zhang Y, Liu J, Kang R, Klionsky DJ, Tang D. Mitochondrial DNA stress triggers autophagy-dependent ferroptotic death. *Autophagy* 2021; **17**: 948-960 [PMID: 32186434 DOI: 10.1080/15548627.2020.1739447]

12 **Zhu J**, Kong W, Xie Z. Expression and Prognostic Characteristics of Ferroptosis-Related Genes in Colon Cancer. *Int J Mol Sci* 2021; **22** [PMID: 34073365 DOI: 10.3390/ijms22115652]

13 **Wang X**, Xu Y, Dai L, Yu Z, Wang M, Chan S, Sun R, Han Q, Chen J, Zuo X, Wang Z, Hu X, Yang Y, Zhao H, Hu K, Zhang H, Chen W. A novel oxidative stress- and ferroptosis-related gene prognostic signature for distinguishing cold and hot tumors in colorectal cancer. *Front Immunol* 2022; **13**: 1043738 [PMID: 36389694 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2022.1043738]

14 **Bhan A**, Soleimani M, Mandal SS. Long Noncoding RNA and Cancer: A New Paradigm. *Cancer Res* 2017; **77**: 3965-3981 [PMID: 28701486 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-16-2634]

15 **Li J**, Meng H, Bai Y, Wang K. Regulation of lncRNA and Its Role in Cancer Metastasis. *Oncol Res* 2016; **23**: 205-217 [PMID: 27098144 DOI: 10.3727/096504016X14549667334007]

16 **Peng WX**, Koirala P, Mo YY. LncRNA-mediated regulation of cell signaling in cancer. *Oncogene* 2017; **36**: 5661-5667 [PMID: 28604750 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2017.184]

17 **Ni W**, Yao S, Zhou Y, Liu Y, Huang P, Zhou A, Liu J, Che L, Li J. Long noncoding RNA GAS5 inhibits progression of colorectal cancer by interacting with and triggering YAP phosphorylation and degradation and is negatively regulated by the m(6)A reader YTHDF3. *Mol Cancer* 2019; **18**: 143 [PMID: 31619268 DOI: 10.1186/s12943-019-1079-y]

18 **Wang Y**, Lu JH, Wu QN, Jin Y, Wang DS, Chen YX, Liu J, Luo XJ, Meng Q, Pu HY, Wang YN, Hu PS, Liu ZX, Zeng ZL, Zhao Q, Deng R, Zhu XF, Ju HQ, Xu RH. LncRNA LINRIS stabilizes IGF2BP2 and promotes the aerobic glycolysis in colorectal cancer. *Mol Cancer* 2019; **18**: 174 [PMID: 31791342 DOI: 10.1186/s12943-019-1105-0]

19 **Yuan H**, Tu S, Ma Y, Sun Y. Downregulation of lncRNA RPLP0P2 inhibits cell proliferation, invasion and migration, and promotes apoptosis in colorectal cancer. *Mol Med Rep* 2021; **23** [PMID: 33649783 DOI: 10.3892/mmr.2021.11948]

20 **Lin C**, Yang L. Long Noncoding RNA in Cancer: Wiring Signaling Circuitry. *Trends Cell Biol* 2018; **28**: 287-301 [PMID: 29274663 DOI: 10.1016/j.tcb.2017.11.008]

21 **Wu Z**, Lu Z, Li L, Ma M, Long F, Wu R, Huang L, Chou J, Yang K, Zhang Y, Li X, Hu G, Lin C. Identification and Validation of Ferroptosis-Related LncRNA Signatures as a Novel Prognostic Model for Colon Cancer. *Front Immunol* 2021; **12**: 783362 [PMID: 35154072 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2021.783362]

22 **Zhang W**, Fang D, Li S, Bao X, Jiang L, Sun X. Construction and Validation of a Novel Ferroptosis-Related lncRNA Signature to Predict Prognosis in Colorectal Cancer Patients. *Front Genet* 2021; **12**: 709329 [PMID: 34777458 DOI: 10.3389/fgene.2021.709329]

23 **Cai HJ**, Zhuang ZC, Wu Y, Zhang YY, Liu X, Zhuang JF, Yang YF, Gao Y, Chen B, Guan GX. Development and validation of a ferroptosis-related lncRNAs prognosis signature in colon cancer. *Bosn J Basic Med Sci* 2021; **21**: 569-576 [PMID: 33714257 DOI: 10.17305/bjbms.2020.5617]

24 **Han Y**, Gao X, Wu N, Jin Y, Zhou H, Wang W, Liu H, Chu Y, Cao J, Jiang M, Yang S, Shi Y, Xie X, Chen F, Han Y, Qin W, Xu B, Liang J. Long noncoding RNA LINC00239 inhibits ferroptosis in colorectal cancer by binding to Keap1 to stabilize Nrf2. *Cell Death Dis* 2022; **13**: 742 [PMID: 36038548 DOI: 10.1038/s41419-022-05192-y]

25 **Xian ZY**, Hu B, Wang T, Cai JL, Zeng JY, Zou Q, Zhu PX. CircABCB10 silencing inhibits the cell ferroptosis and apoptosis by regulating the miR-326/CCL5 axis in rectal cancer. *Neoplasma* 2020; **67**: 1063-1073 [PMID: 32567935 DOI: 10.4149/neo_2020_191024N1084]

26 **Shao Y**, Jia H, Huang L, Li S, Wang C, Aikemu B, Yang G, Hong H, Yang X, Zhang S, Sun J, Zheng M. An Original Ferroptosis-Related Gene Signature Effectively Predicts the Prognosis and Clinical Status for Colorectal Cancer Patients. *Front Oncol* 2021; **11**: 711776 [PMID: 34249766 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2021.711776]

27 **Yang YB**, Zhou JX, Qiu SH, He JS, Pan JH, Pan YL. Identification of a Novel Ferroptosis-Related Gene Prediction Model for Clinical Prognosis and Immunotherapy of Colorectal Cancer. *Dis Markers* 2021; **2021**: 4846683 [PMID: 34868393 DOI: 10.1155/2021/4846683]

28 **Yang WS**, Kim KJ, Gaschler MM, Patel M, Shchepinov MS, Stockwell BR. Peroxidation of polyunsaturated fatty acids by lipoxygenases drives ferroptosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2016; **113**: E4966-E4975 [PMID: 27506793 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1603244113]

29 **Magtanong L**, Ko PJ, To M, Cao JY, Forcina GC, Tarangelo A, Ward CC, Cho K, Patti GJ, Nomura DK, Olzmann JA,

Dixon SJ. Exogenous Monounsaturated Fatty Acids Promote a Ferroptosis-Resistant Cell State. *Cell Chem Biol* 2019; **26**: 420-432.e9 [PMID: 30686757 DOI: 10.1016/j.chembiol.2018.11.016]

30 **Cao JY**, Dixon SJ. Mechanisms of ferroptosis. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2016; **73**: 2195-2209 [PMID: 27048822 DOI: 10.1007/s00018-016-2194-1]

31 **Conrad M**, Kagan VE, Bayir H, Pagnussat GC, Head B, Traber MG, Stockwell BR. Regulation of lipid peroxidation and ferroptosis in diverse species. *Genes Dev* 2018; **32**: 602-619 [PMID: 29802123 DOI: 10.1101/gad.314674.118]

32 **Lee JY**, Nam M, Son HY, Hyun K, Jang SY, Kim JW, Kim MW, Jung Y, Jang E, Yoon SJ, Kim J, Seo J, Min JK, Oh KJ, Han BS, Kim WK, Bae KH, Song J, Huh YM, Hwang GS, Lee EW, Lee SC. Polyunsaturated fatty acid biosynthesis pathway determines ferroptosis sensitivity in gastric cancer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2020; **117**: 32433-32442 [PMID: 33288688 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.2006828117]

33 **Anthonymuthu TS**, Kenny EM, Shrivastava I, Tyurina YY, Hier ZE, Ting HC, Dar HH, Tyurin VA, Nesterova A, Amoscato AA, Mikulska-Ruminska K, Rosenbaum JC, Mao G, Zhao J, Conrad M, Kellum JA, Wenzel SE, VanDemark AP, Bahar I, Kagan VE, Bayır H. Empowerment of 15-Lipoxygenase Catalytic Competence in Selective Oxidation of Membrane ETE-PE to Ferroptotic Death Signals, HpETE-PE. *J Am Chem Soc* 2018; **140**: 17835-17839 [PMID: 30525572 DOI: 10.1021/jacs.8b09913]

34 **Dixon SJ**, Winter GE, Musavi LS, Lee ED, Snijder B, Rebsamen M, Superti-Furga G, Stockwell BR. Human Haploid Cell Genetics Reveals Roles for Lipid Metabolism Genes in Nonapoptotic Cell Death. *ACS Chem Biol* 2015; **10**: 1604-1609 [PMID: 25965523 DOI: 10.1021/acschembio.5b00245]

35 **Park S**, Oh J, Kim M, Jin EJ. Bromelain effectively suppresses Kras-mutant colorectal cancer by stimulating ferroptosis. *Anim Cells Syst (Seoul)* 2018; **22**: 334-340 [PMID: 30460115 DOI: 10.1080/19768354.2018.1512521]

36 **Dai G**, Wang D, Ma S, Hong S, Ding K, Tan X, Ju W. ACSL4 promotes colorectal cancer and is a potential therapeutic target of emodin. *Phytomedicine* 2022; **102**: 154149 [PMID: 35567995 DOI: 10.1016/j.phymed.2022.154149]

37 **Liang L**, Wang L, Zhu P, Xia Y, Qiao Y, Wu J, Zhuang W, Fei J, Wen Y, Jiang X. A Pilot Study of Apatinib as Third-Line Treatment in Patients With Heavily Treated Metastatic Colorectal Cancer. *Clin Colorectal Cancer* 2018; **17**: e443-e449 [PMID: 29576426 DOI: 10.1016/j.clcc.2018.02.011]

38 **Tian X**, Li S, Ge G. Apatinib Promotes Ferroptosis in Colorectal Cancer Cells by Targeting ELOVL6/ACSL4 Signaling. *Cancer Manag Res* 2021; **13**: 1333-1342 [PMID: 33603479 DOI: 10.2147/CMAR.S274631]

39 **Forman HJ**, Zhang H, Rinna A. Glutathione: overview of its protective roles, measurement, and biosynthesis. *Mol Aspects Med* 2009; **30**: 1-12 [PMID: 18796312 DOI: 10.1016/j.mam.2008.08.006]

40 **Lv H**, Zhen C, Liu J, Yang P, Hu L, Shang P. Unraveling the Potential Role of Glutathione in Multiple Forms of Cell Death in Cancer Therapy. *Oxid Med Cell Longev* 2019; **2019**: 3150145 [PMID: 31281572 DOI: 10.1155/2019/3150145]

41 **Liu J**, Xia X, Huang P. xCT: A Critical Molecule That Links Cancer Metabolism to Redox Signaling. *Mol Ther* 2020; **28**: 2358-2366 [PMID: 32931751 DOI: 10.1016/j.ymthe.2020.08.021]

42 **Ottestad-Hansen S**, Hu QX, Follin-Arbelet VV, Bentea E, Sato H, Massie A, Zhou Y, Danbolt NC. The cystine-glutamate exchanger (xCT, Slc7a11) is expressed in significant concentrations in a subpopulation of astrocytes in the mouse brain. *Glia* 2018; **66**: 951-970 [PMID: 29350434 DOI: 10.1002/glia.23294]

43 **Miyamoto K**, Watanabe M, Boku S, Sukeno M, Morita M, Kondo H, Sakaguchi K, Taguchi T, Sakai T. xCT Inhibition Increases Sensitivity to Vorinostat in a ROS-Dependent Manner. *Cancers (Basel)* 2020; **12** [PMID: 32235498 DOI: 10.3390/cancers12040827]

44 **Conrad M**, Sato H. The oxidative stress-inducible cystine/glutamate antiporter, system x (c) (-) : cystine supplier and beyond. *Amino Acids* 2012; **42**: 231-246 [PMID: 21409388 DOI: 10.1007/s00726-011-0867-5]

45 **Ahmed I**, Manno FAM, Manno SHC, Liu Y, Zhang Y, Lau C. Detection of lithium in breast milk and in situ elemental analysis of the mammary gland. *Biomed Opt Express* 2018; **9**: 4184-4195 [PMID: 30615726 DOI: 10.1364/BOE.9.004184]

46 **Jiang L**, Kon N, Li T, Wang SJ, Su T, Hibshoosh H, Baer R, Gu W. Ferroptosis as a p53-mediated activity during tumour suppression. *Nature* 2015; **520**: 57-62 [PMID: 25799988 DOI: 10.1038/nature14344]

47 **Sun X**, Ou Z, Chen R, Niu X, Chen D, Kang R, Tang D. Activation of the p62-Keap1-NRF2 pathway protects against ferroptosis in hepatocellular carcinoma cells. *Hepatology* 2016; **63**: 173-184 [PMID: 26403645 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28251]

48 **Bridges RJ**, Natale NR, Patel SA. System xc^- cystine/glutamate antiporter: an update on molecular pharmacology and roles within the CNS. *Br J Pharmacol* 2012; **165**: 20-34 [PMID: 21564084 DOI: 10.1111/j.1476-5381.2011.01480.x]

49 **Xu X**, Zhang X, Wei C, Zheng D, Lu X, Yang Y, Luo A, Zhang K, Duan X, Wang Y. Targeting SLC7A11 specifically suppresses the progression of colorectal cancer stem cells *via* inducing ferroptosis. *Eur J Pharm Sci* 2020; **152**: 105450 [PMID: 32621966 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejps.2020.105450]

50 **Xia Y**, Liu S, Li C, Ai Z, Shen W, Ren W, Yang X. Discovery of a novel ferroptosis inducer-talaroconvolutin A-killing colorectal cancer cells *in vitro* and in vivo. *Cell Death Dis* 2020; **11**: 988 [PMID: 33203867 DOI: 10.1038/s41419-020-03194-2]

51 **Gao W**, Huang Z, Duan J, Nice EC, Lin J, Huang C. Elesclomol induces copper-dependent ferroptosis in colorectal cancer cells *via* degradation of ATP7A. *Mol Oncol* 2021; **15**: 3527-3544 [PMID: 34390123 DOI: 10.1002/1878-0261.13079]

52 **Zhang L**, Liu W, Liu F, Wang Q, Song M, Yu Q, Tang K, Teng T, Wu D, Wang X, Han W, Li Y. IMCA Induces Ferroptosis Mediated by SLC7A11 through the AMPK/mTOR Pathway in Colorectal Cancer. *Oxid Med Cell Longev* 2020; **2020**: 1675613 [PMID: 32322334 DOI: 10.1155/2020/1675613]

53 **Han L**, Yan Y, Fan M, Gao S, Zhang L, Xiong X, Li R, Xiao X, Wang X, Ni L, Tong D, Huang C, Cao Y, Yang J. Pt3R5G inhibits colon cancer cell proliferation through inducing ferroptosis by down-regulating SLC7A11. *Life Sci* 2022; **306**: 120859 [PMID: 35931199 DOI: 10.1016/j.lfs.2022.120859]

54 **Zhang Z**, Ji Y, Hu N, Yu Q, Zhang X, Li J, Wu F, Xu H, Tang Q, Li X. Ferroptosis-induced anticancer effect of resveratrol with a biomimetic nano-delivery system in colorectal cancer treatment. *Asian J Pharm Sci* 2022; **17**: 751-766 [PMID: 36382309 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajps.2022.07.006]

55 **Wang L**, Liu Y, Du T, Yang H, Lei L, Guo M, Ding HF, Zhang J, Wang H, Chen X, Yan C. ATF3 promotes erastin-induced ferroptosis by suppressing system Xc(). *Cell Death Differ* 2020; **27**: 662-675 [PMID: 31273299 DOI:

10.1038/s41418-019-0380-z]

56 **Chen D**, Tavana O, Chu B, Erber L, Chen Y, Baer R, Gu W. NRF2 Is a Major Target of ARF in p53-Independent Tumor Suppression. *Mol Cell* 2017; **68**: 224-232.e4 [PMID: 28985506 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2017.09.009]

57 **Chen L**, Qiao L, Bian Y, Sun X. GDF15 knockdown promotes erastin-induced ferroptosis by decreasing SLC7A11 expression. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2020; **526**: 293-299 [PMID: 32209255 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2020.03.079]

58 **Shen D**, Luo J, Chen L, Ma W, Mao X, Zhang Y, Zheng J, Wang Y, Wan J, Wang S, Ouyang J, Yi H, Liu D, Huang W, Zhang W, Liu Z, McLeod HL, He Y. PARPi treatment enhances radiotherapy-induced ferroptosis and antitumor immune responses *via* the cGAS signaling pathway in colorectal cancer. *Cancer Lett* 2022; **550**: 215919 [PMID: 36116741 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2022.215919]

59 **Hao S**, Liang B, Huang Q, Dong S, Wu Z, He W, Shi M. Metabolic networks in ferroptosis. *Oncol Lett* 2018; **15**: 5405-5411 [PMID: 29556292 DOI: 10.3892/ol.2018.8066]

60 **Liu N**, Lin X, Huang C. Activation of the reverse transsulfuration pathway through NRF2/CBS confers erastin-induced ferroptosis resistance. *Br J Cancer* 2020; **122**: 279-292 [PMID: 31819185 DOI: 10.1038/s41416-019-0660-x]

61 **Wang L**, Cai H, Hu Y, Liu F, Huang S, Zhou Y, Yu J, Xu J, Wu F. A pharmacological probe identifies cystathionine β-synthase as a new negative regulator for ferroptosis. *Cell Death Dis* 2018; **9**: 1005 [PMID: 30258181 DOI: 10.1038/s41419-018-1063-2]

62 **Wang M**, Mao C, Ouyang L, Liu Y, Lai W, Liu N, Shi Y, Chen L, Xiao D, Yu F, Wang X, Zhou H, Cao Y, Liu S, Yan Q, Tao Y, Zhang B. Long noncoding RNA LINC00336 inhibits ferroptosis in lung cancer by functioning as a competing endogenous RNA. *Cell Death Differ* 2019; **26**: 2329-2343 [PMID: 30787392 DOI: 10.1038/s41418-019-0304-y]

63 **Szabo C**, Coletta C, Chao C, Módis K, Szczesny B, Papapetropoulos A, Hellmich MR. Tumor-derived hydrogen sulfide, produced by cystathionine-β-synthase, stimulates bioenergetics, cell proliferation, and angiogenesis in colon cancer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2013; **110**: 12474-12479 [PMID: 23836652 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1306241110]

64 **Szabo C**. Gasotransmitters in cancer: from pathophysiology to experimental therapy. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2016; **15**: 185-203 [PMID: 26678620 DOI: 10.1038/nrd.2015.1]

65 **Hayano M**, Yang WS, Corn CK, Pagano NC, Stockwell BR. Loss of cysteinyl-tRNA synthetase (CARS) induces the transsulfuration pathway and inhibits ferroptosis induced by cystine deprivation. *Cell Death Differ* 2016; **23**: 270-278 [PMID: 26184909 DOI: 10.1038/cdd.2015.93]

66 **Pan X**, Qi Y, Du Z, He J, Yao S, Lu W, Ding K, Zhou M. Zinc oxide nanosphere for hydrogen sulfide scavenging and ferroptosis of colorectal cancer. *J Nanobiotechnology* 2021; **19**: 392 [PMID: 34838036 DOI: 10.1186/s12951-021-01069-y]

67 **Stockwell BR**, Friedmann Angeli JP, Bayir H, Bush AI, Conrad M, Dixon SJ, Fulda S, Gascón S, Hatzios SK, Kagan VE, Noel K, Jiang X, Linkermann A, Murphy ME, Overholtzer M, Oyagi A, Pagnussat GC, Park J, Ran Q, Rosenfeld CS, Salnikow K, Tang D, Torti FM, Torti SV, Toyokuni S, Woerpel KA, Zhang DD. Ferroptosis: A Regulated Cell Death Nexus Linking Metabolism, Redox Biology, and Disease. *Cell* 2017; **171**: 273-285 [PMID: 28985560 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2017.09.021]

68 **Maiorino M**, Conrad M, Ursini F. GPx4, Lipid Peroxidation, and Cell Death: Discoveries, Rediscoveries, and Open Issues. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2018; **29**: 61-74 [PMID: 28462584 DOI: 10.1089/ars.2017.7115]

69 **Gong Y**, Wang N, Liu N, Dong H. Lipid Peroxidation and GPX4 Inhibition Are Common Causes for Myofibroblast Differentiation and Ferroptosis. *DNA Cell Biol* 2019; **38**: 725-733 [PMID: 31140862 DOI: 10.1089/dna.2018.4541]

70 **Bösl MR**, Takaku K, Oshima M, Nishimura S, Taketo MM. Early embryonic lethality caused by targeted disruption of the mouse selenocysteine tRNA gene (Trsp). *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 1997; **94**: 5531-5534 [PMID: 9159106 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.94.11.5531]

71 **Ingold I**, Berndt C, Schmitt S, Doll S, Poschmann G, Buday K, Roveri A, Peng X, Porto Freitas F, Seibt T, Mehr L, Aichler M, Walch A, Lamp D, Jastroch M, Miyamoto S, Wurst W, Ursini F, Arnér ESJ, Fradejas-Villar N, Schweizer U, Zischka H, Friedmann Angeli JP, Conrad M. Selenium Utilization by GPX4 Is Required to Prevent Hydroperoxide-Induced Ferroptosis. *Cell* 2018; **172**: 409-422.e21 [PMID: 29290465 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2017.11.048]

72 **Sui X**, Zhang R, Liu S, Duan T, Zhai L, Zhang M, Han X, Xiang Y, Huang X, Lin H, Xie T. RSL3 Drives Ferroptosis Through GPX4 Inactivation and ROS Production in Colorectal Cancer. *Front Pharmacol* 2018; **9**: 1371 [PMID: 30524291 DOI: 10.3389/fphar.2018.01371]

73 **Chen H**, Qi Q, Wu N, Wang Y, Feng Q, Jin R, Jiang L. Aspirin promotes RSL3-induced ferroptosis by suppressing mTOR/SREBP-1/SCD1-mediated lipogenesis in PIK3CA-mutatnt colorectal cancer. *Redox Biol* 2022; **55**: 102426 [PMID: 35963119 DOI: 10.1016/j.redox.2022.102426]

74 **Fu Y**, Huang B, Shi Z, Han J, Wang Y, Huangfu J, Wu W. SRSF1 and SRSF9 RNA binding proteins promote Wnt signalling-mediated tumorigenesis by enhancing β-catenin biosynthesis. *EMBO Mol Med* 2013; **5**: 737-750 [PMID: 23592547 DOI: 10.1002/emmm.201202218]

75 **Yoshino H**, Enokida H, Chiyomaru T, Tatarano S, Hidaka H, Yamasaki T, Gotannda T, Tachiwada T, Nohata N, Yamane T, Seki N, Nakagawa M. Tumor suppressive microRNA-1 mediated novel apoptosis pathways through direct inhibition of splicing factor serine/arginine-rich 9 (SRSF9/SRp30c) in bladder cancer. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2012; **417**: 588-593 [PMID: 22178073 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2011.12.011]

76 **Zhang Q**, Lv R, Guo W, Li X. microRNA-802 inhibits cell proliferation and induces apoptosis in human cervical cancer by targeting serine/arginine-rich splicing factor 9. *J Cell Biochem* 2019; **120**: 10370-10379 [PMID: 30565744 DOI: 10.1002/jcb.28321]

77 **Wang R**, Xing R, Su Q, Yin H, Wu D, Lv C, Yan Z. Knockdown of SFRS9 Inhibits Progression of Colorectal Cancer Through Triggering Ferroptosis Mediated by GPX4 Reduction. *Front Oncol* 2021; **11**: 683589 [PMID: 34336668 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2021.683589]

78 **Wang R**, Su Q, Yin H, Wu D, Lv C, Yan Z. Inhibition of SRSF9 enhances the sensitivity of colorectal cancer to erastin-induced ferroptosis by reducing glutathione peroxidase 4 expression. *Int J Biochem Cell Biol* 2021; **134**: 105948 [PMID: 33609745 DOI: 10.1016/j.biocel.2021.105948]

79 **Lu D**, Yang Z, Xia Q, Gao S, Sun S, Luo X, Li Z, Zhang X, Li X. ACADSB regulates ferroptosis and affects the

migration, invasion, and proliferation of colorectal cancer cells. *Cell Biol Int* 2020; **44**: 2334-2343 [PMID: 32776663 DOI: 10.1002/cbin.11443]

80 **Dodson M**, Castro-Portuguez R, Zhang DD. NRF2 plays a critical role in mitigating lipid peroxidation and ferroptosis. *Redox Biol* 2019; **23**: 101107 [PMID: 30692038 DOI: 10.1016/j.redox.2019.101107]

81 . Homeostasis of redox status derived from glucose metabolic pathway could be the key to understanding the Warburg effect [Retraction]. *Am J Cancer Res* 2016; **6**: 2387 [PMID: 27822428]

82 **Liu X**, Yuan X, Liang G, Zhang S, Zhang G, Qin Y, Zhu Q, Xiao Q, Hou N, Luo JD. BRG1 protects the heart from acute myocardial infarction by reducing oxidative damage through the activation of the NRF2/HO1 signaling pathway. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2020; **160**: 820-836 [PMID: 32950688 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2020.09.012]

83 **Sun J**, Zhou C, Zhao Y, Zhang X, Chen W, Zhou Q, Hu B, Gao D, Raatz L, Wang Z, Nelson PJ, Jiang Y, Ren N, Bruns CJ, Zhou H. Quiescin sulfhydryl oxidase 1 promotes sorafenib-induced ferroptosis in hepatocellular carcinoma by driving EGFR endosomal trafficking and inhibiting NRF2 activation. *Redox Biol* 2021; **41**: 101942 [PMID: 33770521 DOI: 10.1016/j.redox.2021.101942]

84 **Qiu YB**, Wan BB, Liu G, Wu YX, Chen D, Lu MD, Chen JL, Yu RQ, Chen DZ, Pang QF. Nrf2 protects against seawater drowning-induced acute lung injury *via* inhibiting ferroptosis. *Respir Res* 2020; **21**: 232 [PMID: 32907551 DOI: 10.1186/s12931-020-01500-2]

85 **Ranti I**, Wahyuningsih MSH, Wirohadidjojo YW. The antifibrotic effect of isolate tagitinin C from tithonia diversifolia (Hemsley) A. Gray on keloid fibroblast cell. *Pan Afr Med J* 2018; **30**: 264 [PMID: 30637049 DOI: 10.11604/pamj.2018.30.264.9994]

86 **Wei R**, Zhao Y, Wang J, Yang X, Li S, Wang Y, Fei J, Hao X, Gui L, Ding X. Tagitinin C induces ferroptosis through PERK-Nrf2-HO-1 signaling pathway in colorectal cancer cells. *Int J Biol Sci* 2021; **17**: 2703-2717 [PMID: 34345202 DOI: 10.7150/ijbs.59404]

87 **Jensen BV**, Schou JV, Yilmaz M, Johannesen HH, Skougaard K, Linnemann D, Hogdall EV, Larsen FO, Johansen JS, Pfeiffer P, Nielsen DL. Cetuximab plus irinotecan administered biweekly with reduced infusion time to heavily pretreated patients with metastatic colorectal cancer and related RAS and BRAF mutation status. *Int J Cancer* 2020 [PMID: 33336394 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.33448]

88 **Wadlow RC**, Hezel AF, Abrams TA, Blaszkowsky LS, Fuchs CS, Kulke MH, Kwak EL, Meyerhardt JA, Ryan DP, Szymonifka J, Wolpin BM, Zhu AX, Clark JW. Panitumumab in patients with KRAS wild-type colorectal cancer after progression on cetuximab. *Oncologist* 2012; **17**: 14 [PMID: 22210091 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2011-0452]

89 **Amado RG**, Wolf M, Peeters M, Van Cutsem E, Siena S, Freeman DJ, Juan T, Sikorski R, Suggs S, Radinsky R, Patterson SD, Chang DD. Wild-type KRAS is required for panitumumab efficacy in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 1626-1634 [PMID: 18316791 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.14.7116]

90 **Gao Z**, Jiang J, Hou L, Ji F. Lysionotin Induces Ferroptosis to Suppress Development of Colorectal Cancer *via* Promoting Nrf2 Degradation. *Oxid Med Cell Longev* 2022; **2022**: 1366957 [PMID: 35993016 DOI: 10.1155/2022/1366957]

91 **Yang CC**, Hsiao LD, Lin HH, Tseng HC, Situmorang JH, Leu YL, Yang CM. Induction of HO-1 by 5, 8-Dihydroxy-4',7-Dimethoxyflavone *via* Activation of ROS/p38 MAPK/Nrf2 Attenuates Thrombin-Induced Connective Tissue Growth Factor Expression in Human Cardiac Fibroblasts. *Oxid Med Cell Longev* 2020; **2020**: 1080168 [PMID: 33343802 DOI: 10.1155/2020/1080168]

92 **Chen Q**, Shen L, Chen C, He H, Fu Y, Xu L, Wang Y. Cetuximab combined with cisplatin improves the prognosis of gastric cancer patients and its effect on P38 MAPK expression. *J BUON* 2019; **24**: 2490-2498 [PMID: 31983124]

93 **Yang J**, Mo J, Dai J, Ye C, Cen W, Zheng X, Jiang L, Ye L. Cetuximab promotes RSL3-induced ferroptosis by suppressing the Nrf2/HO-1 signalling pathway in KRAS mutant colorectal cancer. *Cell Death Dis* 2021; **12**: 1079 [PMID: 34775496 DOI: 10.1038/s41419-021-04367-3]

94 **Lu Y**, Wu S, Xiang B, Li L, Lin Y. Curcumin Attenuates Oxaliplatin-Induced Liver Injury and Oxidative Stress by Activating the Nrf2 Pathway. *Drug Des Devel Ther* 2020; **14**: 73-85 [PMID: 32021093 DOI: 10.2147/DDDT.S224318]

95 **Chian S**, Li YY, Wang XJ, Tang XW. Luteolin sensitizes two oxaliplatin-resistant colorectal cancer cell lines to chemotherapeutic drugs *via* inhibition of the Nrf2 pathway. *Asian Pac J Cancer Prev* 2014; **15**: 2911-2916 [PMID: 24761924 DOI: 10.7314/apjcp.2014.15.6.2911]

96 **Liu B**, Wang H. Oxaliplatin induces ferroptosis and oxidative stress in HT29 colorectal cancer cells by inhibiting the Nrf2 signaling pathway. *Exp Ther Med* 2022; **23**: 394 [PMID: 35495610 DOI: 10.3892/etm.2022.11321]

97 **Lane DJ**, Merlot AM, Huang ML, Bae DH, Jansson PJ, Sahni S, Kalinowski DS, Richardson DR. Cellular iron uptake, trafficking and metabolism: Key molecules and mechanisms and their roles in disease. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2015; **1853**: 1130-1144 [PMID: 25661197 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbamcr.2015.01.021]

98 **Coffey R**, Ganz T. Iron homeostasis: An anthropocentric perspective. *J Biol Chem* 2017; **292**: 12727-12734 [PMID: 28615456 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.R117.781823]

99 **Dixon SJ**, Stockwell BR. The role of iron and reactive oxygen species in cell death. *Nat Chem Biol* 2014; **10**: 9-17 [PMID: 24346035 DOI: 10.1038/nchembio.1416]

100 **Stoyanovsky DA**, Tyurina YY, Shrivastava I, Bahar I, Tyurin VA, Protchenko O, Jadhav S, Bolevich SB, Kozlov AV, Vladimirov YA, Shvedova AA, Philpott CC, Bayir H, Kagan VE. Iron catalysis of lipid peroxidation in ferroptosis: Regulated enzymatic or random free radical reaction? *Free Radic Biol Med* 2019; **133**: 153-161 [PMID: 30217775 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2018.09.008]

101 **Kindrat I**, Tryndyak V, de Conti A, Shpyleva S, Mudalige TK, Kobets T, Erstenyuk AM, Beland FA, Pogribny IP. MicroRNA-152-mediated dysregulation of hepatic transferrin receptor 1 in liver carcinogenesis. *Oncotarget* 2016; **7**: 1276-1287 [PMID: 26657500 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.6004]

102 **Shah YM**, Matsubara T, Ito S, Yim SH, Gonzalez FJ. Intestinal hypoxia-inducible transcription factors are essential for iron absorption following iron deficiency. *Cell Metab* 2009; **9**: 152-164 [PMID: 19147412 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmet.2008.12.012]

103 **Singhal R**, Mitta SR, Das NK, Kerk SA, Sajjakulnukit P, Solanki S, Andren A, Kumar R, Olive KP, Banerjee R, Lyssiotis CA, Shah YM. HIF-2α activation potentiates oxidative cell death in colorectal cancers by increasing cellular iron. *J Clin*

Invest 2021; **131** [PMID: 33914705 DOI: 10.1172/JCI143691]
104 **Zheng S**, Hu L, Song Q, Shan Y, Yin G, Zhu H, Kong W, Zhou C. miR-545 promotes colorectal cancer by inhibiting transferring in the non-normal ferroptosis signaling. *Aging (Albany NY)* 2021; **13**: 26137-26147 [PMID: 34954694 DOI: 10.18632/aging.203801]
105 **Sun J**, Cheng X, Pan S, Wang L, Dou W, Liu J, Shi X. Dichloroacetate attenuates the stemness of colorectal cancer cells *via* trigerring ferroptosis through sequestering iron in lysosomes. *Environ Toxicol* 2021; **36**: 520-529 [PMID: 33166055 DOI: 10.1002/tox.23057]
106 **Song J**, Liu T, Yin Y, Zhao W, Lin Z, Lu D, You F. The deubiquitinase OTUD1 enhances iron transport and potentiates host antitumor immunity. *EMBO Rep* 2021; **22**: e51162 [PMID: 33393230 DOI: 10.15252/embr.202051162]
107 **Zhang W**, Gai C, Ding D, Wang F, Li W. Targeted p53 on Small-Molecules-Induced Ferroptosis in Cancers. *Front Oncol* 2018; **8**: 507 [PMID: 30450337 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2018.00507]
108 **Xie Y**, Zhu S, Song X, Sun X, Fan Y, Liu J, Zhong M, Yuan H, Zhang L, Billiar TR, Lotze MT, Zeh HJ 3rd, Kang R, Kroemer G, Tang D. The Tumor Suppressor p53 Limits Ferroptosis by Blocking DPP4 Activity. *Cell Rep* 2017; **20**: 1692-1704 [PMID: 28813679 DOI: 10.1016/j.celrep.2017.07.055]
109 **Mao L**, Zhao T, Song Y, Lin L, Fan X, Cui B, Feng H, Wang X, Yu Q, Zhang J, Jiang K, Wang B, Sun C. The emerging role of ferroptosis in non-cancer liver diseases: hype or increasing hope? *Cell Death Dis* 2020; **11**: 518 [PMID: 32647111 DOI: 10.1038/s41419-020-2732-5]
110 **Yoshizato K**, Thuy le TT, Shiota G, Kawada N. Discovery of cytoglobin and its roles in physiology and pathology of hepatic stellate cells. *Proc Jpn Acad Ser B Phys Biol Sci* 2016; **92**: 77-97 [PMID: 26972599 DOI: 10.2183/pjab.92.77]
111 **Ye S**, Xu M, Zhu T, Chen J, Shi S, Jiang H, Zheng Q, Liao Q, Ding X, Xi Y. Cytoglobin promotes sensitivity to ferroptosis by regulating p53-YAP1 axis in colon cancer cells. *J Cell Mol Med* 2021; **25**: 3300-3311 [PMID: 33611811 DOI: 10.1111/jcmm.16400]
112 **Wei G**, Sun J, Hou Z, Luan W, Wang S, Cui S, Cheng M, Liu Y. Novel antitumor compound optimized from natural saponin Albiziabioside A induced caspase-dependent apoptosis and ferroptosis as a p53 activator through the mitochondrial pathway. *Eur J Med Chem* 2018; **157**: 759-772 [PMID: 30142612 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejmech.2018.08.036]
113 **Wu Y**, Pi D, Chen Y, Zuo Q, Zhou S, Ouyang M. Ginsenoside Rh4 Inhibits Colorectal Cancer Cell Proliferation by Inducing Ferroptosis *via* Autophagy Activation. *Evid Based Complement Alternat Med* 2022; **2022**: 6177553 [PMID: 35677385 DOI: 10.1155/2022/6177553]
114 **Yang L**, WenTao T, ZhiYuan Z, Qi L, YuXiang L, Peng Z, Ke L, XiaoNa J, YuZhi P, MeiLing J, QingYang F, GuoDong H, YueXiang W, JianMin X. Cullin-9/p53 mediates HNRNPC degradation to inhibit erastin-induced ferroptosis and is blocked by MDM2 inhibition in colorectal cancer. *Oncogene* 2022; **41**: 3210-3221 [PMID: 35505093 DOI: 10.1038/s41388-022-02284-z]
115 **Sun X**, Wang X, Feng W, Guo H, Tang C, Lu Y, Xiang X, Bao Y. Gene signatures associated with drug resistance to irinotecan and oxaliplatin predict a poor prognosis in patients with colorectal cancer. *Oncol Lett* 2017; **13**: 2089-2096 [PMID: 28454366 DOI: 10.3892/ol.2017.5691]
116 **Sun F**, Liang W, Qian J. The identification of CRNDE, H19, UCA1 and HOTAIR as the key lncRNAs involved in oxaliplatin or irinotecan resistance in the chemotherapy of colorectal cancer based on integrative bioinformatics analysis. *Mol Med Rep* 2019; **20**: 3583-3596 [PMID: 31432188 DOI: 10.3892/mmr.2019.10588]
117 **Yang C**, Zhang Y, Lin S, Liu Y, Li W. Suppressing the KIF20A/NUAK1/Nrf2/GPX4 signaling pathway induces ferroptosis and enhances the sensitivity of colorectal cancer to oxaliplatin. *Aging (Albany NY)* 2021; **13**: 13515-13534 [PMID: 33819186 DOI: 10.18632/aging.202774]
118 **Lin JF**, Hu PS, Wang YY, Tan YT, Yu K, Liao K, Wu QN, Li T, Meng Q, Lin JZ, Liu ZX, Pu HY, Ju HQ, Xu RH, Qiu MZ. Phosphorylated NFS1 weakens oxaliplatin-based chemosensitivity of colorectal cancer by preventing PANoptosis. *Signal Transduct Target Ther* 2022; **7**: 54 [PMID: 35221331 DOI: 10.1038/s41392-022-00889-0]
119 **Zhang Q**, Deng T, Zhang H, Zuo D, Zhu Q, Bai M, Liu R, Ning T, Zhang L, Yu Z, Ba Y. Adipocyte-Derived Exosomal MTTP Suppresses Ferroptosis and Promotes Chemoresistance in Colorectal Cancer. *Adv Sci (Weinh)* 2022; **9**: e2203357 [PMID: 35978266 DOI: 10.1002/advs.202203357]
120 **Chen P**, Li X, Zhang R, Liu S, Xiang Y, Zhang M, Chen X, Pan T, Yan L, Feng J, Duan T, Wang D, Chen B, Jin T, Wang W, Chen L, Huang X, Zhang W, Sun Y, Li G, Kong L, Li Y, Yang Z, Zhang Q, Zhuo L, Sui X, Xie T. Combinative treatment of β-elemene and cetuximab is sensitive to KRAS mutant colorectal cancer cells by inducing ferroptosis and inhibiting epithelial-mesenchymal transformation. *Theranostics* 2020; **10**: 5107-5119 [PMID: 32308771 DOI: 10.7150/thno.44705]
121 **He Z**, Yang J, Sui C, Zhang P, Wang T, Mou T, Sun K, Wang Y, Xu Z, Li G, Deng H, Shi J, Zhuang B. FAM98A promotes resistance to 5-fluorouracil in colorectal cancer by suppressing ferroptosis. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 2022; **722**: 109216 [PMID: 35421356 DOI: 10.1016/j.abb.2022.109216]
122 **Zhou B**, Mai Z, Ye Y, Song Y, Zhang M, Yang X, Xia W, Qiu X. The role of PYCR1 in inhibiting 5-fluorouracil-induced ferroptosis and apoptosis through SLC25A10 in colorectal cancer. *Hum Cell* 2022; **35**: 1900-1911 [PMID: 36104652 DOI: 10.1007/s13577-022-00775-5]
123 **Sharma P**, Shimura T, Banwait JK, Goel A. Andrographis-mediated chemosensitization through activation of ferroptosis and suppression of β-catenin/Wnt-signaling pathways in colorectal cancer. *Carcinogenesis* 2020; **41**: 1385-1394 [PMID: 32835374 DOI: 10.1093/carcin/bgaa090]
124 **Shimura T**, Sharma P, Sharma GG, Banwait JK, Goel A. Enhanced anti-cancer activity of andrographis with oligomeric proanthocyanidins through activation of metabolic and ferroptosis pathways in colorectal cancer. *Sci Rep* 2021; **11**: 7548 [PMID: 33824419 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-021-87283-y]
125 **Zheng H**, Jiang J, Xu S, Liu W, Xie Q, Cai X, Zhang J, Liu S, Li R. Nanoparticle-induced ferroptosis: detection methods, mechanisms and applications. *Nanoscale* 2021; **13**: 2266-2285 [PMID: 33480938 DOI: 10.1039/d0nr08478f]
126 **Qian X**, Zhang J, Gu Z, Chen Y. Nanocatalysts-augmented Fenton chemical reaction for nanocatalytic tumor therapy. *Biomaterials* 2019; **211**: 1-13 [PMID: 31075521 DOI: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2019.04.023]
127 **Liang H**, Wu X, Zhao G, Feng K, Ni K, Sun X. Renal Clearable Ultrasmall Single-Crystal Fe Nanoparticles for Highly

Selective and Effective Ferroptosis Therapy and Immunotherapy. *J Am Chem Soc* 2021; **143**: 15812-15823 [PMID: 34473493 DOI: 10.1021/jacs.1c07471]

128 **Giraldo NA**, Sanchez-Salas R, Peske JD, Vano Y, Becht E, Petitprez F, Validire P, Ingels A, Cathelineau X, Fridman WH, Sautès-Fridman C. The clinical role of the TME in solid cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2019; **120**: 45-53 [PMID: 30413828 DOI: 10.1038/s41416-018-0327-z]

129 **Shi J**, Tian H, Peng L, Huang C, Nice EC, Zou B, Zhang H. A nanoplatform reshaping intracellular osmolarity and redox homeostasis against colorectal cancer. *J Control Release* 2022; **352**: 766-775 [PMID: 36343763 DOI: 10.1016/j.jconrel.2022.11.003]

130 **Yu Z**, Tong S, Wang C, Wu Z, Ye Y, Wang S, Jiang K. PPy@Fe(3)O(4) nanoparticles inhibit the proliferation and metastasis of CRC *via* suppressing the NF-κB signaling pathway and promoting ferroptosis. *Front Bioeng Biotechnol* 2022; **10**: 1001994 [PMID: 36177184 DOI: 10.3389/fbioe.2022.1001994]

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2023 February 15; 15(2): 240-250

DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.240

ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

REVIEW

"Cold" colorectal cancer faces a bottleneck in immunotherapy

Jia-Liang Liu, Ming Yang, Jun-Ge Bai, Zheng Liu, Xi-Shan Wang

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Herold Z, Hungary; Mohammadi S, Iran

Received: September 22, 2022
Peer-review started: September 22, 2022
First decision: November 30, 2022
Revised: December 18, 2022
Accepted: January 5, 2023
Article in press: January 5, 2023
Published online: February 15, 2023

Jia-Liang Liu, Ming Yang, Jun-Ge Bai, Zheng Liu, Xi-Shan Wang, Department of Colorectal Surgery, National Cancer Center/National Clinical Research Center for Cancer/Cancer Hospital, Chinese Academy of Medical Science and Peking Union Medical College, Beijing 100021, China

Corresponding author: Zheng Liu, FASCRS, MD, PhD, Professor, Department of Colorectal Surgery, National Cancer Center/National Clinical Research Center for Cancer/Cancer Hospital, Chinese Academy of Medical Science and Peking Union Medical College, No. 17 Panjiayuan Nanli, Chaoyang District, Beijing 100021, China. zheng.liu@cicams.ac.cn

Abstract

The advent of immunotherapy and the development of immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICIs) are changing the way we think about cancer treatment. ICIs have shown clinical benefits in a variety of tumor types, and ICI-based immunotherapy has shown effective clinical outcomes in immunologically "hot" tumors. However, for immunologically "cold" tumors such as colorectal cancer (CRC), only a limited number of patients are currently benefiting from ICIs due to limitations such as individual differences and low response rates. In this review, we discuss the classification and differences between hot and cold CRC and the current status of research on cold CRC, and summarize the treatment strategies and challenges of immunotherapy for cold CRC. We also explain the mechanism, biology, and role of immunotherapy for cold CRC, which will help clarify the future development of immunotherapy for cold CRC and discovery of more emerging strategies for the treatment of cold CRC.

Key Words: Immunotherapy; "Cold" colorectal cancer; Immune checkpoint inhibitors; Cancer treatment; Review

©The Author(s) 2023. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: Immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICIs) are usually produced by antibodies, and their effectiveness relies on the antitumor effects of immune cells (especially T cells). Colorectal cancer (CRC) is one of the most common forms of cancer worldwide. Only a limited number of patients are currently benefiting from ICIs due to limitations such as individual differences and low response rates. In this review, we discuss the classification and differences between hot and cold CRC and the current status of research on cold CRC, and summarize the treatment strategies and challenges of immunotherapy for cold CRC.

Citation: Liu JL, Yang M, Bai JG, Liu Z, Wang XS. "Cold" colorectal cancer faces a bottleneck in immunotherapy. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2023; 15(2): 240-250
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v15/i2/240.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.240

INTRODUCTION

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is one of the most common forms of cancer worldwide[1]. Globally, CRC is the second most common cancer in women and the third most common in men[2]. More than half of the development of CRC can be attributed to modifiable risk factors such as smoking, unhealthy diet, heavy alcohol consumption, lack of physical activity, and overweight; therefore, the disease is preventable[3]. Despite some progress in the diagnosis and treatment of CRC, it remains a significant cause of cancer-related deaths[2]. The global burden of CRC is expected to increase by 60% by 2030[4]. Therefore, there is an urgent need to develop new preventive and treatment strategies for this disease[1].

In contrast to traditional cancer therapies that affect the proliferation, survival, and metabolic activities of tumor cells[5], immunotherapy mainly works by modulating the tumor microenvironment (TME), restoring anticancer immunity, and stimulating or suppressing the immune system to play an antitumor role[6]. Immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICIs) are usually produced by antibodies, and their effectiveness relies on the antitumor effects of immune cells (especially T cells)[7].

However, most solid tumors have little T-cell infiltration and are defined as non-T-cell inflammatory or "cold" tumors[8]. In CRC, it has been shown that only patients with mismatch repair deficiency (dMMR) or microsatellite instability (MSI) high (dMMR/MSI-H) tumor subpopulations respond to treatment with ICIs[9-11]. Clinical trials related to ICIs have been conducted for the treatment of CRC (Table 1). In these patients, there is an urgent need to improve the efficacy of tumor immunotherapy by improving intratumoral T-cell infiltration and converting cold tumors into "hot" or T-cell inflammatory tumors.

In this review, we discuss the classification and differences between hot and cold CRC and the current state of research on cold CRC, the therapeutic strategies and challenges of immunotherapy, and the pathological mechanisms of cold CRC.

CLASSIFICATION AND DIFFERENCE BETWEEN COLD AND HOT CRC

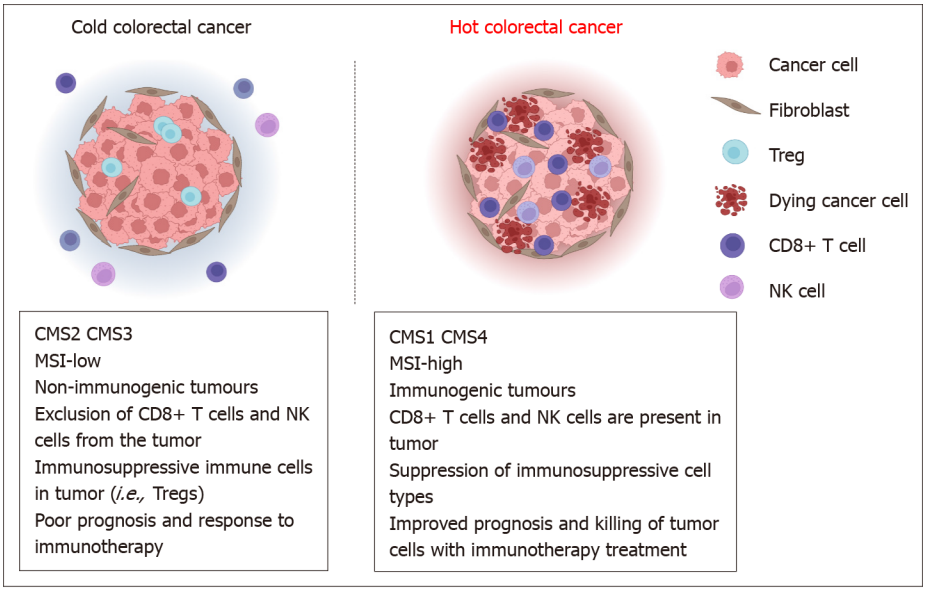
Tumor-immune system interactions provide a basis for patient stratification and treatment strategies for various cancers, which can more accurately predict survival in CRC[12]. An immune scoring system for tumor classification was developed based on the quantification of two lymphocyte populations (cluster of differentiation 3 [CD3] and CD8)[13,14] at the tumor center and aggressive margins[15-19]. The scoring system has four levels (immune score 0 [i0], i1, i2, i3, and i4). The concepts of hot (highly invasive immune score i4) and cold (noninvasive immune score i0) tumors were introduced[15]. In colon cancer, the consensus immune scoring system has a greater relative prognostic value than pathological T staging, pathological N staging, lymphovascular infiltration, tumor differentiation, and MSI status[20].

Currently, hot and cold tumors are typically referred to as T-cell infiltrated, inflammatory but noninfiltrating, and noninflammatory tumors[15]. This immune classification has been validated in melanoma and breast cancer[21,22]. In addition to the presence of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs), other features are the consensus molecular subtype (CMS) classification developed through a comprehensive reassessment and comparison of CRC molecular gene expression profiles: CMS1 and CMS4 are hot tumors (Figure 1); they are considered immunoreactive and highly infiltrated by immune cells. These tumors are immunoreactive and highly infiltrated by immune cells, as opposed to CMS2 and CMS3, which are cold tumors[23]. A small group of CRCs with dMMR/MSI-H benefits from immunotherapy. dMMR/MSI-H in solid tumors, including CRC, suggests a good tumor response to immunotherapy[7]; however, the majority of patients with skilled MMR (pMMR) or microsatellite stable (MSS) CRC do not respond well to this treatment[24]. However, immune scoring is a better predictor of prognosis in CRC patients than MSI testing alone[25], and MSI has been used to predict the response to

Table 1 Clinical trials for immune checkpoint inhibitors in colorectal cancer patients

Name	Targets	Phase	Settings	Trial identifier
Nivolumab and ipilimumab	PD-1 and CTLA4	II	dMMR and/or MSI mCRC	NCT04730544
Camrelizumab and apatinib	PD-L1 and VEGF	II	Locally advanced dMMR/MSI-H CRC	NCT04715633
Toripalimab with or without celecoxib	PD-1 and COX	I and II	Resectable non-metastatic dMMR/MSI-H CRC	NCT03926338
Cetuximab-avelumab	PD-1 and EGFR	II	mCRC	NCT04561336
Nivolumab + relatlimab	PD-1 and LAG3	II	MSS colorectal adenocarcinomas	NCT03642067
Obinutuzumab + atezolizumab + cibisatamab + tocilizumab	CD20, PD-L1, CEA + CD3 and IL-6R	Ib	MSS mCRC	NCT03866239

CEA: Carcinoembryonic antigen; COX: Cyclooxygenase; CTLA4: Cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated protein 4; dMMR: Deficient DNA mismatch repair; EGFR: Epidermal growth factor receptor; IL-6R: Interleukin 6 receptor; LAG3: Lymphocyte activation gene 3; PD-1: Programmed cell death protein 1; PD-L1: Programmed cell death-ligand 1; mCRC: Metastatic colorectal cancer; MSI: Microsatellite instability; MSS: Microsatellite stability; VEGF: Vascular endothelial growth factor.



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.240 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 1 Difference between cold and hot colorectal cancer. Colorectal cancer (CRC) is divided into hot and cold subtypes. Hot CRC mainly includes the deficient DNA mismatch repair (dMMR)/high microsatellite instability (MSI-H), consensus molecular subtype (CMS)1, and CMS4 subtypes, while cold CRC includes the proficient mismatch repair (pMMR)/low microsatellite instability (MSI-L), CMS2, and CMS3 subtypes. NK: Natural killer; Tregs: Regulatory T cells.

anti-programmed cell death protein 1 therapy in cancer[26]. The expression of anti-programmed cell death ligand 1 (PD-L1) on tumor-associated immune cells, possible genomic instability, and the pre-existing antitumor immune response are characteristics of hot tumors[27].

Currently, the most comprehensive approach to define hot and cold tumors remains the immune scoring system, but there are still some tumors with characteristics intermediate between hot and cold tumors, and the four main categories of tumor classification, namely hot, altered exclusion, altered immunosuppression, and cold, provide classification of the four major tumor categories[28]. This system provides a more comprehensive approach to classification and helps to suggest new ideas for immunotherapy strategies.

With the development of immunotherapy and its achievements, it is important to determine how to use immune scoring to classify tumors and help and guide the choice of treatment. A blanket use of parameters to score may produce bias, which reinforces the need to incorporate the details of each individual case and to adequately integrate clinical practice to develop a rational, standardized, and coordinated scoring approach to guide treatment decisions. For immunotherapy to overcome the bottleneck of cold CRC, a general consensus is still required.

Immunotherapy has made significant progress in cancer treatment[29]. In particular, hot tumors with an immune microenvironment of highly TILs are highly responsive to most immunotherapies, a property that plays a key role in obtaining good antitumor responses to immunotherapy[30-33]. The discovery and development of ICs and IC-related drugs are of importance in cancer immunotherapy. This immunotherapy approach has excellent long-term regression efficacy in hot tumors; however, hot tumors have a low response rate to immunocooled tumors lacking predominant infiltration of tumor immune cells[34-40]. Therefore, the absence or low number of lymphocytes in the TME also serves as a biomarker for cold tumor unresponsiveness to ICIs[41].

Therefore, it is important to consider a proper treatment plan for cold CRC. Classifying tumors according to their immunophenotypes is too homogeneous; an emphasis on tumor heterogeneity can enable us to have a better understanding of individualized cancer treatment[6]. Most solid tumors are non-T-cell inflammatory or cold tumors[8,42], and CRC is no exception. Therefore, there is an urgent need to improve the TME to convert cold tumors into hot or T-cell inflammatory tumors to improve the efficacy of tumor immunotherapy.

It is important to elucidate the mechanisms involved in cold CRC that do not respond to immunotherapy to provide additional insights into the therapeutic strategies that can be developed. In this section, we outline the mechanisms and approaches related to the possible modulation of non-immune-responsive cold CRC to improve the efficacy of treatment approaches against non-immune-responsive tumors.

Increasing tumor inflammation

Establishing an inflammatory response in the TME is a key goal of immunomodulatory approaches for all cold tumors, including CRC. Infection by pathogens can activate the immune system, thus stimulating a series of immune attacks[43]. The involvement of such pattern recognition receptors can activate immune cells and lead to an immune system-mediated antitumor response[44]. Interventional radiology has enabled the precision treatment of local tumors, and a variety of therapeutic substances, including pattern recognition receptor agonists, such as tumor lysing peptides or lysing viruses, cytokines, encoded nucleic acid sequences, bispecific T-cell participants, nanoparticles or particles, and immune cells, can be delivered locally[45]. The immunogenic cell death pathway induced by precise radiotherapy and cryoablation or radiofrequency ablation that produces massive tumor antigen release can convert tumors into *in situ* vaccines, which provides us with new insights and options[45,46].

Although a growing number of studies has demonstrated the effectiveness of radiotherapy[47-50], the benefits obtained in these trials cannot be attributed exclusively to radiotherapy. Explicit demonstration of the contribution of radiation to the immunotherapeutic response is challenging but crucial. The optimal integration of radiobiology and tumor immunology may lead to potentially significant clinical benefits.

Precision therapy is limited by several operational, clinical, and biological factors, in addition to the numerous complications that may arise from injecting drugs or biologics directly into the tumor. Therefore, a systemic approach to tumor-specific therapy remains attractive. Chemotherapeutic regimens as systemic treatments can induce immunogenic cell death by releasing damage-associated molecular patterns[51,52] and activating necrotic or apoptotic pathways[53]. Some studies have indicated that drugs such as 5-fluorouracil can induce apoptosis of myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) and increase CD8 cell function to enhance inflammatory immunity[54].

Immune microenvironment analysis of patients with liver metastases from CRC has revealed that cytotoxicity and memory T-cell density are significantly higher in patients who received preoperative chemotherapy than in patients with untreated metastasis[55-57], suggesting that the use of chemotherapy can induce tumor inflammation to some extent, providing insight into the transformation of cold to hot CRC. Epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), vascular EGFR kinase, and mitogen-activated protein kinase kinase (MEK) inhibitors are widely used in the clinical solid tumor routine, and the clinical effects and related mechanisms of EGFR (cetuximab and panitumumab) and angiogenesis (bevacizumab, afliximab, or ramucizumab) as first- and second-line targeted agents for metastatic CRC are being actively investigated[58-61]. Although there is a lack of knowledge regarding the detailed molecular mechanisms of action between targeted drugs and immunity, *in vivo* studies have shown that the activated mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) signaling pathway can inhibit major histocompatibility class I components and antigen-presentation mechanisms. Use of MAPK inhibitors enhances T-cell-mediated killing of tumor cells[62].

MEK inhibitors may also be involved in the immune effects of tumors[63,64]. This effect promotes antigen presentation on the surface of tumor cells to activate the recognition of CD8 T lymphocytes, which then kills tumor cells. Additionally, it has been found that inhibition of the phosphoinositide 3-kinase/AKT/mammalian target of rapamycin pathway can prevent the activation of immunosuppressive pathways[65], thereby affecting the immune microenvironment.

There is a large body of literature that strongly supports the idea that drugs targeting oncogenes and non-oncogenes can beneficially affect the TME in a wide range of tumors and thus enhance tumor immune responses. However, many therapeutic methods have not yet been used in the routine management of cancer patients, as their preclinical and clinical development has only recently begun.

For example, toll-like receptors (TLRs) are highly expressed in immune cells in the TME, and in clinical development, the involvement of TLR agonists can activate antitumor immune responses[66]. However, the complexity of the TLR system challenges the selection of agonists. Different agonists may cause different types of inflammatory responses. TLR agonists are currently being used as monotherapy and in combination with ICIs[66,67].

Stimulator of interferon (IFN) genes is an endoplasmic reticulum transmembrane protein, whose mechanism of action is to sense cytosolic DNA, induce type I IFN gene transcription, and promote antigen cross-presentation[68]. IFN gene-stimulating factor agonists increase CD8 T cells in the TME[69] and, when combined with anti-PD-L1, reduce local immunosuppression to mediate a systemic antitumor response[70]. This combination may be used as a method of local immunosuppression, and the study of its agonist is in the clinical development stage.

Cytokines in the TME

Cytokines and chemokines are molecular messengers of the immune system, and many cytokines (*e.g.*, interleukin 2 [IL-2], IL-7, IL-15, IL-21, granulocyte macrophage colony-stimulating factor, and IFN-α) in the immune TME[71-76] regulate the function of T cells, and studies have reported their use as single agents or in combination with other drugs[77]. Accumulation of MDSCs as a group of immature myeloid cells with immunosuppressive functions in tumors attenuates the regulation of immune responses. Regulatory T cells (Tregs) can promote tumor growth by suppressing cytotoxic immune responses. Therefore, therapeutic strategies that specifically eliminate MDSCs or Tregs have been proposed[78]. It has been suggested that monoclonal antibodies against immune checkpoints or agonists of the tumor necrosis factor receptor superfamily may have a modulatory effect on Tregs[79].

Immunosuppressive soluble ligands play an important role in the immune microenvironment. For example, prostaglandin E2 promotes tumor growth and exerts immunosuppressive effects[80]. The TME is also rich in adenosine. The TME is also enriched in adenosine, which is released owing to the death of tumor cells through CD73 and CD39 ectonucleases[81]. The increase in adenosine, a substance enriched in the TME, impairs the implantation and activation of immune cells in the TME. Antagonizing adenosine or its pathway can block CD39 to enhance T-cell proliferation and induce proinflammatory cytokines, which can control tumor growth[82].

Cell therapy

Since 1993, engineered T cells targeting artificial chimeric antigen receptors (CARs) on the surface molecules of tumor cells were first proposed[83], and in 2010, their nature as anticancer drugs was revealed[84]. CAR T-cell-based therapies have shown specific, rapid, high success rates, and long-lasting effects[85]. The principle of action is mainly through T cells with novel properties to induce a tumor rejection response. Patient-derived TILs that can be expanded *in vitro* with recombinant IL-2 have been demonstrated and have made important advances in the treatment of metastatic melanoma and other types of tumors[86-88].

To some extent, the efficacy of T-cell therapy depends on the potency of the T cells themselves; however, T cells can be influenced by the dose (absolute number of T cells injected) as well as the characteristics of the tumor-specific T cells administered. Controlling the dose of tumor-specific T cells is crucial for activation of the endothelial complement by IFN-γ to overcome the vascular endothelial barrier[89]. Therefore, the effect of pericyte therapy alone may be limited, and patients may benefit more from its combination with tumor-targeted interventions aimed at reprogramming the TME. A combination of many factors (intervention of tumor-intrinsic pathways, local inflammatory response, or intercellular messaging) to ensure proper engraftment and function of relayed metastatic T cells may be beneficial for cold tumors. Repeated stimulation of tumor-specific T cell expansion by cell lines established in lesions from patients with resected melanoma has been shown to be effective[90]. Melanoma is the best solid cancer type to respond to adoptive cell therapy[91].

In summary, peritoneal cellular immunotherapy is a promising treatment modality for CRC. The approach is based on the collection T cells from patients, which are expanded *in vitro* and then transfused back into the patient. These T cells are designed to express CARs, which can be designed to recognize not only tumor antigens but also to produce anticancer cytokines or ICIs. However, despite the results of CAR-T therapy in the treatment of hematological tumors such as B-cell malignancies, the effectiveness and applicability of the approach to convert cold tumors into hot tumors, and whether it can be successful in CRC and other solid tumors remains to be elucidated[7,92].

Other possible methods that can be used to make the tumor hotter

As a branch of hyperthermia, modulated electro-hyperthermia (mEHT) has been gradually applied in the treatment of various cancers in recent years[93,94]. The principle of mEHT is delivering locoregional clinical hyperthermia generated by 13.56 MHz amplitude-modulated radiofrequency[95]. A series of studies have shown the effect of mEHT in the treatment of CRC[96-99], and related mechanism studies have also shown its relevance in immunity[100,101]. This treatment may be a good candidate for transforming cold CRC.

In addition, some experiments are being conducted to make tumors hotter, such as combining oncolytic bacteria or viruses or peptides, tumor, virus or dendritic cell antigens with various adjuvants, with the goal of improving CRC immunogenicity. Tumor-associated macrophages, as a key driver of inflammation that facilitates tumor progression, are attractive targets to complement current immunotherapy[102].

As a key target of tumor-associated macrophages, colony-stimulating factor 1 receptor (CSF1R) can bind to CSF1 or IL-34 to activate macrophage proliferation and function[103,104]. CSF1R-specific inhibitors and other macrophage modulators are currently being studied in clinical trials in solid tumors [105].

THE CHALLENGES FOR IMMUNOTHERAPY TARGETING COLD CRC

Despite the widespread use of immunotherapy, poor clinical response to cold tumors is a current challenge[22]. Prior to immunotherapy, the resected tumor (primary or metastatic) should be classified as hot, altered, or cold. Although the tumor sample is valuable in providing information about the disease, it is limited in that it is not representative of the entire tumor landscape[28]. Recently, it was noted that, in addition to the CMS of CRC, the underlying epithelial cell diversity of CRC was summarized in a large transcriptome into two intrinsic subtypes, iCMS2 and iCMS3. This finding refines the CMS[106]. Because of genomic and immune heterogeneity, each sample can be considered an individual tumor[56]. Moreover, immune parameters change over the course of the disease[107].

The concept of personalized cancer immunotherapy is being increasingly promoted. A major challenge for immunotherapy of cold tumors is the need to identify key immune- or tumor-related features at the time of diagnosis to establish a reliable classification strategy to support immunotherapy for maximum efficiency[108].

CONCLUSION

With an increasing number of studies conducted on cold tumors, personalized cancer immunotherapy for individual patients is gaining ground. A major challenge hindering the development of therapeutic strategies may be the lack of mastery of the relationship between cancer and immunity. Even though a great deal of technological innovation and related research has been conducted to achieve some progress, the variability of cancer among individual patients cannot be generalized[108]. Identifying key phenotypic features is of interest when developing treatment strategies, and considerable progress has been made with ICIs approved by the United States Food and Drug Administration for the treatment of patients with dMMR/MSI-HmCRC. Notably, subtype dMMR/MSI-H CRC represents only a small fraction of all CRCs, and most pMMR/MSS mCRC patients do not benefit from ICI treatment alone. Therefore, further tumor states need to be identified, which has led to the continued reporting of new biomarkers, such as comprehensive immune scoring and complete CMS classification, and these results have led to a better understanding of the immune mechanisms of CRC and their relationship to tumor treatment strategies.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Liu JL, Yang M, Bai JG contributed equally to this work in all aspects of conceptualization, design, drafting and writing of the manuscript, research and analysis, and providing approval of the final version.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors state that they have no conflicts of interest to declare.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Zheng Liu 0000-0002-8831-0761; Xi-Shan Wang 0000-0002-1675-5083.

S-Editor: Wang JJ
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Wang JJ

REFERENCES

1 **Dekker E**, Tanis PJ, Vleugels JLA, Kasi PM, Wallace MB. Colorectal cancer. *Lancet* 2019; **394**: 1467-1480 [PMID: 31631858 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(19)32319-0]

2 **Ferlay J**, Colombet M, Soerjomataram I, Mathers C, Parkin DM, Piñeros M, Znaor A, Bray F. Estimating the global cancer incidence and mortality in 2018: GLOBOCAN sources and methods. *Int J Cancer* 2019; **144**: 1941-1953 [PMID: 30350310 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.31937]

3 **Islami F**, Goding Sauer A, Miller KD, Siegel RL, Fedewa SA, Jacobs EJ, McCullough ML, Patel AV, Ma J, Soerjomataram I, Flanders WD, Brawley OW, Gapstur SM, Jemal A. Proportion and number of cancer cases and deaths attributable to potentially modifiable risk factors in the United States. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2018; **68**: 31-54 [PMID: 29160902 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21440]

4 **Arnold M**, Sierra MS, Laversanne M, Soerjomataram I, Jemal A, Bray F. Global patterns and trends in colorectal cancer incidence and mortality. *Gut* 2017; **66**: 683-691 [PMID: 26818619 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2015-310912]

5 **Groeneveldt C**, van Hall T, van der Burg SH, Ten Dijke P, van Montfoort N. Immunotherapeutic Potential of TGF-β Inhibition and Oncolytic Viruses. *Trends Immunol* 2020; **41**: 406-420 [PMID: 32223932 DOI: 10.1016/j.it.2020.03.003]

6 **Chen DS**, Mellman I. Elements of cancer immunity and the cancer-immune set point. *Nature* 2017; **541**: 321-330 [PMID: 28102259 DOI: 10.1038/nature21349]

7 **Ganesh K**, Stadler ZK, Cercek A, Mendelsohn RB, Shia J, Segal NH, Diaz LA Jr. Immunotherapy in colorectal cancer: rationale, challenges and potential. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **16**: 361-375 [PMID: 30886395 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-019-0126-x]

8 **Gajewski TF**. The Next Hurdle in Cancer Immunotherapy: Overcoming the Non-T-Cell-Inflamed Tumor Microenvironment. *Semin Oncol* 2015; **42**: 663-671 [PMID: 26320069 DOI: 10.1053/j.seminoncol.2015.05.011]

9 **Asaoka Y**, Ijichi H, Koike K. PD-1 Blockade in Tumors with Mismatch-Repair Deficiency. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **373**: 1979 [PMID: 26559583 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc1510353]

10 **Overman MJ**, McDermott R, Leach JL, Lonardi S, Lenz HJ, Morse MA, Desai J, Hill A, Axelson M, Moss RA, Goldberg MV, Cao ZA, Ledeine JM, Maglinte GA, Kopetz S, André T. Nivolumab in patients with metastatic DNA mismatch repair-deficient or microsatellite instability-high colorectal cancer (CheckMate 142): an open-label, multicentre, phase 2 study. *Lancet Oncol* 2017; **18**: 1182-1191 [PMID: 28734759 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(17)30422-9]

11 **Overman MJ**, Lonardi S, Wong KYM, Lenz HJ, Gelsomino F, Aglietta M, Morse MA, Van Cutsem E, McDermott R, Hill A, Sawyer MB, Hendlisz A, Neyns B, Svrcek M, Moss RA, Ledeine JM, Cao ZA, Kamble S, Kopetz S, André T. Durable Clinical Benefit With Nivolumab Plus Ipilimumab in DNA Mismatch Repair-Deficient/Microsatellite Instability-High Metastatic Colorectal Cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2018; **36**: 773-779 [PMID: 29355075 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2017.76.9901]

12 **Mlecnik B**, Tosolini M, Kirilovsky A, Berger A, Bindea G, Meatchi T, Bruneval P, Trajanoski Z, Fridman WH, Pagès F, Galon J. Histopathologic-based prognostic factors of colorectal cancers are associated with the state of the local immune reaction. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 610-618 [PMID: 21245428 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2010.30.5425]

13 **Pagès F**, Kirilovsky A, Mlecnik B, Asslaber M, Tosolini M, Bindea G, Lagorce C, Wind P, Marliot F, Bruneval P, Zatloukal K, Trajanoski Z, Berger A, Fridman WH, Galon J. In situ cytotoxic and memory T cells predict outcome in patients with early-stage colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; **27**: 5944-5951 [PMID: 19858404 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.19.6147]

14 **Galon J**, Mlecnik B, Bindea G, Angell HK, Berger A, Lagorce C, Lugli A, Zlobec I, Hartmann A, Bifulco C, Nagtegaal ID, Palmqvist R, Masucci GV, Botti G, Tatangelo F, Delrio P, Maio M, Laghi L, Grizzi F, Asslaber M, D'Arrigo C, Vidal-Vanaclocha F, Zavadova E, Chouchane L, Ohashi PS, Hafezi-Bakhtiari S, Wouters BG, Roehrl M, Nguyen L, Kawakami Y, Hazama S, Okuno K, Ogino S, Gibbs P, Waring P, Sato N, Torigoe T, Itoh K, Patel PS, Shukla SN, Wang Y, Kopetz S, Sinicrope FA, Scripcariu V, Ascierto PA, Marincola FM, Fox BA, Pagès F. Towards the introduction of the 'Immunoscore' in the classification of malignant tumours. *J Pathol* 2014; **232**: 199-209 [PMID: 24122236 DOI: 10.1002/path.4287]

15 **Galon J**, Costes A, Sanchez-Cabo F, Kirilovsky A, Mlecnik B, Lagorce-Pagès C, Tosolini M, Camus M, Berger A, Wind P, Zinzindohoué F, Bruneval P, Cugnenc PH, Trajanoski Z, Fridman WH, Pagès F. Type, density, and location of immune cells within human colorectal tumors predict clinical outcome. *Science* 2006; **313**: 1960-1964 [PMID: 17008531 DOI: 10.1126/science.1129139]

16 **Galon J**, Angell HK, Bedognetti D, Marincola FM. The continuum of cancer immunosurveillance: prognostic, predictive, and mechanistic signatures. *Immunity* 2013; **39**: 11-26 [PMID: 23890060 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2013.07.008]

17 **Angell H**, Galon J. From the immune contexture to the Immunoscore: the role of prognostic and predictive immune markers in cancer. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2013; **25**: 261-267 [PMID: 23579076 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2013.03.004]

18 **Galluzzi L**, Senovilla L, Vacchelli E, Eggermont A, Fridman WH, Galon J, Sautès-Fridman C, Tartour E, Zitvogel L, Kroemer G. Trial watch: Dendritic cell-based interventions for cancer therapy. *Oncoimmunology* 2012; **1**: 1111-1134 [PMID: 23170259 DOI: 10.4161/onci.21494]

19 **Galon J**, Fridman WH, Pagès F. The adaptive immunologic microenvironment in colorectal cancer: a novel perspective. *Cancer Res* 2007; **67**: 1883-1886 [PMID: 17332313 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-06-4806]

20 **Pagès F**, Mlecnik B, Marliot F, Bindea G, Ou FS, Bifulco C, Lugli A, Zlobec I, Rau TT, Berger MD, Nagtegaal ID, Vink-Börger E, Hartmann A, Geppert C, Kolwelter J, Merkel S, Grützmann R, Van den Eynde M, Jouret-Mourin A, Kartheuser A, Léonard D, Remue C, Wang JY, Bavi P, Roehrl MHA, Ohashi PS, Nguyen LT, Han S, MacGregor HL, Hafezi-Bakhtiari S, Wouters BG, Masucci GV, Andersson EK, Zavadova E, Vocka M, Spacek J, Petruzelka L, Konopasek B, Dundr P, Skalova H, Nemejcova K, Botti G, Tatangelo F, Delrio P, Ciliberto G, Maio M, Laghi L, Grizzi F, Fredriksen T, Buttard B, Angelova M, Vasaturo A, Maby P, Church SE, Angell HK, Lafontaine L, Bruni D, El Sissy C, Haicheur N, Kirilovsky A, Berger A, Lagorce C, Meyers JP, Paustian C, Feng Z, Ballesteros-Merino C, Dijkstra J, van de Water C, van Lent-van Vliet S, Knijn N, Mușină AM, Scripcariu DV, Popivanova B, Xu M, Fujita T, Hazama S, Suzuki N, Nagano H, Okuno K, Torigoe T, Sato N, Furuhata T, Takemasa I, Itoh K, Patel PS, Vora HH, Shah B, Patel JB, Rajvik KN, Pandya SJ, Shukla SN, Wang Y, Zhang G, Kawakami Y, Marincola FM, Ascierto PA, Sargent DJ, Fox BA, Galon J. International

validation of the consensus Immunoscore for the classification of colon cancer: a prognostic and accuracy study. *Lancet* 2018; **391**: 2128-2139 [PMID: 29754777 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(18)30789-X]

21 **Gajewski TF**, Corrales L, Williams J, Horton B, Sivan A, Spranger S. Cancer Immunotherapy Targets Based on Understanding the T Cell-Inflamed Versus Non-T Cell-Inflamed Tumor Microenvironment. *Adv Exp Med Biol* 2017; **1036**: 19-31 [PMID: 29275462 DOI: 10.1007/978-3-319-67577-0_2]

22 **Song X**, Zhou Z, Li H, Xue Y, Lu X, Bahar I, Kepp O, Hung MC, Kroemer G, Wan Y. Pharmacologic Suppression of B7-H4 Glycosylation Restores Antitumor Immunity in Immune-Cold Breast Cancers. *Cancer Discov* 2020; **10**: 1872-1893 [PMID: 32938586 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-20-0402]

23 **Becht E**, de Reyniès A, Giraldo NA, Pilati C, Buttard B, Lacroix L, Selves J, Sautès-Fridman C, Laurent-Puig P, Fridman WH. Immune and Stromal Classification of Colorectal Cancer Is Associated with Molecular Subtypes and Relevant for Precision Immunotherapy. *Clin Cancer Res* 2016; **22**: 4057-4066 [PMID: 26994146 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-15-2879]

24 **Huyghe N**, Baldin P, Van den Eynde M. Immunotherapy with immune checkpoint inhibitors in colorectal cancer: what is the future beyond deficient mismatch-repair tumours? *Gastroenterol Rep (Oxf)* 2020; **8**: 11-24 [PMID: 32104582 DOI: 10.1093/gastro/goz061]

25 **Mlecnik B**, Bindea G, Angell HK, Maby P, Angelova M, Tougeron D, Church SE, Lafontaine L, Fischer M, Fredriksen T, Sasso M, Bilocq AM, Kirilovsky A, Obenauf AC, Hamieh M, Berger A, Bruneval P, Tuech JJ, Sabourin JC, Le Pessot F, Mauillon J, Rafii A, Laurent-Puig P, Speicher MR, Trajanoski Z, Michel P, Sesboüe R, Frebourg T, Pagès F, Valge-Archer V, Latouche JB, Galon J. Integrative Analyses of Colorectal Cancer Show Immunoscore Is a Stronger Predictor of Patient Survival Than Microsatellite Instability. *Immunity* 2016; **44**: 698-711 [PMID: 26982367 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2016.02.025]

26 **Boland CR**, Goel A. Microsatellite instability in colorectal cancer. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: 2073-2087.e3 [PMID: 20420947 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.12.064]

27 **Hegde PS**, Karanikas V, Evers S. The Where, the When, and the How of Immune Monitoring for Cancer Immunotherapies in the Era of Checkpoint Inhibition. *Clin Cancer Res* 2016; **22**: 1865-1874 [PMID: 27084740 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-15-1507]

28 **Galon J**, Bruni D. Approaches to treat immune hot, altered and cold tumours with combination immunotherapies. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2019; **18**: 197-218 [PMID: 30610226 DOI: 10.1038/s41573-018-0007-y]

29 **Chen L**, Chen H, Ye J, Ge Y, Wang H, Dai E, Ren J, Liu W, Ma C, Ju S, Guo ZS, Liu Z, Bartlett DL. Intratumoral expression of interleukin 23 variants using oncolytic vaccinia virus elicit potent antitumor effects on multiple tumor models *via* tumor microenvironment modulation. *Theranostics* 2021; **11**: 6668-6681 [PMID: 34093846 DOI: 10.7150/thno.56494]

30 **Haanen JBAG**. Converting Cold into Hot Tumors by Combining Immunotherapies. *Cell* 2017; **170**: 1055-1056 [PMID: 28886376 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2017.08.031]

31 **Ruan H**, Hu Q, Wen D, Chen Q, Chen G, Lu Y, Wang J, Cheng H, Lu W, Gu Z. A Dual-Bioresponsive Drug-Delivery Depot for Combination of Epigenetic Modulation and Immune Checkpoint Blockade. *Adv Mater* 2019; **31**: e1806957 [PMID: 30856290 DOI: 10.1002/adma.201806957]

32 **Wang C**, Wang J, Zhang X, Yu S, Wen D, Hu Q, Ye Y, Bomba H, Hu X, Liu Z, Dotti G, Gu Z. In situ formed reactive oxygen species-responsive scaffold with gemcitabine and checkpoint inhibitor for combination therapy. *Sci Transl Med* 2018; **10** [PMID: 29467299 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aan3682]

33 **Noman MZ**, Parpal S, Van Moer K, Xiao M, Yu Y, Viklund J, De Milito A, Hasmim M, Andersson M, Amaravadi RK, Martinsson J, Berchem G, Janji B. Inhibition of Vps34 reprograms cold into hot inflamed tumors and improves anti-PD-1/PD-L1 immunotherapy. *Sci Adv* 2020; **6**: eaax7881 [PMID: 32494661 DOI: 10.1126/sciadv.aax7881]

34 **Feng B**, Zhou F, Hou B, Wang D, Wang T, Fu Y, Ma Y, Yu H, Li Y. Binary Cooperative Prodrug Nanoparticles Improve Immunotherapy by Synergistically Modulating Immune Tumor Microenvironment. *Adv Mater* 2018; **30**: e1803001 [PMID: 30063262 DOI: 10.1002/adma.201803001]

35 **Wang D**, Wang T, Yu H, Feng B, Zhou L, Zhou F, Hou B, Zhang H, Luo M, Li Y. Engineering nanoparticles to locally activate T cells in the tumor microenvironment. *Sci Immunol* 2019; **4** [PMID: 31300478 DOI: 10.1126/sciimmunol.aau6584]

36 **He C**, Duan X, Guo N, Chan C, Poon C, Weichselbaum RR, Lin W. Core-shell nanoscale coordination polymers combine chemotherapy and photodynamic therapy to potentiate checkpoint blockade cancer immunotherapy. *Nat Commun* 2016; **7**: 12499 [PMID: 27530650 DOI: 10.1038/ncomms12499]

37 **Dong X**, Pan P, Zheng DW, Bao P, Zeng X, Zhang XZ. Bioinorganic hybrid bacteriophage for modulation of intestinal microbiota to remodel tumor-immune microenvironment against colorectal cancer. *Sci Adv* 2020; **6**: eaba1590 [PMID: 32440552 DOI: 10.1126/sciadv.aba1590]

38 **Wang Y**, Gao Z, Du X, Chen S, Zhang W, Wang J, Li H, He X, Cao J. Co-inhibition of the TGF-β pathway and the PD-L1 checkpoint by pH-responsive clustered nanoparticles for pancreatic cancer microenvironment regulation and anti-tumor immunotherapy. *Biomater Sci* 2020; **8**: 5121-5132 [PMID: 32820750 DOI: 10.1039/d0bm00916d]

39 **Chao Y**, Xu L, Liang C, Feng L, Xu J, Dong Z, Tian L, Yi X, Yang K, Liu Z. Combined local immunostimulatory radioisotope therapy and systemic immune checkpoint blockade imparts potent antitumour responses. *Nat Biomed Eng* 2018; **2**: 611-621 [PMID: 31015634 DOI: 10.1038/s41551-018-0262-6]

40 **Xu J**, Lv J, Zhuang Q, Yang Z, Cao Z, Xu L, Pei P, Wang C, Wu H, Dong Z, Chao Y, Yang K, Peng R, Cheng Y, Liu Z. A general strategy towards personalized nanovaccines based on fluoropolymers for post-surgical cancer immunotherapy. *Nat Nanotechnol* 2020; **15**: 1043-1052 [PMID: 33139933 DOI: 10.1038/s41565-020-00781-4]

41 **Ochoa de Olza M**, Navarro Rodrigo B, Zimmermann S, Coukos G. Turning up the heat on non-immunoreactive tumours: opportunities for clinical development. *Lancet Oncol* 2020; **21**: e419-e430 [PMID: 32888471 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(20)30234-5]

42 **van der Woude LL**, Gorris MAJ, Halilovic A, Figdor CG, de Vries IJM. Migrating into the Tumor: a Roadmap for T Cells. *Trends Cancer* 2017; **3**: 797-808 [PMID: 29120755 DOI: 10.1016/j.trecan.2017.09.006]

43 **Matzinger P**. Tolerance, danger, and the extended family. *Annu Rev Immunol* 1994; **12**: 991-1045 [PMID: 8011301 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.iy.12.040194.005015]

44 **Shekarian T**, Valsesia-Wittmann S, Brody J, Michallet MC, Depil S, Caux C, Marabelle A. Pattern recognition receptors: immune targets to enhance cancer immunotherapy. *Ann Oncol* 2017; **28**: 1756-1766 [PMID: 28444111 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdx179]

45 **Erinjeri JP**, Fine GC, Adema GJ, Ahmed M, Chapiro J, den Brok M, Duran R, Hunt SJ, Johnson DT, Ricke J, Sze DY, Toskich BB, Wood BJ, Woodrum D, Goldberg SN. Immunotherapy and the Interventional Oncologist: Challenges and Opportunities-A Society of Interventional Oncology White Paper. *Radiology* 2019; **292**: 25-34 [PMID: 31012818 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2019182326]

46 **Whiteside TL**, Demaria S, Rodriguez-Ruiz ME, Zarour HM, Melero I. Emerging Opportunities and Challenges in Cancer Immunotherapy. *Clin Cancer Res* 2016; **22**: 1845-1855 [PMID: 27084738 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-16-0049]

47 **Floudas CS**, Brar G, Mabry-Hrones D, Duffy AG, Wood B, Levy E, Krishnasamy V, Fioravanti S, Bonilla CM, Walker M, Morelli MP, Kleiner DE, Steinberg SM, Figg WD, Greten TF, Xie C. A Pilot Study of the PD-1 Targeting Agent AMP-224 Used With Low-Dose Cyclophosphamide and Stereotactic Body Radiation Therapy in Patients With Metastatic Colorectal Cancer. *Clin Colorectal Cancer* 2019; **18**: e349-e360 [PMID: 31351862 DOI: 10.1016/j.clcc.2019.06.004]

48 **Woo SR**, Fuertes MB, Corrales L, Spranger S, Furdyna MJ, Leung MY, Duggan R, Wang Y, Barber GN, Fitzgerald KA, Alegre ML, Gajewski TF. STING-dependent cytosolic DNA sensing mediates innate immune recognition of immunogenic tumors. *Immunity* 2014; **41**: 830-842 [PMID: 25517615 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2014.10.017]

49 **Deng L**, Liang H, Xu M, Yang X, Burnette B, Arina A, Li XD, Mauceri H, Beckett M, Darga T, Huang X, Gajewski TF, Chen ZJ, Fu YX, Weichselbaum RR. STING-Dependent Cytosolic DNA Sensing Promotes Radiation-Induced Type I Interferon-Dependent Antitumor Immunity in Immunogenic Tumors. *Immunity* 2014; **41**: 843-852 [PMID: 25517616 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2014.10.019]

50 **Bonvalot S**, Le Pechoux C, De Baere T, Kantor G, Buy X, Stoeckle E, Terrier P, Sargos P, Coindre JM, Lassau N, Ait Sarkouh R, Dimitriu M, Borghi E, Levy L, Deutsch E, Soria JC. First-in-Human Study Testing a New Radioenhancer Using Nanoparticles (NBTXR3) Activated by Radiation Therapy in Patients with Locally Advanced Soft Tissue Sarcomas. *Clin Cancer Res* 2017; **23**: 908-917 [PMID: 27998887 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-16-1297]

51 **Kroemer G**, Galluzzi L, Kepp O, Zitvogel L. Immunogenic cell death in cancer therapy. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2013; **31**: 51-72 [PMID: 23157435 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-immunol-032712-100008]

52 **Krysko DV**, Garg AD, Kaczmarek A, Krysko O, Agostinis P, Vandenabeele P. Immunogenic cell death and DAMPs in cancer therapy. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2012; **12**: 860-875 [PMID: 23151605 DOI: 10.1038/nrc3380]

53 **Galluzzi L**, Buqué A, Kepp O, Zitvogel L, Kroemer G. Immunogenic cell death in cancer and infectious disease. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2017; **17**: 97-111 [PMID: 27748397 DOI: 10.1038/nri.2016.107]

54 **Vincent J**, Mignot G, Chalmin F, Ladoire S, Bruchard M, Chevriaux A, Martin F, Apetoh L, Rébé C, Ghiringhelli F. 5-Fluorouracil selectively kills tumor-associated myeloid-derived suppressor cells resulting in enhanced T cell-dependent antitumor immunity. *Cancer Res* 2010; **70**: 3052-3061 [PMID: 20388795 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-09-3690]

55 **Van den Eynde M**, Mlecnik B, Bindea G, Fredriksen T, Church SE, Lafontaine L, Haicheur N, Marliot F, Angelova M, Vasaturo A, Bruni D, Jouret-Mourin A, Baldin P, Huyghe N, Haustermans K, Debucquoy A, Van Cutsem E, Gigot JF, Hubert C, Kartheuser A, Remue C, Léonard D, Valge-Archer V, Pagès F, Machiels JP, Galon J. The Link between the Multiverse of Immune Microenvironments in Metastases and the Survival of Colorectal Cancer Patients. *Cancer Cell* 2018; **34**: 1012-1026.e3 [PMID: 30537506 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccell.2018.11.003]

56 **Mlecnik B**, Van den Eynde M, Bindea G, Church SE, Vasaturo A, Fredriksen T, Lafontaine L, Haicheur N, Marliot F, Debetancourt D, Pairet G, Jouret-Mourin A, Gigot JF, Hubert C, Danse E, Dragean C, Carrasco J, Humblet Y, Valge-Archer V, Berger A, Pagès F, Machiels JP, Galon J. Comprehensive Intrametastatic Immune Quantification and Major Impact of Immunoscore on Survival. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2018; **110** [PMID: 28922789 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djx123]

57 **Tanis E**, Julié C, Emile JF, Mauer M, Nordlinger B, Aust D, Roth A, Lutz MP, Gruenberger T, Wrba F, Sorbye H, Bechstein W, Schlag P, Fisseler A, Ruers T. Prognostic impact of immune response in resectable colorectal liver metastases treated by surgery alone or surgery with perioperative FOLFOX in the randomised EORTC study 40983. *Eur J Cancer* 2015; **51**: 2708-2717 [PMID: 26342674 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2015.08.014]

58 **Hurwitz H**, Fehrenbacher L, Novotny W, Cartwright T, Hainsworth J, Heim W, Berlin J, Baron A, Griffing S, Holmgren E, Ferrara N, Fyfe G, Rogers B, Ross R, Kabbinavar F. Bevacizumab plus irinotecan, fluorouracil, and leucovorin for metastatic colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **350**: 2335-2342 [PMID: 15175435 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa032691]

59 **Tabernero J**, Yoshino T, Cohn AL, Obermannova R, Bodoky G, Garcia-Carbonero R, Ciuleanu TE, Portnoy DC, Van Cutsem E, Grothey A, Prausová J, Garcia-Alfonso P, Yamazaki K, Clingan PR, Lonardi S, Kim TW, Simms L, Chang SC, Nasroulah F; RAISE Study Investigators. Ramucirumab versus placebo in combination with second-line FOLFIRI in patients with metastatic colorectal carcinoma that progressed during or after first-line therapy with bevacizumab, oxaliplatin, and a fluoropyrimidine (RAISE): a randomised, double-blind, multicentre, phase 3 study. *Lancet Oncol* 2015; **16**: 499-508 [PMID: 25877855 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(15)70127-0]

60 **Douillard JY**, Oliner KS, Siena S, Tabernero J, Burkes R, Barugel M, Humblet Y, Bodoky G, Cunningham D, Jassem J, Rivera F, Kocákova I, Ruff P, Błasińska-Morawiec M, Šmakal M, Canon JL, Rother M, Williams R, Rong A, Wiezorek J, Sidhu R, Patterson SD. Panitumumab-FOLFOX4 treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **369**: 1023-1034 [PMID: 24024839 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1305275]

61 **Van Cutsem E**, Lenz HJ, Köhne CH, Heinemann V, Tejpar S, Melezínek I, Beier F, Stroh C, Rougier P, van Krieken JH, Ciardiello F. Fluorouracil, leucovorin, and irinotecan plus cetuximab treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: 692-700 [PMID: 25605843 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2014.59.4812]

62 **Brea EJ**, Oh CY, Manchado E, Budhu S, Gejman RS, Mo G, Mondello P, Han JE, Jarvis CA, Ulmert D, Xiang Q, Chang AY, Garippa RJ, Merghoub T, Wolchok JD, Rosen N, Lowe SW, Scheinberg DA. Kinase Regulation of Human MHC Class I Molecule Expression on Cancer Cells. *Cancer Immunol Res* 2016; **4**: 936-947 [PMID: 27680026 DOI: 10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-16-0177]

63 **Ebert PJR**, Cheung J, Yang Y, McNamara E, Hong R, Moskalenko M, Gould SE, Maecker H, Irving BA, Kim JM,

Belvin M, Mellman I. MAP Kinase Inhibition Promotes T Cell and Anti-tumor Activity in Combination with PD-L1 Checkpoint Blockade. *Immunity* 2016; **44**: 609-621 [PMID: 26944201 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2016.01.024]

64 **Liu L**, Mayes PA, Eastman S, Shi H, Yadavilli S, Zhang T, Yang J, Seestaller-Wehr L, Zhang SY, Hopson C, Tsvetkov L, Jing J, Zhang S, Smothers J, Hoos A. The BRAF and MEK Inhibitors Dabrafenib and Trametinib: Effects on Immune Function and in Combination with Immunomodulatory Antibodies Targeting PD-1, PD-L1, and CTLA-4. *Clin Cancer Res* 2015; **21**: 1639-1651 [PMID: 25589619 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-14-2339]

65 **Xue G**, Zippelius A, Wicki A, Mandalà M, Tang F, Massi D, Hemmings BA. Integrated Akt/PKB signaling in immunomodulation and its potential role in cancer immunotherapy. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2015; **107** [PMID: 26071042 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djv171]

66 **Bourquin C**, Pommier A, Hotz C. Harnessing the immune system to fight cancer with Toll-like receptor and RIG-I-like receptor agonists. *Pharmacol Res* 2020; **154**: 104192 [PMID: 30836160 DOI: 10.1016/j.phrs.2019.03.001]

67 **Ribas A**, Medina T, Kummar S, Amin A, Kalbasi A, Drabick JJ, Barve M, Daniels GA, Wong DJ, Schmidt EV, Candia AF, Coffman RL, Leung ACF, Janssen RS. SD-101 in Combination with Pembrolizumab in Advanced Melanoma: Results of a Phase Ib, Multicenter Study. *Cancer Discov* 2018; **8**: 1250-1257 [PMID: 30154193 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-18-0280]

68 **Rivera Vargas T**, Benoit-Lizon I, Apetoh L. Rationale for stimulator of interferon genes-targeted cancer immunotherapy. *Eur J Cancer* 2017; **75**: 86-97 [PMID: 28219022 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2016.12.028]

69 **Jing W**, McAllister D, Vonderhaar EP, Palen K, Riese MJ, Gershan J, Johnson BD, Dwinell MB. STING agonist inflames the pancreatic cancer immune microenvironment and reduces tumor burden in mouse models. *J Immunother Cancer* 2019; **7**: 115 [PMID: 31036082 DOI: 10.1186/s40425-019-0573-5]

70 **Moore E**, Clavijo PE, Davis R, Cash H, Van Waes C, Kim Y, Allen C. Established T Cell-Inflamed Tumors Rejected after Adaptive Resistance Was Reversed by Combination STING Activation and PD-1 Pathway Blockade. *Cancer Immunol Res* 2016; **4**: 1061-1071 [PMID: 27821498 DOI: 10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-16-0104]

71 **Jiang T**, Zhou C, Ren S. Role of IL-2 in cancer immunotherapy. *Oncoimmunology* 2016; **5**: e1163462 [PMID: 27471638 DOI: 10.1080/2162402X.2016.1163462]

72 **Ochoa MC**, Mazzolini G, Hervas-Stubbs S, de Sanmamed MF, Berraondo P, Melero I. Interleukin-15 in gene therapy of cancer. *Curr Gene Ther* 2013; **13**: 15-30 [PMID: 23157547 DOI: 10.2174/156652313804806561]

73 **Mazzucchelli R**, Durum SK. Interleukin-7 receptor expression: intelligent design. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2007; **7**: 144-154 [PMID: 17259970 DOI: 10.1038/nri2023]

74 **Al-Chami E**, Tormo A, Khodayarian F, Rafei M. Therapeutic utility of the newly discovered properties of interleukin-21. *Cytokine* 2016; **82**: 33-37 [PMID: 26748727 DOI: 10.1016/j.cyto.2015.12.018]

75 **Hong IS**. Stimulatory versus suppressive effects of GM-CSF on tumor progression in multiple cancer types. *Exp Mol Med* 2016; **48**: e242 [PMID: 27364892 DOI: 10.1038/emm.2016.64]

76 **Patel SP**, Kurzrock R. PD-L1 Expression as a Predictive Biomarker in Cancer Immunotherapy. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2015; **14**: 847-856 [PMID: 25695955 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-14-0983]

77 **García-Martínez E**, Smith M, Buqué A, Aranda F, de la Peña FA, Ivars A, Cánovas MS, Conesa MAV, Fucikova J, Spisek R, Zitvogel L, Kroemer G, Galluzzi L. Trial Watch: Immunostimulation with recombinant cytokines for cancer therapy. *Oncoimmunology* 2018; **7**: e1433982 [PMID: 29872569 DOI: 10.1080/2162402X.2018.1433982]

78 **Groth C**, Hu X, Weber R, Fleming V, Altevogt P, Utikal J, Umansky V. Immunosuppression mediated by myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) during tumour progression. *Br J Cancer* 2019; **120**: 16-25 [PMID: 30413826 DOI: 10.1038/s41416-018-0333-1]

79 **Sharabi A**, Tsokos MG, Ding Y, Malek TR, Klatzmann D, Tsokos GC. Regulatory T cells in the treatment of disease. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2018; **17**: 823-844 [PMID: 30310234 DOI: 10.1038/nrd.2018.148]

80 **Adams JL**, Smothers J, Srinivasan R, Hoos A. Big opportunities for small molecules in immuno-oncology. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2015; **14**: 603-622 [PMID: 26228631 DOI: 10.1038/nrd4596]

81 **Vijayan D**, Young A, Teng MWL, Smyth MJ. Targeting immunosuppressive adenosine in cancer. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2017; **17**: 709-724 [PMID: 29059149 DOI: 10.1038/nrc.2017.86]

82 **Li XY**, Moesta AK, Xiao C, Nakamura K, Casey M, Zhang H, Madore J, Lepletier A, Aguilera AR, Sundarrajan A, Jacoberger-Foissac C, Wong C, Dela Cruz T, Welch M, Lerner AG, Spatola BN, Soros VB, Corbin J, Anderson AC, Effern M, Hölzel M, Robson SC, Johnston RL, Waddell N, Smith C, Bald T, Geetha N, Beers C, Teng MWL, Smyth MJ. Targeting CD39 in Cancer Reveals an Extracellular ATP- and Inflammasome-Driven Tumor Immunity. *Cancer Discov* 2019; **9**: 1754-1773 [PMID: 31699796 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-19-0541]

83 **Yang Y**. Cancer immunotherapy: harnessing the immune system to battle cancer. *J Clin Invest* 2015; **125**: 3335-3337 [PMID: 26325031 DOI: 10.1172/JCI83871]

84 **Rosenbaum L**. Tragedy, Perseverance, and Chance - The Story of CAR-T Therapy. *N Engl J Med* 2017; **377**: 1313-1315 [PMID: 28902570 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMp1711886]

85 **Gomes-Silva D**, Ramos CA. Cancer Immunotherapy Using CAR-T Cells: From the Research Bench to the Assembly Line. *Biotechnol J* 2018; **13** [PMID: 28960810 DOI: 10.1002/biot.201700097]

86 **Dafni U**, Michielin O, Lluesma SM, Tsourti Z, Polydoropoulou V, Karlis D, Besser MJ, Haanen J, Svane IM, Ohashi PS, Kammula US, Orcurto A, Zimmermann S, Trueb L, Klebanoff CA, Lotze MT, Kandalaft LE, Coukos G. Efficacy of adoptive therapy with tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes and recombinant interleukin-2 in advanced cutaneous melanoma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ann Oncol* 2019; **30**: 1902-1913 [PMID: 31566658 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdz398]

87 **Tran E**, Robbins PF, Lu YC, Prickett TD, Gartner JJ, Jia L, Pasetto A, Zheng Z, Ray S, Groh EM, Kriley IR, Rosenberg SA. T-Cell Transfer Therapy Targeting Mutant KRAS in Cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2016; **375**: 2255-2262 [PMID: 27959684 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1609279]

88 **Stevanović S**, Draper LM, Langhan MM, Campbell TE, Kwong ML, Wunderlich JR, Dudley ME, Yang JC, Sherry RM, Kammula US, Restifo NP, Rosenberg SA, Hinrichs CS. Complete regression of metastatic cervical cancer after treatment with human papillomavirus-targeted tumor-infiltrating T cells. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: 1543-1550 [PMID: 25823737 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2014.58.9093]

89 **Facciabene A**, De Sanctis F, Pierini S, Reis ES, Balint K, Facciponte J, Rueter J, Kagabu M, Magotti P, Lanitis E, DeAngelis RA, Buckanovich RJ, Song WC, Lambris JD, Coukos G. Local endothelial complement activation reverses endothelial quiescence, enabling t-cell homing, and tumor control during t-cell immunotherapy. *Oncoimmunology* 2017; **6**: e1326442 [PMID: 28932632 DOI: 10.1080/2162402X.2017.1326442]

90 **Verdegaal EM**, de Miranda NF, Visser M, Harryvan T, van Buuren MM, Andersen RS, Hadrup SR, van der Minne CE, Schotte R, Spits H, Haanen JB, Kapiteijn EH, Schumacher TN, van der Burg SH. Neoantigen landscape dynamics during human melanoma-T cell interactions. *Nature* 2016; **536**: 91-95 [PMID: 27350335 DOI: 10.1038/nature18945]

91 **Kato D**, Yaguchi T, Iwata T, Morii K, Nakagawa T, Nishimura R, Kawakami Y. Prospects for personalized combination immunotherapy for solid tumors based on adoptive cell therapies and immune checkpoint blockade therapies. *Nihon Rinsho Meneki Gakkai Kaishi* 2017; **40**: 68-77 [PMID: 28539557 DOI: 10.2177/jsci.40.68]

92 **Ji RR**, Chasalow SD, Wang L, Hamid O, Schmidt H, Cogswell J, Alaparthy S, Berman D, Jure-Kunkel M, Siemers NO, Jackson JR, Shahabi V. An immune-active tumor microenvironment favors clinical response to ipilimumab. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2012; **61**: 1019-1031 [PMID: 22146893 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-011-1172-6]

93 **Andocs G**, Renner H, Balogh L, Fonyad L, Jakab C, Szasz A. Strong synergy of heat and modulated electromagnetic field in tumor cell killing. *Strahlenther Onkol* 2009; **185**: 120-126 [PMID: 19240999 DOI: 10.1007/s00066-009-1903-1]

94 **Andocs G**, Szasz O, Szasz A. Oncothermia treatment of cancer: from the laboratory to clinic. *Electromagn Biol Med* 2009; **28**: 148-165 [PMID: 19811397 DOI: 10.1080/15368370902724633]

95 **Szasz AM**, Minnaar CA, Szentmártoni G, Szigeti GP, Dank M. Review of the Clinical Evidences of Modulated Electro-Hyperthermia (mEHT) Method: An Update for the Practicing Oncologist. *Front Oncol* 2019; **9**: 1012 [PMID: 31737558 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2019.01012]

96 **Kuo IM**, Lee JJ, Wang YS, Chiang HC, Huang CC, Hsieh PJ, Han W, Ke CH, Liao ATC, Lin CS. Potential enhancement of host immunity and anti-tumor efficacy of nanoscale curcumin and resveratrol in colorectal cancers by modulated electro- hyperthermia. *BMC Cancer* 2020; **20**: 603 [PMID: 32600429 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-020-07072-0]

97 **You SH**, Kim S. Feasibility of modulated electro-hyperthermia in preoperative treatment for locally advanced rectal cancer: Early phase 2 clinical results. *Neoplasma* 2020; **67**: 677-683 [PMID: 32039629 DOI: 10.4149/neo_2020_190623N538]

98 **Kim S**, Lee JH, Cha J, You SH. Beneficial effects of modulated electro-hyperthermia during neoadjuvant treatment for locally advanced rectal cancer. *Int J Hyperthermia* 2021; **38**: 144-151 [PMID: 33557636 DOI: 10.1080/02656736.2021.1877837]

99 **Vancsik T**, Kovago C, Kiss E, Papp E, Forika G, Benyo Z, Meggyeshazi N, Krenacs T. Modulated electro-hyperthermia induced loco-regional and systemic tumor destruction in colorectal cancer allografts. *J Cancer* 2018; **9**: 41-53 [PMID: 29290768 DOI: 10.7150/jca.21520]

100 **Tsang YW**, Huang CC, Yang KL, Chi MS, Chiang HC, Wang YS, Andocs G, Szasz A, Li WT, Chi KH. Improving immunological tumor microenvironment using electro-hyperthermia followed by dendritic cell immunotherapy. *BMC Cancer* 2015; **15**: 708 [PMID: 26472466 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-015-1690-2]

101 **Krenacs T**, Meggyeshazi N, Forika G, Kiss E, Hamar P, Szekely T, Vancsik T. Modulated Electro-Hyperthermia-Induced Tumor Damage Mechanisms Revealed in Cancer Models. *Int J Mol Sci* 2020; **21** [PMID: 32872532 DOI: 10.3390/ijms21176270]

102 **Mantovani A**, Marchesi F, Malesci A, Laghi L, Allavena P. Tumour-associated macrophages as treatment targets in oncology. *Nat Rev Clin Oncol* 2017; **14**: 399-416 [PMID: 28117416 DOI: 10.1038/nrclinonc.2016.217]

103 **Lin H**, Lee E, Hestir K, Leo C, Huang M, Bosch E, Halenbeck R, Wu G, Zhou A, Behrens D, Hollenbaugh D, Linnemann T, Qin M, Wong J, Chu K, Doberstein SK, Williams LT. Discovery of a cytokine and its receptor by functional screening of the extracellular proteome. *Science* 2008; **320**: 807-811 [PMID: 18467591 DOI: 10.1126/science.1154370]

104 **Otero K**, Turnbull IR, Poliani PL, Vermi W, Cerutti E, Aoshi T, Tassi I, Takai T, Stanley SL, Miller M, Shaw AS, Colonna M. Macrophage colony-stimulating factor induces the proliferation and survival of macrophages *via* a pathway involving DAP12 and beta-catenin. *Nat Immunol* 2009; **10**: 734-743 [PMID: 19503107 DOI: 10.1038/ni.1744]

105 **Ngambenjawong C**, Gustafson HH, Pun SH. Progress in tumor-associated macrophage (TAM)-targeted therapeutics. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2017; **114**: 206-221 [PMID: 28449873 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2017.04.010]

106 **Joanito I**, Wirapati P, Zhao N, Nawaz Z, Yeo G, Lee F, Eng CLP, Macalinao DC, Kahraman M, Srinivasan H, Lakshmanan V, Verbandt S, Tsantoulis P, Gunn N, Venkatesh PN, Poh ZW, Nahar R, Oh HLJ, Loo JM, Chia S, Cheow LF, Cheruba E, Wong MT, Kua L, Chua C, Nguyen A, Golovan J, Gan A, Lim WJ, Guo YA, Yap CK, Tay B, Hong Y, Chong DQ, Chok AY, Park WY, Han S, Chang MH, Seow-En I, Fu C, Mathew R, Toh EL, Hong LZ, Skanderup AJ, DasGupta R, Ong CJ, Lim KH, Tan EKW, Koo SL, Leow WQ, Tejpar S, Prabhakar S, Tan IB. Single-cell and bulk transcriptome sequencing identifies two epithelial tumor cell states and refines the consensus molecular classification of colorectal cancer. *Nat Genet* 2022; **54**: 963-975 [PMID: 35773407 DOI: 10.1038/s41588-022-01100-4]

107 **Bindea G**, Mlecnik B, Tosolini M, Kirilovsky A, Waldner M, Obenauf AC, Angell H, Fredriksen T, Lafontaine L, Berger A, Bruneval P, Fridman WH, Becker C, Pagès F, Speicher MR, Trajanoski Z, Galon J. Spatiotemporal dynamics of intratumoral immune cells reveal the immune landscape in human cancer. *Immunity* 2013; **39**: 782-795 [PMID: 24138885 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2013.10.003]

108 **Blank CU**, Haanen JB, Ribas A, Schumacher TN. CANCER IMMUNOLOGY. The "cancer immunogram". *Science* 2016; **352**: 658-660 [PMID: 27151852 DOI: 10.1126/science.aaf2834]

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2023 February 15; 15(2): 251-267

DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.251

ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

REVIEW

Is the combination of immunotherapy with conventional chemotherapy the key to increase the efficacy of colorectal cancer treatment?

Jonadab E Olguin, Monica G Mendoza-Rodriguez, C Angel Sanchez-Barrera, Luis I Terrazas

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Tantau AI, Romania; Wismayer R, Uganda

Received: September 24, 2022
Peer-review started: September 24, 2022
First decision: October 20, 2022
Revised: November 3, 2022
Accepted: January 10, 2023
Article in press: January 10, 2023
Published online: February 15, 2023

Jonadab E Olguin, Luis I Terrazas, Laboratorio Nacional en Salud, Diagnóstico Molecular y Efecto Ambiental en Enfermedades Crónico-degenerativas, Facultad de Estudios Superiores Iztacala, Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México, Tlalnepantla 54090, Estado de Mexico, Mexico

Monica G Mendoza-Rodriguez, C Angel Sanchez-Barrera, Luis I Terrazas, Unidad de Biomedicina, Facultad de Estudios Superiores Iztacala, Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México, Tlalnepantla 54090, Estado de Mexico, Mexico

Corresponding author: Luis I Terrazas, PhD, Chairman, Senior Scientist, Unidad de Biomedicina, Facultad de Estudios Superiores Iztacala, Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México, Avenida de los Barrios # 1, Tlalnepantla 54090, Estado de México, Mexico.
literrazas@unam.mx

Abstract

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is among the most prevalent and deadly neoplasms worldwide. According to GLOBOCAN predictions, its incidence will increase from 1.15 million CRC cases in 2020 to 1.92 million cases in 2040. Therefore, a better understanding of the mechanisms involved in CRC development is necessary to improve strategies focused on reducing the incidence, prevalence, and mortality of this oncological pathology. Surgery, chemotherapy, and radiotherapy are the main strategies for treating CRC. The conventional chemotherapeutic agent utilized throughout the last four decades is 5-fluorouracil, notwithstanding its low efficiency as a single therapy. In contrast, combining 5-fluorouracil therapy with leucovorin and oxaliplatin or irinotecan increases its efficiency. However, these treatments have limited and temporary solutions and aggressive side effects. Additionally, most patients treated with these regimens develop drug resistance, which leads to disease progression. The immune response is considered a hallmark of cancer; thus, the use of new strategies and methodologies involving immune molecules, cells, and transcription factors has been suggested for CRC patients diagnosed in stages III and IV. Despite the critical advances in immunotherapy, the development and impact of immune checkpoint inhibitors on CRC is still under investigation because less than 25% of CRC patients display an increased 5-year survival. The causes of CRC are diverse and include modifiable environmental factors (smoking, diet, obesity, and alcoholism), individual genetic mutations, and inflammation-associated bowel

diseases. Due to these diverse causes, the solutions likely cannot be generalized. Interestingly, new strategies, such as single-cell multiomics, proteomics, genomics, flow cytometry, and massive sequencing for tumor microenvironment analysis, are beginning to clarify the way forward. Thus, the individual mechanisms involved in developing the CRC microenvironment, their causes, and their consequences need to be understood from a genetic and immunological perspective. This review highlighted the importance of altering the immune response in CRC. It focused on drugs that may modulate the immune response and show specific efficacy and contrasted with evidence that immunosuppression or the promotion of the immune response is the answer to generating effective treatments with combined chemotherapeutic drugs.

Key Words: Colorectal cancer; Immunotherapy checkpoint inhibitors; Chemotherapy; Immunotherapy; Immune response

©The Author(s) 2023. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: This review focused on the drugs that may modulate the immune response and show specific efficacy in the treatment of colorectal cancer. We then presented the evidence that immunosuppression or promotion of the immune response is the answer to generating effective treatments with combined chemotherapeutic drugs.

Citation: Olguin JE, Mendoza-Rodriguez MG, Sanchez-Barrera CA, Terrazas LI. Is the combination of immunotherapy with conventional chemotherapy the key to increase the efficacy of colorectal cancer treatment? *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2023; 15(2): 251-267
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v15/i2/251.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.251

INTRODUCTION

The origin of colorectal cancer (CRC) is heterogeneous. The general classification of CRC is divided into inherited, sporadic, and intestinal bowel diseases. Inherited CRC, which represents approximately 5% of all CRC cases, includes either the presence or absence of colonic polyps, such as Lynch syndrome and serrated polyposis syndrome[1]. Sporadic CRC (approximately 70% of CRC cases) is sustained by environmental and modifiable risk factors, including stress, diet, and age. Sporadic CRC has a monoclonal origin and is characterized by mutation accumulation in oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes. The second pathway of CRC includes the traditional APC-KRAS pathway and the microsatellite instability group, both having an essential role in clinical studies[2]. The third pathway includes intestinal chronic inflammatory diseases, such as Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis, which could result in colitis-associated colon cancer[3].

From a biological perspective, this evidence demonstrates that the origin of CRC is diverse. The response to therapies is not always homogeneous in patients. The best treatment should be based on the tumor's unique characteristics. Effective treatments need to be broad and involve chemical and immunological molecules. The context of the broad causes of CRC development is highly involved in the low effectiveness of either single chemotherapeutics or classical immunotherapy by checkpoints inhibitor (ICI) administration during this oncological pathology. An in-depth and more precise description of the CRC origin and development, including a role for both immune response and inflammation, can be found in[4,5].

CONVENTIONAL TREATMENTS FOR COLON CANCER AND MECHANISMS OF ACTION FROM A GENETIC PERSPECTIVE

CRC is one of the deadliest diseases in the world. Despite advances in diagnosis, treatment strategies remain an essential bottleneck affecting survival, in which the pathological stage represents the most important prognostic factor for patients with CRC. The accurate classification of lesions is the primary tool to decide the most appropriate treatment and therapy[6]. The treatment for early-stage CRC (stage I and stage II) currently consists of resecting the tumor area with regional lymph nodes, which has a 5-year disease-free survival rate of 95%[7]. In the advanced stage of the disease (stages III and above), the rate of disease-free survival drops from 90% to 50% for surgery alone, requiring the administration of

chemotherapeutics, and only 17%-20% of these patients ultimately survive[8,9].

5-Fluorouracil (5-FU) has been central in treating advanced CRC since 1957. Unfortunately, the response rate to 5-FU as the first-line chemotherapy in advanced CRC is still only 10%-15%. In contrast, 5-FU combined with other anticancer drugs as adjuvants, such as leucovorin and oxaliplatin (FOLFOX) or leucovorin calcium and irinotecan, increases the effectiveness of 5-FU by 50%[10,11].

5-FU is the third most commonly used chemotherapeutic agent for the treatment of solid malignancies worldwide[12]. Heidelberger synthesized it in the early 1950s as a derivate of fluoropyrimidines. This drug was one of the first chemotherapeutics reported to have anticancer activity. It was tested in diverse tumors in rats and mice, where it significantly reduced tumor burden. Additionally, tumoral tissues incorporated this compound more rapidly than normal tissues, which pointed to its potential use as a chemotherapeutic drug[13,14]. In 1962, the Food and Drug Administration approved the use of 5-FU for treating CRC.

In intravenous administration, 5-FU is incorporated rapidly into the cells through facilitated transport as uracil[15]. Subsequently, its metabolism can be driven in two ways, *i.e.*, *via* anabolic and catabolic routes, which compete with each other. In sensitive cancerous cells, the anabolic pathway leads to the conversion of this drug into several active metabolites, such as fluorodeoxyuridine monophosphate, fluorodeoxyuridine triphosphate, and fluorouridine triphosphate[16]. The active metabolites interfere with nucleoside metabolism and can be incorporated into RNA and DNA, leading to cytotoxicity and cell death[17,18]. This mechanism is due to its similar structure to pyrimidine, molecules of DNA and RNA, an analog of uracil with a fluorine atom at the C-5 position in place of hydrogen[19]. Fluorodeoxyuridine monophosphate disrupts the function of thymidylate synthase, a key enzyme responsible for providing deoxynucleotide triphosphates, which are necessary for DNA replication and repair, catalyzing the reaction of deoxyuridine monophosphate to deoxythymidine monophosphate synthesis [14,15]. An insufficiency in deoxythymidine monophosphate leads to the depletion of deoxythymidine triphosphate, which perturbs the levels of the other deoxynucleotide triphosphates[16-20] (Figure 1).

5-FU has primarily been used in the treatment of solid cancers of digestive origin, such as colorectal, anal, pancreatic, esophageal, gastric, and ampullary tumors, and less frequently in breast, cervical, and head and neck cancers[21-23]. CRC treatment includes various chemotherapeutic drugs. As the backbone of treatments, 5-FU has been used for more than five decades, and more recently, it has been combined with other chemotherapeutic drugs to potentiate its anticarcinogenic effect[22,24].

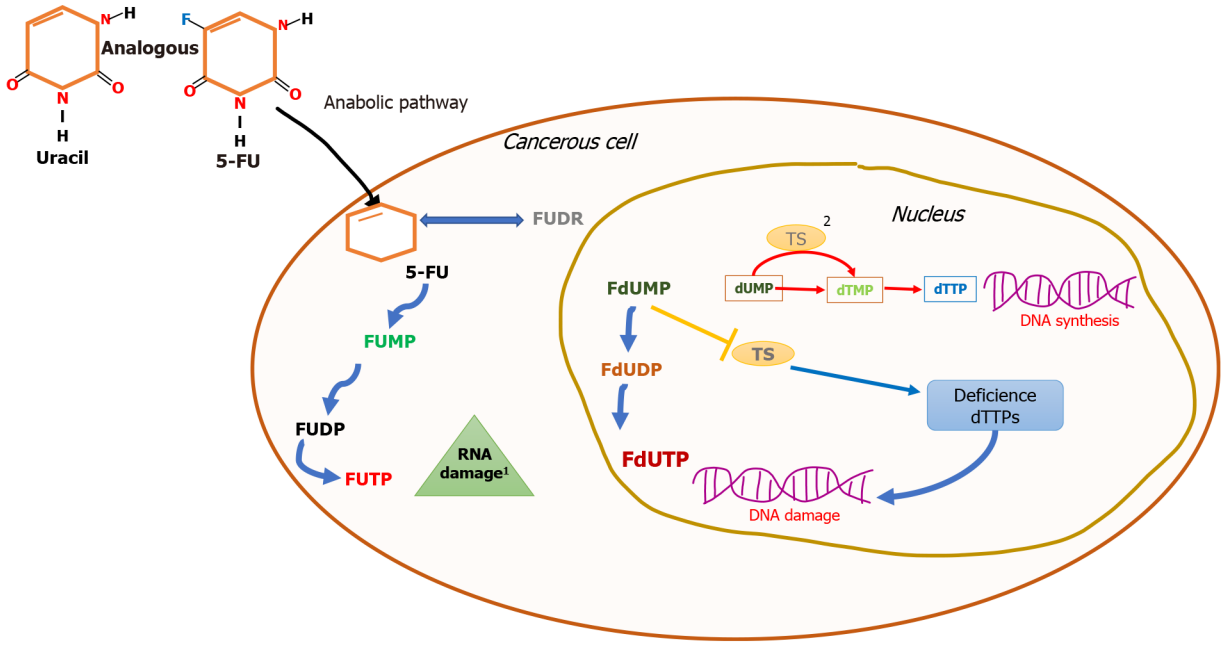
The use of alternative broad-spectrum chemotherapeutics in addition to 5-FU has been proposed for colon cancer treatment. Doxorubicin treatment combined with other drugs, such as metformin and sodium oxamate, reduces the proliferation rate of colon cancer cell lines *in vitro*[25]. However, the use of doxorubicin in patients is limited by the side effects frequently associated with this drug, such as hepatotoxicity, nephrotoxicity, pulmotoxicity, and cardiotoxicity[26,27]. Additionally, doxorubicin can lead to chemoresistance in tumor cells through nuclear factor kappa B translocation to the nucleus and DNA binding because of the damage induced by this drug, triggering the expression of antiapoptotic genes[28].

In CRC, nuclear factor kappa B nuclear translocation is a characteristic in more than 70% of patients, limiting the use of doxorubicin[29]. Another disadvantage of this drug is its anthracycline nature since it is extracted from *Streptomyces spp*. Cancer cells frequently show rapid resistance to naturally occurring cancer drugs, diminishing their effectiveness, whereas they are more sensitive to antimetabolites, such as 5-FU and cisplatin, among others[30]. The use of other chemotherapeutics, such as tamoxifen, which is highly effective and frequently used in breast cancer treatment, has an adverse effect in the treatment of CRC[31]. Due to the molecular characteristics of each type of cancer, the successful use of tamoxifen in breast cancer lies in its mechanism of action. Approximately 80% of all breast cancers are positive for the estrogen receptor, and tamoxifen inhibits the expression of estrogen-regulated genes by the competitive inhibition of this receptor. Different reports indicate that tamoxifen has the opposite effect on CRC, increasing the risk of developing this type of cancer[31,32].

MOLECULAR PERSPECTIVE FOR THE USE OF CHEMOTHERAPEUTIC STRATEGIES IN CRC TREATMENT: WHICH IS THE RIGHT DRUG?

CRC is a molecularly heterogeneous disease in which genetics and cellular events accumulate to endow tumor cells with aggressive characteristics, including chemotherapy resistance. Chromosomal instability, mismatch repair, and methylator phenotype are the three major pathways involved in acquiring tumorigenesis and a malignant phenotype and could be present in sporadic and inherited CRC[33,34]. The choice of better therapy is based on cancer-related features and patient-related factors, such as the number and localization of metastases, tumor progression, presence or absence of biochemical markers, and comorbidity[35-37]. Despite all these characteristics, treatment based on the antineoplastic effects of 5-FU is the cornerstone of therapy in advanced CRC stages.

Treatment with 5-FU in combination with other drugs, such as oxaliplatin (OXA), irinotecan, capecitabine, bevacizumab, cetuximab, panitumumab, ziv-aflibercept, regorafenib, and ramucirumab, increases its effectiveness and has been approved by the Food and Drug Administration for the



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.251 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 1 5-Fluorouracil mechanism of action. The 5-fluorouracil structure is analogous to that of the nucleotide uracil; its ability to disrupt standard RNA processing and function is mediated by three primary metabolites: fluorodeoxyuridine monophosphate, fluorodeoxyuridine diphosphate, and fluorouridine triphosphate. [1]: 5-fluorouracil inhibits thymidylate synthase activity by fluorodeoxyuridine monophosphate metabolite binding, blocking the typical substrate deoxyuridine monophosphate that inhibits deoxythymidine monophosphate synthesis leading to deoxythymidine triphosphate imbalance. The consequent result is DNA damage due to a deficiency in its synthesis and its repair; [2]: DNA replication and repair are regulated by deoxyuridine monophosphate transition to deoxythymidine monophosphate. This step is coordinated by thymidylate synthase; FUMP: Fluorodeoxyuridine monophosphate; FUDP: Fluorodeoxyuridine diphosphate; FUTP: Fluorouridine triphosphate; dUMP: Deoxyuridine monophosphate; dTMP: Deoxythymidine monophosphate; FUDR: Fluorodeoxyuridine; FdUMP: Fluorodeoxyuridine monophosphate; dTTP: Deoxythymidine triphosphate; FdUDP: Fluorodeoxyuridine diphosphate; FdUTP: Fluorodeoxyuridine triphosphate; 5-FU: 5-Fluorouracil; TS: Thymidylate synthase.

management of CRC[38]. Thus, during stages III or IV in resected CRC patients, the use of combination treatment, such as FOLFOX or 5-FU, leucovorin calcium, and irinotecan, is common as a first-line treatment. This strategy significantly increases the survival rate of these patients[39]. The initial chemotherapy scheme and the decision on better combinatory drugs depends on multiple conditions in the patients. In metastatic CRC limited to the liver or lung, surgery and the rapid initiation of chemotherapy appears to be the best option. When CRC cure is not possible, three additional scenarios can arise: (1) Patients with advanced tumors and symptoms require rapid tumor shrinkage to provide palliation, which begins with chemotherapy; (2) Asymptomatic patients with bulky tumor and possible rapid progression are likely to become symptomatic in a short period; and (3) Patients without symptoms but disseminated disease who never had resectable disease but whose tumors remain non-bulky are likely to remain asymptomatic for an extended period. In the last two scenarios, the initiation of chemotherapy can be discussed[22,40]. Previous work in the Nordic population demonstrated that early treatment with 5-FU plus leucovorin in asymptomatic patients with advanced CRC prolonged survival and delayed both disease progression and the onset of symptoms[41]. In another study in Australasian and Canadian populations of asymptomatic patients using the same chemotherapy regimen, no difference was reported between early or delayed chemotherapy use until symptoms appeared[42]. Thus, clinical treatment requires a medical discussion and the patient´s preference when cure is not possible. The spectrum of molecular alterations that offer alternative management for this disease could be explored.

Alterations in genes related to survival, angiogenesis, proliferation, and apoptosis incorporate additional strategies into CRC treatment. The *RAS*, *KRAS*, and *NRAS* genes play an essential role as prognostic and predictive indicators in CRC treatment[43-45]. Mutations in the DNA at position 12 in the KRAS protein are significantly associated with a poor prognosis: a 5-year survival rate of approximately 3%[46]. Patients with this mutation are not candidates to receive treatment with monoclonal antibodies, such as cetuximab or panitumumab, which target the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR)[47-50]. Blocking EGFR represents the second line of treatment in patients with wild-type RAS together with the backbone 5-FU, leucovorin calcium, and irinotecan therapy. Therefore, the patient's genetic and tumor-specific factors need to be considered when choosing chemotherapeutic and combination schemes to avoid resistance and undesired responses to these therapies.

Drug resistance and consequent therapy failure are the main problems clinicians face in treating different neoplasms, which limit the quality of life and long-term remission rates as a consequence of tumor growth and spreading leading to 90% of patients dying[51,52]. Drug resistance is a highly complex process that is commonly classified into two types: intrinsic and acquired. Both types of drug resistance lead to the regulation of molecular mechanisms of chemoresistance, such as the activation of transporter pumps, oncogenes, tumor suppressor genes, mitochondrial alteration, DNA repair, autophagy, epithelial-mesenchymal transition, cancer stemness, and exosomes[53,54].

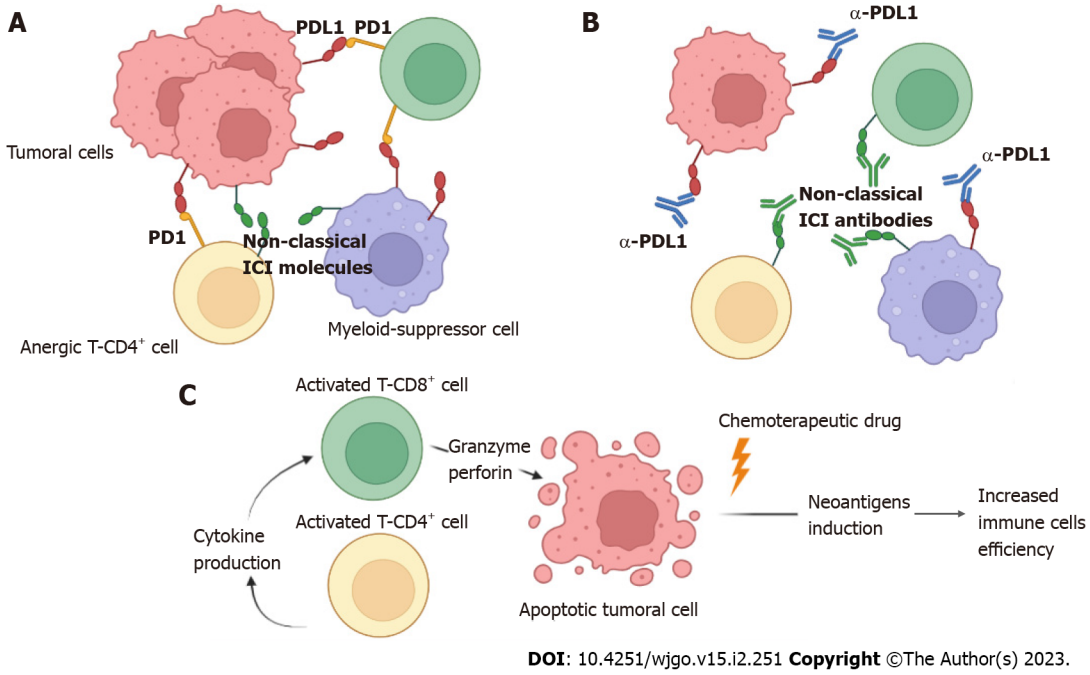
In the intrinsic phenotype, diverse alterations existing before drug administration in the patient complicate the selection of chemotherapy. The inherent genetic mutations in tumors, such as a *KRAS* mutation in exon 2 in codon 12 or 13, are the most frequent mutations associated with poor prognosis and drug resistance in CRC[55,56]. Therapies based on the first line of treatment using FOLFOX or 5-FU, leucovorin calcium, and irinotecan plus cetuximab or panitumumab (anti-EGFR) are ineffective in patients with *KRAS* mutations[57]. Recent studies indicate that mutations in genes related to the pathways that regulate tumor cell survival and proliferation and inhibit apoptosis in tumor cells, such as *AKT1* and *CTNNB1*, contribute to 5-FU chemotherapeutic resistance in CRC. The *CTNNB1* gene encodes the β-catenin protein, which plays a crucial role in cancer by activating the Wnt/β-catenin signaling pathway. This pathway is associated with tumorigenesis and CRC resistance, and it upregulates genes and proteins, such as multidrug resistance gene (*MDR1*) and inhibitor of apoptosis (*Bcl2*), to induce epithelial-mesenchymal transition and regulate the tumor microenvironment (TME)[58-60].

IS CHEMOTHERAPY AN INDUCER OF IMMUNOSUPPRESSION IN CRC?

The heterogeneity of tumors, including CRC, consists of heterogeneity in cancer and infiltrated resident host cells, extracellular matrix, and immune and inflammatory cells, such as macrophages, dendritic cells, myeloid-derived suppressor cells, T cells, mast cells, and natural killer cells. These components comprise the TME, which has a dynamic composition[61]. It is well known that one of the main functions of the TME is to provide a protective function for tumor cells, inducing crosstalk between immune and nonimmune cells that leads to tumor-mediated immunosuppression, supporting tumor growth and survival[62]. Recent reports indicate that the TME in CRC contributes to cancer progression and drug resistance through high interstitial pressure, fibrosis, and the degradation of the therapeutic agent by enzymatic activity and inducing immunosuppression[61,63,64]. These findings indicate that the regulation of immune cells surrounding the tumor has a critical role in the response to therapies for CRC. Thus, chemotherapy and immunotherapies targeting the recovery activity of immune cells are likely necessary to fight CRC.

The study of the effect of chemotherapeutic drugs on immune cells is controversial. The central concept here is that chemotherapy reduces the capacity of the immune system to function, but how could a drug affect the capacity and efficiency of the immune response to induce an efficient post-treatment response? Perhaps the "original" concept has a flawed approach. Evidence suggests that after 5-FU treatment in a mouse model, bone marrow cellularity decreases, but platelets and thrombopoietin, which are close to the immune response, rebound[64,65]. Similarly, the serum of patients diagnosed with stage III/IV CRC who had received FOLFOX chemotherapy showed increased levels of heat shock protein 70, which belongs to the damage-associated molecular patterns recognized by innate receptors [66]. Later, *in vitro* studies showed that the supernatants of dying CRC cells treated with OXA and 5-FU induced a mature phenotype in dendritic cells coexpressing HLA-DR, CD80, and CD86 and producing interleukin-1β, tumor necrosis factor-α, and MIP-1α in a TLR-4-dependent manner[66]. These results strongly suggested that OXA/5-FU treatment induced the activation of the innate immune response during CRC. Additionally, increased numbers of myeloid-derived suppressor cells have been reported in a mouse model of thymoma, and treatment with 5-FU combined with gemcitabine selectively induced apoptosis in myeloid-derived suppressor cells. Consequently, increased antigen-specific CD8+ T cells produced more interferon-γ, generating a T cell antitumor response (Figure 2)[66].

Conversely, high levels of the chemokine CCL20 recruit regulatory T (Treg) cells in CRC patients resistant to FOLFOX[67]. However, in blood samples from metastatic FOLFOX-sensitive CRC patients, a reduced percentage of Foxp3+ Treg cells was recorded after treatment[68]. Therefore, the increase in Treg cells is associated with 5-FU chemoresistance. Thus, evidence of 5-FU chemotherapy suggests a role in the specific and direct reduction of suppressive immune cells during CRC. Additionally, the increased apoptosis-induced death of tumor cells by 5-FU could increase the ability of immune cells to recognize damage-associated molecular patterns released by these dying tumor cells, inducing protective inflammation. Evidence needs to be accumulated in this field to clarify whether chemotherapy may be an inducer of immune cell activation (Figure 3).



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.251 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 2 Mechanism of action using either anti-programmed cell death ligand 1 or anti-nonclassical immune checkpoint inhibitor antibodies to increase the effector immune response in colorectal cancer. A: The programmed cell death ligand 1 molecule expressed on both tumor and myeloid suppressor cells interacts with programmed cell death 1 molecules expressed on exhausted CD8$^+$ and CD4$^+$ T cells, inducing a state of anergy. Additionally, other nonclassical immune checkpoint inhibitor molecules can induce anergy in T cells; B: Anti-programmed cell death ligand 1 antibodies block the interaction of the programmed cell death 1/programmed cell death ligand 1 axis, favoring the return from the state of anergy to exert the effector function of CD4$^+$ and CD8$^+$ T cells, favoring the reduction of the tumor burden. Most likely, nonclassical immune checkpoint inhibitor antibodies may have a similar effect; C: Once CD4$^+$ T cells are activated, they produce cytokines for the efficient activation of CD8$^+$ T cells, which in turn produce granzyme and perforin, inducing apoptosis in tumor cells. The addition of chemotherapeutic drugs increases the induction of neoantigens, favoring immune response activation. PDL1: Programmed cell death ligand 1; PD1: Programmed cell death 1; ICI: Immune checkpoint inhibitor.

CLASSICAL ICIS USED AS MONOTHERAPY DURING CRC

The effectiveness of ICI as an immunotherapy treatment has been evaluated in the last decade. The efficacy of these agents is evident in liquid tumors, such as melanoma, leukemia, and solid non-small cell lung carcinoma. Classical ICIs used to treat these oncological pathologies are anti-programmed cell death 1 (PD1), anti-programmed cell death ligand 1 (PDL1), and anti-cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated protein 4 (CTLA4) monoclonal antibodies, where anti-CTLA4 has a lower clinical efficacy[68,69] (Table 1).

Diverse reports suggest single or combined therapy using different antibodies targeted against the same or another molecule. In melanoma therapy, nivolumab, a human immunoglobulin G4 anti-PD1 pathway monoclonal antibody, results in an overall survival (OS) rate of 72.9%, whereas the antineoplastic chemotherapeutic dacarbazine resulted in a survival rate of 42.1%[69]. In metastatic melanoma refractory to chemotherapy, treatment with ipilimumab, an anti-CTLA4 antibody, shows high efficacy when combined with anti-PD1 antibodies (either pembrolizumab or nivolumab)[70]. Additionally, nivolumab and ipilimumab combination treatment prolongs progression-free survival, mainly in patients with tumors testing positive for PDL1 expression[71]. Although *in vitro* studies suggested that atezolizumab, avelumab, and durvalumab, all anti-PDL1 antibodies, more effectively block PD1/PDL1 signaling (Figure 2)[72], evidence of the use of an anti-PDL1 antibody as a single approved treatment without immunotherapy or chemotherapy combination is insufficient to conclude their role in inducing protection in metastatic melanoma[73]. Immunotherapy with the anti-PDL1 antibody atezolizumab has been approved to treat non-small cell lung carcinoma combined with chemotherapy, and anti-PDL1 has been approved to treat triple-negative breast cancer[74,75]. Therefore, increased PDL1 expression in the TME of melanoma patients is an efficient marker to predict response to anti-PD1 treatments, which must be applied in all types of cancer when this immunotherapy is suggested[76].

Notwithstanding the successful use of immunotherapy in the neoplasms mentioned above, few reports show an influential role for classical monoclonal ICI using anti-CTLA4 and anti-PD1/PDL1 axis antibodies in CRC. Most clinical assays were disappointing. For example, tremelimumab, a human immunoglobulin G2 anti-CTLA4 antibody, did not produce clinically meaningful results when it was used as a monotherapy in patients with refractory metastatic CRC[77] (Table 1).

Table 1 Types of immune checkpoint inhibitor antibodies used as monotherapy, combined immune checkpoint inhibitor, and immune checkpoint inhibitor + chemotherapy in colorectal cancer

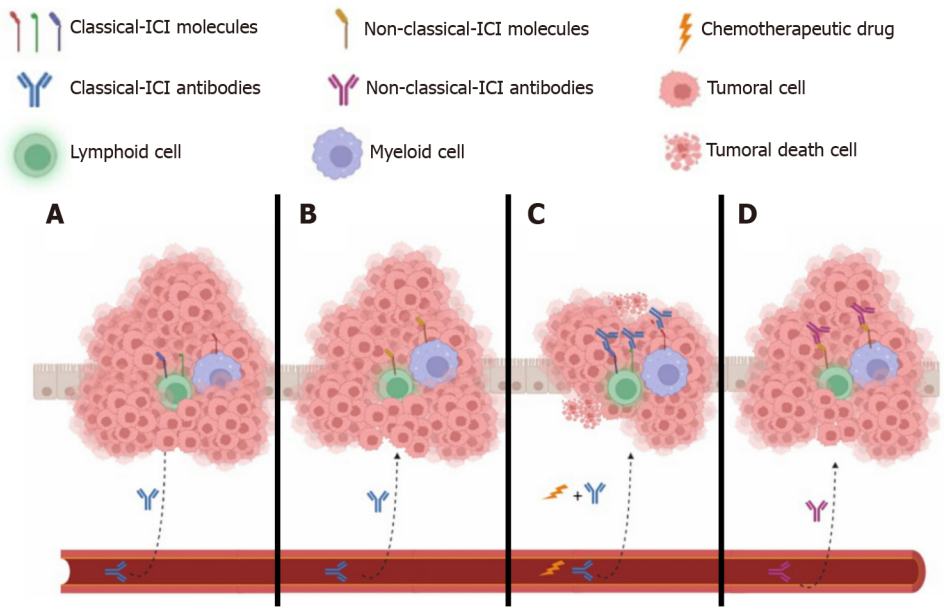
Antibody name	Isotype	Target molecule	Effectiveness[1] as monotherapy	Effectiveness as combined ICI	Effectiveness as ICI + chemotherapy	Ref.
Ipilimumab	IgG1	CTLA4	Yes	Well tolerated in combination with nivolumab	No	Suzuki *et al*[80], 2021; Lenz *et al*[86], 2022; Cohen *et al*[90], 2020
Tremelimumab	IgG2	CTLA4	No	Yes, durvalumab improved OS and increased lymphoid response	Combined with durvalumab + fluoropyrimidines, oxaliplatin, irinotecan, showed increased OS	Chung *et al*[77], 2010; Kanikarla Marie *et al*[85], 2021; Chen *et al*[102], 2020
Nivolumab	IgG4	PD1	Well tolerated	Well tolerated in combination with low ipilimumab dose, with increased OS	Yes	Overman *et al*[78], 2017; Kawazoe *et al*[79], 2021; Lenz *et al*[86], 2022; Morse *et al*[87], 2019
Pembrolizumab	IgG4	PD1	Well tolerated, increased OS	No	There is no evidence	Haag *et al*[82], 2022
Atezolizumab	IgG1	PDL1	There is no evidence	There is no evidence	Safe when combined with cobimetinib, having no effect on OS. Combined with FOLFOX and bevacizumab showed increased progression-free survival, but adverse events were shown	Eng *et al*[91], 2019; Antoniotti *et al*[94], 2022
Avelumab	IgG1	PDL1	Increased OS but adverse events were shown	There is no evidence	Combined with cetuximab showed increased T cell killing	Haag *et al*[82], 2022; Stein *et al*[97], 2021
Durvalumab	IgG1	PDL1	Increased progression-free survival, but adverse events were shown	There is no evidence	Safe when combined with MEKi, having no effect on OS	Oh *et al*[84], 2022

[1]Effectiveness was considered as increased survival, well tolerated treatment in patients, or simply a lack of side effects associated with the treatment.
IgG: Immunoglobulin G; OS: Overall survival; PDL1: Programmed cell death ligand 1; PD1: Programmed cell death 1; CTLA4: Cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated protein 4; ICI: Immune checkpoint inhibitor; FOLFOX: 5-FU therapy with leucovorin and oxaliplatin; MEKi: Inhibitor of MAPK/ERK kinase.

Another monotherapy treatment using nivolumab in CRC patients with microsatellite instability and FOLFOX chemoresistance showed excellent control of the disease, and patients tolerated this treatment well[78]. CRC patients treated with nivolumab combined with an oral heat shock protein 90 inhibitor showed safety profiles and antitumor activity associated with reduced activity of Treg cells and better response of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes[79]. Interestingly, a report of a woman treated with nivolumab for melanoma with no hereditary CRC background developed colon carcinoma after 7 years of anti-melanoma treatment. The medical service then decided to switch the treatment to ipilimumab, and after four cycles of monotherapy, the colon tumor was in complete remission[80]. Pembrolizumab used as monotherapy in either microsatellite instability-high or mismatch repair-deficient CRC patients produced improvements in health-related quality of life compared to patients treated with leucovorin, 5-FU, and OXA[81]. In one study of refractory mismatch repair, CRC patients treated with pembrolizumab as monotherapy plus maraviroc, an agonist of CCR5 that promotes the activation and recruitment of macrophages inducing immune cell infiltrate in tumors, showed a beneficial toxicity pattern. The OS was higher than expected[82].

ICI with avelumab monotherapy in unresectable metastatic CRC patients who failed FOLFOX chemotherapy showed an OS of 72.2% at 8.1 mo, which was similar to the effect of ICI monotherapy using either pembrolizumab or nivolumab. However, some patients showed treatment-related adverse events[83]. Durvalumab used as monotherapy in microsatellite-instability high/mismatch repair-deficient metastatic CRC patients whose disease had progressed after chemotherapy showed efficiency and a satisfactory progression-free survival of 58.2%; however, side effects were found in 36.4% of patients[84].

Taken together, these results suggest that contrary to anti-CTLA4, ICI monotherapy blocking the PD1/PDL1 axis has a better effect in high microsatellite instability/mismatch repair-deficient metastatic CRC patients who previously displayed chemoresistance. Additionally, combining ICI PD1/PDL1 monotherapy with either antibodies or immune cell stimulators improves treatment efficacy. However, only a small number of clinical trials show increased OS (Table 1). Most likely, the TME reduces the access of ICI antibodies to the target molecules expressed in either immune or epithelial cells (Figure 3).



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.251 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 3 The tumor microenvironment favors or does not allow the access of both classical and nonclassical immune checkpoint inhibitors to their targets in immune cells. A: The classical immune checkpoint inhibitor (ICI) antibody cannot access its target because immune cells are surrounded by tumor cells, although immune cells may express classical ICIs; B: On the other hand, classical ICIs probably have access to immune cells but may not express the targeting molecules; C: Chemotherapy can induce the death of tumoral cells, favoring the formation of neoantigens that may reactivate immune cells. Additional classical ICI antibodies target individual molecules such as cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated protein 4, programmed cell death 1, and programmed cell death ligand 1; D: Finally, immune cells expressing nonclassical ICIs could have effector profiles such as helper T type 1 cells, cytotoxic T cells, M1, or N1 when nonclassical antibodies target them. Additionally, tumor epithelial cells may likely express both classical and nonclassical ICIs. ICI: Immune checkpoint inhibitor.

DOES COMBINED IMMUNOTHERAPY INCREASE THE EFFECTIVENESS OF TREATMENT FOR CRC?

Little evidence of the apparent effect of ICI monotherapy on CRC development is available. Conversely, increasing evidence suggests a better outcome using combined ICI, *i.e.*, the use of two monoclonal antibodies targeting CTLA4 or the PD1/PDL1 axis. To improve the immune response, combination treatment with tremelimumab and durmalumab was used in patients for the preoperative management of resectable CRC and liver metastases. These patients improved their OS to 24.5 mo; interestingly, their $CD4^+$, $CD8^+$, and B cells displayed an activated profile[85]. Additionally, first-line treatment consisting of nivolumab plus low-dose ipilimumab treatment in patients with microsatellite instability and metastatic CRC without previous chemotherapy showed that this combination was well tolerated at the primary endpoint, with robust and durable clinical benefit. However, the study is ongoing, and OS data are not yet available[86]. Previous ICI studies using similar inclusion criteria and antibody doses showed that follow-up over 12 mo of combined treatment resulted in an 85% OS[87]. Recently, the combined use of ipilimumab plus nivolumab before surgery in either mismatch repair-deficient or mismatch repair-proficient CRC patients induced an antitumoral response associated with a lack of signs of cancer after surgery with increased infiltration of $CD8^+PD1^+$ cells; the authors suggested that this combined ICI therapy may be the standard treatment for mismatch repair-deficient CRC patients [21].

Additionally, circulating tumor DNA detection in the blood of patients with durable and ongoing responses to ipilimumab plus nivolumab could be used as a monitoring response and dynamic marker of this combined ICI treatment[88,89]. Finally, a study attempted to analyze whether pseudo progression was observed in mismatch repair-deficient CRC patients treated with nivolumab plus ipilimumab, showing that this treatment rarely induces and confirming a high disease control rate of 86%[90]. Taken together, this evidence strongly suggests that the combined ICI blockade of CTLA4-PD1/PDL1 in mismatch repair-deficient CRC patients is highly successful. However, these patients represent only a tiny fraction of all CRC-diagnosed patients. Therefore, more clinical trials must be developed to obtain sufficient evidence to conclude the positive effects of the classic ICI combination.

USE OF EITHER MONOTHERAPY OR COMBINED IMMUNOTHERAPY PLUS CHEMOTHERAPY TO INCREASE THE EFFECTIVENESS OF TREATMENTS FOR CRC

The combined use of atezolizumab plus aobimetinib, a MAPK/ERK kinase 1 and 2 inhibitor that increases $CD8^+$ cell infiltration in tumors of patients with microsatellite-stable metastatic CRC, showed no improvement in OS and was consistent with the safety of using both drugs[91] (Table 1). A similar effect showing only acceptable tolerance to this treatment was observed with durmalumab plus inhibitor of MAPK/ERK kinase in microsatellite-stable metastatic CRC patients[89]. No improved OS was observed using atezolizumab combined with cobimetinib in metastatic CRC patients[92]. A multicenter phase I/II study in June 2017 aimed to analyze the role of durmalumab plus tremelimumab combined with FOLFOX chemotherapy in patients with metastatic CRC, expecting a 6-mo progression-free survival of over 70.7%; however, the authors do not have the final results to date[93].

Recently, the combination of atezolizumab with FOLFOX chemotherapy plus bevacizumab (monoclonal anti-vascular endothelial growth factor antibody) in mismatch repair metastatic CRC patients induced a median progression-free survival of 13 mo, while FOLFOX plus bevacizumab alone resulted in 11 mo of progression-free survival, suggesting that the addition of atezolizumab improves progression-free survival. However, 42% of patients showed neutropenia, and 27% displayed severe adverse events[94]. The same treatment consisting of atezolizumab combined with FOLFOX plus bevacizumab was used in patients with untreated unresectable metastatic CRC, showing no improvement in OS and safety signals[95]. The use of the anti-EGFR antibody cetuximab plus avelumab for treating wild-type *RAS* metastatic CRC patients was safe; the authors suggested that an analysis of circulating DNA in plasma could be an indicator of the positive effects of this treatment. However, the data are insufficient to show the impact on the OS rate[96].

Treatment with cetuximab plus the ICI avelumab in microsatellite stable metastatic CRC patients showed that subclones of tumors expressing PDL1 mutations mediated the resistance to direct avelumab antitumor effects but also increased T cell killing[97]. An analysis of the neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio in the blood of chemorefractory metastatic CRC patients treated with cetuximab plus avelumab showed that a high neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio was a poor prognostic factor. Thus, the neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio could also be a predictor for the effectiveness of the combined ICI cetuximab plus avelumab[98].

Regorafenib, an inhibitor of protein kinases in tumor angiogenesis used in combination with avelumab in microsatellite stable CRC patients, showed increased infiltration of $CD8^+$ T cells associated with better outcomes, with an OS of 10.8 mo[99]. Metastatic CRC patients who previously received two radiotherapies and who were treated with durvalumab plus tremelimumab before the third round of radiotherapy showed increased circulating, differentiated, and proliferating $CD8^+$ T cells, but the authors concluded that this finding does not meet the prespecified endpoint criteria to consider this combined ICI plus radiotherapy worthwhile for further study; specifically, the authors suggested an objective response rate of at least 25%, but they only obtained a response rate of 8.3%[100].

The addition of FOLFOX-based chemotherapy to avelumab plus an adenovirus vector vaccine capable of inducing a $CD4^+$/$CD8^+$ T cell response in mismatch repair-deficient microsatellite instability-high metastatic CRC patients showed no improvement in progression-free survival[101]. However, The Canadian Cancer Trials Group suggests that combining tremelimumab and durmalumab to treat patients with high microsatellite instability who had previously received chemotherapy (fluoropyrimidines, OXA, irinotecan, and others) may prolong OS. They correlated the increased effectiveness of this immunotherapy combination with the tumor mutation burden elevated in plasma[102].

It is essential to mention that some research about the combination of chemotherapy and ICI is under development[93]. For example, a phase II trial in 2020 will show whether atezolizumab combined with OXA, radiotherapy, and bevacizumab may increase progression-free survival in microsatellite instability CRC patients[103]. Additionally, in microsatellite instability-high metastatic CRC patients with deficient mismatch repair, a study is currently underway to prove the improvement of disease-free survival by ICI with avelumab plus fluoropyrimidine; the authors suggested that this ICI plus chemotherapy treatment would improve the expected 3-year disease-free survival rate by 12%[104]. Evidence showing that combining ICI with chemotherapy improves treatment efficacy continues to accumulate.

Most clinical trials reported here are recent, and perhaps the evidence is insufficient to conclude that a treatment criterion has already been established. Consequently, evidence supports the hypothesis that the use of classical ICIs improves chemotherapy treatment, mainly in CRC patients with high microsatellite instability. It is crucial for patients who do not have a good prognosis with chemotherapy alone to have a better response with the combination of classical ICI antibodies.

MULTIOMICS, INDIVIDUALIZED IMMUNOTHERAPY, ADOPTIVE TRANSFER OF "TRAINED" IMMUNE CELLS, AND NONCLASSICAL ICIS ARE A NEW HOPE FOR CRC

In recent years, mechanisms have begun to be developed to understand and explain why, in some cases, classical immunotherapy is sufficient to generate benefits in some patients. Multiple factors participate in the development of any pathology, such as the patient's clinical history, genetics, and the ability of their immune cells to act during cancer. We emphasize the importance of the recruitment of immune cells to the TME; in the case of melanoma, non-small cell lung cancer, and leukemia, the capacity of the immune cells to access is greater, which together with ICIs increases the bioavailability of monoclonal antibodies to find the antigens expressed in the required enclosures to be detected and removed or blocked[105]. In contrast, other types of oncological pathologies are available when access to the tumor site is more difficult for both immune cells and classical ICI antibodies, such as CRC[106]. In addition, the causes of CRC are multiple, and we cannot attempt to generalize a unique treatment for all varieties of CRC to reduce the statistics of this oncological pathology on the rise.

The single-cell multiomics technique has shed light on the complexity of the individual immune response elicited against any agent. This approach facilitates the individual characterization of groups of cells by identifying the gene transcripts at a specific time[107]. This technique depends on the efficiency of flow cytometry to distinguish and separate individual cells, the equipment used to amplify mRNA transcripts and synthesize complementary strand DNA, and sequencing equipment, allowing for robust data with high precision and certainty[108]. The advancement of these latest-generation technologies allows not only the expression of the classic ICI (CTLA4, PD1/PDL1) to be distinguished but also the characterization of mRNA transcripts in specific immune or epithelial cell populations at a particular time. These transcripts, already expressed as proteins, can individually be proposed as new nonclassical ICIs in patients[109], generating a wide range of therapeutic targets that, as in the case of CRC, increase the efficiency of previous treatments.

Some surface molecules involved in suppressive functions for activated T cells, Treg cells, macrophages, neutrophils, and epithelial cells have been proposed as immunotherapy targets. Glucocorticoid-induced tumor necrosis factor receptor-related protein (GITR), T cell immunoglobulin and mucin domain 3 (TIM3), LAG3, CD39, CD73, CD47, and SIRP-1α (a do not eat me signal)[110] warrant evaluation as monotherapy or combined therapy in CRC.

TIM3 is an overexpressed inhibitory receptor in active immune cells, including myeloid and lymphoid cells, with suppressive and modulatory characteristics. It is relevant in reducing interferon-γ production by helper T type 1 cells after binding to its ligand, galectin-9[111]. TIM3 is also overexpressed by Treg cells in a colitis-associated colon cancer mouse model[112]. The combination of TIM3 with anti-PD1 ICI antibodies is a good prospect in a murine breast cancer model[113]. Sabatolimab, an anti-TIM3 antibody, has already been used as a treatment in ovarian, CRC, and non-small cell lung cancer combined with an anti-PD1 antibody, being well tolerated and improving antitumor activity [114]. GITR has a role in the immunomodulation of effector T cells and increases tumor resistance[113, 115]. Treatment with an anti-GITR antibody combined with pembrolizumab improves the disease control rate compared with anti-GITR used as monotherapy for treating CRC, melanoma, and adrenal carcinoma[116].

Lymphocyte activation gene-3 (LAG3 or CD223) has a structure similar to that of the CD4 molecule, joining major histocompatibility complex II in antigen-presenting cells. However, two of their immunoglobulin-like domains can bind receptors in tumor cells[81]. Blockage of LAG3 induces increased interleukin-2 production and enhances T cell proliferation[117]. Therefore, LAG3 has been proposed as an ICI; the genes *LAG3* and *IDO1* were shown to be overexpressed in a phase II study of pembrolizumab use as ICI monotherapy in patients with esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. The authors suggested that a combination of ICIs is needed to induce immunity against this tumor[118]. CD73 is an extracellular adenosine receptor expressed in immunosuppressant cells (such as Treg cells), favoring tumor progression[119].

Recently, single-cell RNA sequencing in a colitis-associated CRC murine model showed that an anti-CD73 antibody has a significant role in improving the anticancer functions of Treg cells, and exhausted $CD8^+$ T cells became activated $CD8^+$ T cells. In contrast, anti-PD1 antibodies in the same model depleted Treg cells and M2 macrophages[120], suggesting a synergistic role for the new ICI anti-CD73 that may improve the positive effects of anti-PD1 monotherapy. *Ex vivo* samples of blood and tumors from microsatellite instability CRC patients showed that atezolizumab alone could reactivate T cells.

Furthermore, adding tiragolumab, an anti-TIGIT antibody, restored intraepithelial CD4 T and CD8 T cell function by favoring interferon-γ and tumor necrosis factor-α production[120,121]. TIGIT is a receptor upregulated in natural killer and activated T cells when the modulation of their effector abilities is necessary for the microenvironment, such as cancer. It is also overexpressed in Treg cells [122]. The use of avelumab plus the adoptive transfer of autologous dendritic cell vaccine in chemotherapy-treated mismatch repair-proficient metastatic CRC patients had a successful result because this treatment was well tolerated. Furthermore, treatment was terminated early because 11% of patients were disease free at 6 mo, and progression-free survival was increased by 40%[123]. This evidence also suggests that new ICI research could open other possibilities for specific and beneficial

treatment for CRC patients because either immune or epithelial cells may express nonclassical ICI molecules (Figure 2).

CONCLUSION

Chemotherapy using 5-FU remains the primary treatment for CRC, despite its high toxicity and low efficacy. New strategies targeting ICIs have been useful in some oncological pathologies; however, evidence showing the effectiveness of classical ICI monotherapy in CRC is scarce. A combination of classical ICI antibodies targeting CTLA4 and PD1/PDL1 molecules showed stronger efficacy for CRC treatment. Finally, classical ICI plus conventional chemotherapy is effective, as evidenced by increased OS, but these strategies are not yet well established, and some clinical studies are ongoing. Evidence suggests that chemotherapy produces neoantigens, increasing tumor immunogenicity that may activate immune responses[124]. This increased immunogenicity is likely the reason for a better response when classical ICI plus chemotherapy is used and may represent a pathway to design new therapeutic strategies aimed at improving the response in CRC patients based on immunological reactivation combined with conventional chemotherapy. Knowledge of the TME in CRC is essential to understand immunosuppression. New options for nonclassical ICIs obtained by single-cell sequencing are shedding light on this area and will probably improve the effectiveness of many treatments.

We are possibly on the verge of major findings in the study of CRC, where the immune response will continue playing a leading role and where new proposals with nonclassical ICIs may reduce the current statistics and poor prognoses for this oncological pathology.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Olguin JE and Mendoza-Rodriguez MG contributed equally to this work; Olguin JE, Mendoza-Rodriguez MG, and Terrazas LI contributed to conception and design; Olguin JE and Terrazas LI contributed to the search for information related to the immune response; Mendoza-Rodriguez MG and Sanchez-Barrera CA contributed to the search for information related to chemotherapy; Olguin JE and Mendoza-Rodriguez MG contributed to figure development; Olguin JE, Mendoza-Rodriguez MG, Sanchez-Barrera CA, and Terrazas LI contributed to paper writing; Olguin JE, Mendoza-Rodriguez MG, and Terrazas LI contributed to funding resources.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All the authors report no relevant conflicts of interest for this article.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: Mexico

ORCID number: Luis I Terrazas 0000-0003-4649-4117.

S-Editor: Gao CC
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Gao CC

REFERENCES

1 **Øines M**, Helsingen LM, Bretthauer M, Emilsson L. Epidemiology and risk factors of colorectal polyps. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2017; **31**: 419-424 [PMID: 28842051 DOI: 10.1016/j.bpg.2017.06.004]
2 **Yamagishi H**, Kuroda H, Imai Y, Hiraishi H. Molecular pathogenesis of sporadic colorectal cancers. *Chin J Cancer* 2016; **35**: 4 [PMID: 26738600 DOI: 10.1186/s40880-015-0066-y]
3 **Shah SC**, Itzkowitz SH. Colorectal Cancer in Inflammatory Bowel Disease: Mechanisms and Management. *Gastroenterology* 2022; **162**: 715-730.e3 [PMID: 34757143 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2021.10.035]
4 **Medina-Andrade I**, Olguín JE, Rodriguez T, Terrazas LI. Chapter 7- The inflammation during colorectal cancer: A friend or a foe? In: Morales-Montor J, Segovia-Mendoza M. Breaking Tolerance to Anti-Cancer Cell-Mediated Immunotherapy in Resistant Cancer: From the Lab Bench Work to Its Clinical Perspectives. Academic Press, 2021: 103-129
5 **Morales-Montor J**. The Innate Immune System in Health and Disease: From the Lab Bench Work to Its Clinical Implications. Volume 1. Nova Science Publishers Incorporated, 2022
6 **Wolpin BM**, Mayer RJ. Systemic treatment of colorectal cancer. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **134**: 1296-1310 [PMID:

18471507 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.02.098]
7 **Osterman E**, Glimelius B. Recurrence Risk After Up-to-Date Colon Cancer Staging, Surgery, and Pathology: Analysis of the Entire Swedish Population. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2018; **61**: 1016-1025 [PMID: 30086050 DOI: 10.1097/DCR.0000000000001158]
8 **Wilkinson NW**, Yothers G, Lopa S, Costantino JP, Petrelli NJ, Wolmark N. Long-term survival results of surgery alone *vs* surgery plus 5-fluorouracil and leucovorin for stage II and stage III colon cancer: pooled analysis of NSABP C-01 through C-05. A baseline from which to compare modern adjuvant trials. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2010; **17**: 959-966 [PMID: 20082144 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-009-0881-y]
9 **Böckelman C**, Engelmann BE, Kaprio T, Hansen TF, Glimelius B. Risk of recurrence in patients with colon cancer stage II and III: a systematic review and meta-analysis of recent literature. *Acta Oncol* 2015; **54**: 5-16 [PMID: 25430983 DOI: 10.3109/0284186X.2014.975839]
10 **Gu J**, Li Z, Zhou J, Sun Z, Bai C. Response prediction to oxaliplatin plus 5-fluorouracil chemotherapy in patients with colorectal cancer using a four-protein immunohistochemical model. *Oncol Lett* 2019; **18**: 2091-2101 [PMID: 31423282 DOI: 10.3892/ol.2019.10474]
11 **Tournigand C**, André T, Achille E, Lledo G, Flesh M, Mery-Mignard D, Quinaux E, Couteau C, Buyse M, Ganem G, Landi B, Colin P, Louvet C, de Gramont A. FOLFIRI followed by FOLFOX6 or the reverse sequence in advanced colorectal cancer: a randomized GERCOR study. *J Clin Oncol* 2004; **22**: 229-237 [PMID: 14657227 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2004.05.113]
12 **Grem JL**. 5-Fluorouracil: forty-plus and still ticking. A review of its preclinical and clinical development. *Invest New Drugs* 2000; **18**: 299-313 [PMID: 11081567 DOI: 10.1023/a:1006416410198]
13 **Heidelberger C**, Chaudhuri NK, Danneberg P, Mooren D, Griesbach L, Duschinsky R, Schnitzer RJ, Pleven E, Scheiner J. Fluorinated pyrimidines, a new class of tumour-inhibitory compounds. *Nature* 1957; **179**: 663-666 [PMID: 13418758 DOI: 10.1038/179663a0]
14 **Rutman RJ**, Cantarow A, Paschkis KE. The catabolism of uracil *in vivo* and in vitro. *J Biol Chem* 1954; **210**: 321-329 [PMID: 13201593]
15 **Wohlhueter RM**, McIvor RS, Plagemann PG. Facilitated transport of uracil and 5-fluorouracil, and permeation of orotic acid into cultured mammalian cells. *J Cell Physiol* 1980; **104**: 309-319 [PMID: 7419607 DOI: 10.1002/jcp.1041040305]
16 **Longley DB**, Harkin DP, Johnston PG. 5-fluorouracil: mechanisms of action and clinical strategies. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2003; **3**: 330-338 [PMID: 12724731 DOI: 10.1038/nrc1074]
17 **Thomas DM**, Zalcberg JR. 5-fluorouracil: a pharmacological paradigm in the use of cytotoxics. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol* 1998; **25**: 887-895 [PMID: 9807659 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1681.1998.tb02339.x]
18 **Noordhuis P**, Holwerda U, Van der Wilt CL, Van Groeningen CJ, Smid K, Meijer S, Pinedo HM, Peters GJ. 5-Fluorouracil incorporation into RNA and DNA in relation to thymidylate synthase inhibition of human colorectal cancers. *Ann Oncol* 2004; **15**: 1025-1032 [PMID: 15205195 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdh264]
19 **Rutman RJ**, Cantarow A, Paschkis KE. Studies in 2-acetylaminofluorene carcinogenesis. III. The utilization of uracil-2-C14 by preneoplastic rat liver and rat hepatoma. *Cancer Res* 1954; **14**: 119-123 [PMID: 13126946]
20 **Miura K**, Kinouchi M, Ishida K, Fujibuchi W, Naitoh T, Ogawa H, Ando T, Yazaki N, Watanabe K, Haneda S, Shibata C, Sasaki I. 5-fu metabolism in cancer and orally-administrable 5-fu drugs. *Cancers (Basel)* 2010; **2**: 1717-1730 [PMID: 24281184 DOI: 10.3390/cancers2031717]
21 **Chalabi M**, Fanchi LF, Dijkstra KK, Van den Berg JG, Aalbers AG, Sikorska K, Lopez-Yurda M, Grootscholten C, Beets GL, Snaebjornsson P, Maas M, Mertz M, Veninga V, Bounova G, Broeks A, Beets-Tan RG, de Wijkerslooth TR, van Lent AU, Marsman HA, Nuijten E, Kok NF, Kuiper M, Verbeek WH, Kok M, Van Leerdam ME, Schumacher TN, Voest EE, Haanen JB. Neoadjuvant immunotherapy leads to pathological responses in MMR-proficient and MMR-deficient early-stage colon cancers. *Nat Med* 2020; **26**: 566-576 [PMID: 32251400 DOI: 10.1038/s41591-020-0805-8]
22 **Vodenkova S**, Buchler T, Cervena K, Veskrnova V, Vodicka P, Vymetalkova V. 5-fluorouracil and other fluoropyrimidines in colorectal cancer: Past, present and future. *Pharmacol Ther* 2020; **206**: 107447 [PMID: 31756363 DOI: 10.1016/j.pharmthera.2019.107447]
23 **Robertson J**, Barr R, Shulman LN, Forte GB, Magrini N. Essential medicines for cancer: WHO recommendations and national priorities. *Bull World Health Organ* 2016; **94**: 735-742 [PMID: 27843163 DOI: 10.2471/BLT.15.163998]
24 **Sargent D**, Sobrero A, Grothey A, O'Connell MJ, Buyse M, Andre T, Zheng Y, Green E, Labianca R, O'Callaghan C, Seitz JF, Francini G, Haller D, Yothers G, Goldberg R, de Gramont A. Evidence for cure by adjuvant therapy in colon cancer: observations based on individual patient data from 20,898 patients on 18 randomized trials. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; **27**: 872-877 [PMID: 19124803 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.19.5362]
25 **Coronel-Hernández J**, Salgado-García R, Cantú-De León D, Jacobo-Herrera N, Millan-Catalan O, Delgado-Waldo I, Campos-Parra AD, Rodríguez-Morales M, Delgado-Buenrostro NL, Pérez-Plasencia C. Combination of Metformin, Sodium Oxamate and Doxorubicin Induces Apoptosis and Autophagy in Colorectal Cancer Cells *via* Downregulation HIF-1α. *Front Oncol* 2021; **11**: 594200 [PMID: 34123772 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2021.594200]
26 **Soulières D**, Greer W, Magliocco AM, Huntsman D, Young S, Tsao MS, Kamel-Reid S. KRAS mutation testing in the treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer with anti-EGFR therapies. *Curr Oncol* 2010; **17** Suppl 1: S31-S40 [PMID: 20680106 DOI: 10.3747/co.v17is1.614]
27 **Hasbal-Celikok G**, Aksoy-Sagirli P, Altiparmak-Ulbegi G, Can A. Identification of AKT1/β-catenin mutations conferring cetuximab and chemotherapeutic drug resistance in colorectal cancer treatment. *Oncol Lett* 2021; **21**: 209 [PMID: 33574948 DOI: 10.3892/ol.2021.12470]
28 **Tong J**, Ganguly PK, Singal PK. Myocardial adrenergic changes at two stages of heart failure due to adriamycin treatment in rats. *Am J Physiol* 1991; **260**: H909-H916 [PMID: 2000986 DOI: 10.1152/ajpheart.1991.260.3.H909]
29 **Injac R**, Radic N, Govedarica B, Perse M, Cerar A, Djordjevic A, Strukelj B. Acute doxorubicin pulmotoxicity in rats with malignant neoplasm is effectively treated with fullerenol C60(OH)24 through inhibition of oxidative stress. *Pharmacol Rep* 2009; **61**: 335-342 [PMID: 19443948 DOI: 10.1016/s1734-1140(09)70041-6]
30 **Bednarski BK**, Baldwin AS Jr, Kim HJ. Addressing reported pro-apoptotic functions of NF-kappaB: targeted inhibition

of canonical NF-kappaB enhances the apoptotic effects of doxorubicin. *PLoS One* 2009; **4**: e6992 [PMID: 19746155 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0006992]

31 **Lind DS**, Hochwald SN, Malaty J, Rekkas S, Hebig P, Mishra G, Moldawer LL, Copeland EM 3rd, Mackay S. Nuclear factor-kappa B is upregulated in colorectal cancer. *Surgery* 2001; **130**: 363-369 [PMID: 11490372 DOI: 10.1067/msy.2001.116672]

32 **Nooter K**, Stoter G. Molecular mechanisms of multidrug resistance in cancer chemotherapy. *Pathol Res Pract* 1996; **192**: 768-780 [PMID: 8880878 DOI: 10.1016/S0344-0338(96)80099-9]

33 **Chen S**, Liu H, Li J, Yang G. Risk of Gastric and Colorectal Cancer After Tamoxifen Use for Breast Cancer: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2015; **49**: 666-674 [PMID: 25319737 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0000000000000262]

34 **Goodsell DS**. The molecular perspective: tamoxifen and the estrogen receptor. *Oncologist* 2002; **7**: 163-164 [PMID: 11961200 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.7-2-163]

35 **Wright M**, Beaty JS, Ternent CA. Molecular Markers for Colorectal Cancer. *Surg Clin North Am* 2017; **97**: 683-701 [PMID: 28501255 DOI: 10.1016/j.suc.2017.01.014]

36 **Grady WM**, Carethers JM. Genomic and epigenetic instability in colorectal cancer pathogenesis. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **135**: 1079-1099 [PMID: 18773902 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.07.076]

37 **Mármol I**, Sánchez-de-Diego C, Pradilla Dieste A, Cerrada E, Rodriguez Yoldi MJ. Colorectal Carcinoma: A General Overview and Future Perspectives in Colorectal Cancer. *Int J Mol Sci* 2017; **18** [PMID: 28106826 DOI: 10.3390/ijms18010197]

38 **Van Cutsem E**, Nordlinger B, Cervantes A; ESMO Guidelines Working Group. Advanced colorectal cancer: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for treatment. *Ann Oncol* 2010; **21** Suppl 5: v93-v97 [PMID: 20555112 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdq222]

39 **Van Cutsem E**, Cervantes A, Nordlinger B, Arnold D; ESMO Guidelines Working Group. Metastatic colorectal cancer: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up. *Ann Oncol* 2014; **25** Suppl 3: iii1-iii9 [PMID: 25190710 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdu260]

40 **Goldstein DA**, Zeichner SB, Bartnik CM, Neustadter E, Flowers CR. Metastatic Colorectal Cancer: A Systematic Review of the Value of Current Therapies. *Clin Colorectal Cancer* 2016; **15**: 1-6 [PMID: 26541320 DOI: 10.1016/j.clcc.2015.10.002]

41 **Aparicio J**, Fernandez-Martos C, Vincent JM, Maestu I, Llorca C, Busquier I, Campos JM, Perez-Enguix D, Balcells M. FOLFOX alternated with FOLFIRI as first-line chemotherapy for metastatic colorectal cancer. *Clin Colorectal Cancer* 2005; **5**: 263-267 [PMID: 16356303 DOI: 10.3816/ccc.2005.n.037]

42 **Chakrabarti S**, Peterson CY, Sriram D, Mahipal A. Early stage colon cancer: Current treatment standards, evolving paradigms, and future directions. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2020; **12**: 808-832 [PMID: 32879661 DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v12.i8.808]

43 **Glimelius B**, Graf W, Hoffman K, Påhlman L, Sjödén PO, Wennberg A. General condition of asymptomatic patients with advanced colorectal cancer receiving palliative chemotherapy. A longitudinal study. *Acta Oncol* 1992; **31**: 645-651 [PMID: 1281650 DOI: 10.3109/02841869209083847]

44 **Ackland SP**, Jones M, Tu D, Simes J, Yuen J, Sargeant AM, Dhillon H, Goldberg RM, Abdi E, Shepherd L, Moore MJ. A meta-analysis of two randomised trials of early chemotherapy in asymptomatic metastatic colorectal cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2005; **93**: 1236-1243 [PMID: 16265352 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6602841]

45 **Hu Y**, Tao SY, Deng JM, Hou ZK, Liang JQ, Huang QG, Li LH, Li HB, Chen YM, Yi H, Chen XL, Liu H. Prognostic Value of NRAS Gene for Survival of Colorectal Cancer Patients: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. *Asian Pac J Cancer Prev* 2018; **19**: 3001-3008 [PMID: 30484984 DOI: 10.31557/APJCP.2018.19.11.3001]

46 **Peng J**, Lv J, Peng J. KRAS mutation is predictive for poor prognosis in rectal cancer patients with neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy: a systemic review and meta-analysis. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2021; **36**: 1781-1790 [PMID: 33760952 DOI: 10.1007/s00384-021-03911-z]

47 **Dai D**, Wang Y, Zhu L, Jin H, Wang X. Prognostic value of KRAS mutation status in colorectal cancer patients: a population-based competing risk analysis. *PeerJ* 2020; **8**: e9149 [PMID: 32547859 DOI: 10.7717/peerj.9149]

48 **Jones RP**, Sutton PA, Evans JP, Clifford R, McAvoy A, Lewis J, Rousseau A, Mountford R, McWhirter D, Malik HZ. Specific mutations in KRAS codon 12 are associated with worse overall survival in patients with advanced and recurrent colorectal cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2017; **116**: 923-929 [PMID: 28208157 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2017.37]

49 **Van Cutsem E**, Lenz HJ, Köhne CH, Heinemann V, Tejpar S, Melezínek I, Beier F, Stroh C, Rougier P, van Krieken JH, Ciardiello F. Fluorouracil, leucovorin, and irinotecan plus cetuximab treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: 692-700 [PMID: 25605843 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2014.59.4812]

50 **Peeters M**, Oliner KS, Price TJ, Cervantes A, Sobrero AF, Ducreux M, Hotko Y, André T, Chan E, Lordick F, Punt CJ, Strickland AH, Wilson G, Ciuleanu TE, Roman L, Van Cutsem E, He P, Yu H, Koukakis R, Terwey JH, Jung AS, Sidhu R, Patterson SD. Analysis of KRAS/NRAS Mutations in a Phase III Study of Panitumumab with FOLFIRI Compared with FOLFIRI Alone as Second-line Treatment for Metastatic Colorectal Cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2015; **21**: 5469-5479 [PMID: 26341920 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-15-0526]

51 **Bokemeyer C**, Köhne CH, Ciardiello F, Lenz HJ, Heinemann V, Klinkhardt U, Beier F, Duecker K, van Krieken JH, Tejpar S. FOLFOX4 plus cetuximab treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer. *Eur J Cancer* 2015; **51**: 1243-1252 [PMID: 25937522 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2015.04.007]

52 **Ikoma T**, Shimokawa M, Kotaka M, Matsumoto T, Nagai H, Boku S, Shibata N, Yasui H, Satake H. Clinical and prognostic features of patients with detailed RAS/BRAF-mutant colorectal cancer in Japan. *BMC Cancer* 2021; **21**: 518 [PMID: 33962575 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-021-08271-z]

53 **Housman G**, Byler S, Heerboth S, Lapinska K, Longacre M, Snyder N, Sarkar S. Drug resistance in cancer: an overview. *Cancers (Basel)* 2014; **6**: 1769-1792 [PMID: 25198391 DOI: 10.3390/cancers6031769]

54 **Alfarouk KO**, Stock CM, Taylor S, Walsh M, Muddathir AK, Verduzco D, Bashir AH, Mohammed OY, Elhassan GO, Harguindey S, Reshkin SJ, Ibrahim ME, Rauch C. Resistance to cancer chemotherapy: failure in drug response from

ADME to P-gp. *Cancer Cell Int* 2015; **15**: 71 [PMID: 26180516 DOI: 10.1186/s12935-015-0221-1]
55 **Lu C**, Shervington A. Chemoresistance in gliomas. *Mol Cell Biochem* 2008; **312**: 71-80 [PMID: 18259841 DOI: 10.1007/s11010-008-9722-8]
56 **Brasseur K**, Gévry N, Asselin E. Chemoresistance and targeted therapies in ovarian and endometrial cancers. *Oncotarget* 2017; **8**: 4008-4042 [PMID: 28008141 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.14021]
57 **Zhu G**, Pei L, Xia H, Tang Q, Bi F. Role of oncogenic KRAS in the prognosis, diagnosis and treatment of colorectal cancer. *Mol Cancer* 2021; **20**: 143 [PMID: 34742312 DOI: 10.1186/s12943-021-01441-4]
58 **Yoon HH**, Tougeron D, Shi Q, Alberts SR, Mahoney MR, Nelson GD, Nair SG, Thibodeau SN, Goldberg RM, Sargent DJ, Sinicrope FA; Alliance for Clinical Trials in Oncology. KRAS codon 12 and 13 mutations in relation to disease-free survival in BRAF-wild-type stage III colon cancers from an adjuvant chemotherapy trial (N0147 alliance). *Clin Cancer Res* 2014; **20**: 3033-3043 [PMID: 24687927 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-3140]
59 **Yuan S**, Tao F, Zhang X, Zhang Y, Sun X, Wu D. Role of Wnt/β-Catenin Signaling in the Chemoresistance Modulation of Colorectal Cancer. *Biomed Res Int* 2020; **2020**: 9390878 [PMID: 32258160 DOI: 10.1155/2020/9390878]
60 **Bugter JM**, Fenderico N, Maurice MM. Mutations and mechanisms of WNT pathway tumour suppressors in cancer. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2021; **21**: 5-21 [PMID: 33097916 DOI: 10.1038/s41568-020-00307-z]
61 **Gallo G**, Vescio G, De Paola G, Sammarco G. Therapeutic Targets and Tumor Microenvironment in Colorectal Cancer. *J Clin Med* 2021; **10** [PMID: 34070480 DOI: 10.3390/jcm10112295]
62 **Saleh R**, Elkord E. Acquired resistance to cancer immunotherapy: Role of tumor-mediated immunosuppression. *Semin Cancer Biol* 2020; **65**: 13-27 [PMID: 31362073 DOI: 10.1016/j.semcancer.2019.07.017]
63 **Fang H**, Declerck YA. Targeting the tumor microenvironment: from understanding pathways to effective clinical trials. *Cancer Res* 2013; **73**: 4965-4977 [PMID: 23913938 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-13-0661]
64 **Gaggianesi M**, Di Franco S, Pantina VD, Porcelli G, D'Accardo C, Verona F, Veschi V, Colarossi L, Faldetta N, Pistone G, Bongiorno MR, Todaro M, Stassi G. Messing Up the Cancer Stem Cell Chemoresistance Mechanisms Supported by Tumor Microenvironment. *Front Oncol* 2021; **11**: 702642 [PMID: 34354950 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2021.702642]
65 **Li X**, Slayton WB. Molecular mechanisms of platelet and stem cell rebound after 5-fluorouracil treatment. *Exp Hematol* 2013; **41**: 635-645.e3 [PMID: 23507524 DOI: 10.1016/j.exphem.2013.03.003]
66 **Fang H**, Ang B, Xu X, Huang X, Wu Y, Sun Y, Wang W, Li N, Cao X, Wan T. TLR4 is essential for dendritic cell activation and anti-tumor T-cell response enhancement by DAMPs released from chemically stressed cancer cells. *Cell Mol Immunol* 2014; **11**: 150-159 [PMID: 24362470 DOI: 10.1038/cmi.2013.59]
67 **Wang D**, Yang L, Yu W, Wu Q, Lian J, Li F, Liu S, Li A, He Z, Liu J, Sun Z, Yuan W, Zhang Y. Colorectal cancer cell-derived CCL20 recruits regulatory T cells to promote chemoresistance *via* FOXO1/CEBPB/NF-κB signaling. *J Immunother Cancer* 2019; **7**: 215 [PMID: 31395078 DOI: 10.1186/s40425-019-0701-2]
68 **Bagchi S**, Yuan R, Engleman EG. Immune Checkpoint Inhibitors for the Treatment of Cancer: Clinical Impact and Mechanisms of Response and Resistance. *Annu Rev Pathol* 2021; **16**: 223-249 [PMID: 33197221 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-pathol-042020-042741]
69 **Robert C**, Long GV, Brady B, Dutriaux C, Maio M, Mortier L, Hassel JC, Rutkowski P, McNeil C, Kalinka-Warzocha E, Savage KJ, Hernberg MM, Lebbé C, Charles J, Mihalcioiu C, Chiarion-Sileni V, Mauch C, Cognetti F, Arance A, Schmidt H, Schadendorf D, Gogas H, Lundgren-Eriksson L, Horak C, Sharkey B, Waxman IM, Atkinson V, Ascierto PA. Nivolumab in previously untreated melanoma without BRAF mutation. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **372**: 320-330 [PMID: 25399552 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1412082]
70 **Pires da Silva I**, Ahmed T, Reijers ILM, Weppler AM, Betof Warner A, Patrinely JR, Serra-Bellver P, Allayous C, Mangana J, Nguyen K, Zimmer L, Trojaniello C, Stout D, Lyle M, Klein O, Gerard CL, Michielin O, Haydon A, Ascierto PA, Carlino MS, Lebbe C, Lorigan P, Johnson DB, Sandhu S, Lo SN, Blank CU, Menzies AM, Long GV. Ipilimumab alone or ipilimumab plus anti-PD-1 therapy in patients with metastatic melanoma resistant to anti-PD-(L)1 monotherapy: a multicentre, retrospective, cohort study. *Lancet Oncol* 2021; **22**: 836-847 [PMID: 33989557 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(21)00097-8]
71 **Larkin J**, Chiarion-Sileni V, Gonzalez R, Grob JJ, Cowey CL, Lao CD, Schadendorf D, Dummer R, Smylie M, Rutkowski P, Ferrucci PF, Hill A, Wagstaff J, Carlino MS, Haanen JB, Maio M, Marquez-Rodas I, McArthur GA, Ascierto PA, Long GV, Callahan MK, Postow MA, Grossmann K, Sznol M, Dreno B, Bastholt L, Yang A, Rollin LM, Horak C, Hodi FS, Wolchok JD. Combined Nivolumab and Ipilimumab or Monotherapy in Untreated Melanoma. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **373**: 23-34 [PMID: 26027431 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1504030]
72 **De Sousa Linhares A**, Battin C, Jutz S, Leitner J, Hafner C, Tobias J, Wiedermann U, Kundi M, Zlabinger GJ, Grabmeier-Pfistershammer K, Steinberger P. Therapeutic PD-L1 antibodies are more effective than PD-1 antibodies in blocking PD-1/PD-L1 signaling. *Sci Rep* 2019; **9**: 11472 [PMID: 31391510 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-019-47910-1]
73 **de Azevedo SJ**, de Melo AC, Roberts L, Caro I, Xue C, Wainstein A. First-line atezolizumab monotherapy in patients with advanced BRAF(V600) wild-type melanoma. *Pigment Cell Melanoma Res* 2021; **34**: 973-977 [PMID: 33476492 DOI: 10.1111/pcmr.12960]
74 **Schmid P**, Adams S, Rugo HS, Schneeweiss A, Barrios CH, Iwata H, Diéras V, Hegg R, Im SA, Shaw Wright G, Henschel V, Molinero L, Chui SY, Funke R, Husain A, Winer EP, Loi S, Emens LA; IMpassion130 Trial Investigators. Atezolizumab and Nab-Paclitaxel in Advanced Triple-Negative Breast Cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2018; **379**: 2108-2121 [PMID: 30345906 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1809615]
75 **West H**, McCleod M, Hussein M, Morabito A, Rittmeyer A, Conter HJ, Kopp HG, Daniel D, McCune S, Mekhail T, Zer A, Reinmuth N, Sadiq A, Sandler A, Lin W, Ochi Lohmann T, Archer V, Wang L, Kowanetz M, Cappuzzo F. Atezolizumab in combination with carboplatin plus nab-paclitaxel chemotherapy compared with chemotherapy alone as first-line treatment for metastatic non-squamous non-small-cell lung cancer (IMpower130): a multicentre, randomised, open-label, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2019; **20**: 924-937 [PMID: 31122901 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(19)30167-6]
76 **O'Donnell JS**, Long GV, Scolyer RA, Teng MW, Smyth MJ. Resistance to PD1/PDL1 checkpoint inhibition. *Cancer Treat Rev* 2017; **52**: 71-81 [PMID: 27951441 DOI: 10.1016/j.ctrv.2016.11.007]
77 **Chung KY**, Gore I, Fong L, Venook A, Beck SB, Dorazio P, Criscitiello PJ, Healey DI, Huang B, Gomez-Navarro J,

Saltz LB. Phase II study of the anti-cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 monoclonal antibody, tremelimumab, in patients with refractory metastatic colorectal cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 3485-3490 [PMID: 20498386 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2010.28.3994]

78 **Overman MJ**, McDermott R, Leach JL, Lonardi S, Lenz HJ, Morse MA, Desai J, Hill A, Axelson M, Moss RA, Goldberg MV, Cao ZA, Ledeine JM, Maglinte GA, Kopetz S, André T. Nivolumab in patients with metastatic DNA mismatch repair-deficient or microsatellite instability-high colorectal cancer (CheckMate 142): an open-label, multicentre, phase 2 study. *Lancet Oncol* 2017; **18**: 1182-1191 [PMID: 28734759 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(17)30422-9]

79 **Kawazoe A**, Itahashi K, Yamamoto N, Kotani D, Kuboki Y, Taniguchi H, Harano K, Naito Y, Suzuki M, Fukutani M, Higuchi T, Ikeno T, Wakabayashi M, Sato A, Koyama S, Nishikawa H, Shitara K. TAS-116 (Pimitespib), an Oral HSP90 Inhibitor, in Combination with Nivolumab in Patients with Colorectal Cancer and Other Solid Tumors: An Open-Label, Dose-Finding, and Expansion Phase Ib Trial (EPOC1704). *Clin Cancer Res* 2021; **27**: 6709-6715 [PMID: 34593531 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-21-1929]

80 **Suzuki S**, Kawakami H, Miike T, Yamamoto S. Complete Remission of Colon Cancer with Ipilimumab Monotherapy. *Intern Med* 2021; **60**: 957-958 [PMID: 33087677 DOI: 10.2169/internalmedicine.6024-20]

81 **Andrews LP**, Marciscano AE, Drake CG, Vignali DA. LAG3 (CD223) as a cancer immunotherapy target. *Immunol Rev* 2017; **276**: 80-96 [PMID: 28258692 DOI: 10.1111/imr.12519]

82 **Haag GM**, Springfeld C, Grün B, Apostolidis L, Zschäbitz S, Dietrich M, Berger AK, Weber TF, Zoernig I, Schaaf M, Waberer L, Müller DW, Al-Batran SE, Halama N, Jaeger D. Pembrolizumab and maraviroc in refractory mismatch repair proficient/microsatellite-stable metastatic colorectal cancer - The PICCASSO phase I trial. *Eur J Cancer* 2022; **167**: 112-122 [PMID: 35427833 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2022.03.017]

83 **Kim JH**, Kim SY, Baek JY, Cha YJ, Ahn JB, Kim HS, Lee KW, Kim JW, Kim TY, Chang WJ, Park JO, Kim J, Kim JE, Hong YS, Kim YH, Kim TW. A Phase II Study of Avelumab Monotherapy in Patients with Mismatch Repair-Deficient/Microsatellite Instability-High or POLE-Mutated Metastatic or Unresectable Colorectal Cancer. *Cancer Res Treat* 2020; **52**: 1135-1144 [PMID: 32340084 DOI: 10.4143/crt.2020.218]

84 **Oh CR**, Kim JE, Hong YS, Kim SY, Ahn JB, Baek JY, Lee MA, Kang MJ, Cho SH, Beom SH, Kim TW. Phase II study of durvalumab monotherapy in patients with previously treated microsatellite instability-high/mismatch repair-deficient or POLE-mutated metastatic or unresectable colorectal cancer. *Int J Cancer* 2022; **150**: 2038-2045 [PMID: 35179785 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.33966]

85 **Kanikarla Marie P**, Haymaker C, Parra ER, Kim YU, Lazcano R, Gite S, Lorenzini D, Wistuba II, Tidwell RSS, Song X, Foo WC, Maru DM, Chun YS, Futreal A, Kee B, Menter D, Solis L, Tzeng CW, Parseghian C, Raghav K, Morris V, Chang CC, Jenq R, Tam A, Bernatchez C, Kopetz S, Vauthey JN, Overman MJ. Pilot Clinical Trial of Perioperative Durvalumab and Tremelimumab in the Treatment of Resectable Colorectal Cancer Liver Metastases. *Clin Cancer Res* 2021; **27**: 3039-3049 [PMID: 33811152 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-21-0163]

86 **Lenz HJ**, Van Cutsem E, Luisa Limon M, Wong KYM, Hendlisz A, Aglietta M, García-Alfonso P, Neyns B, Luppi G, Cardin DB, Dragovich T, Shah U, Abdullaev S, Gricar J, Ledeine JM, Overman MJ, Lonardi S. First-Line Nivolumab Plus Low-Dose Ipilimumab for Microsatellite Instability-High/Mismatch Repair-Deficient Metastatic Colorectal Cancer: The Phase II CheckMate 142 Study. *J Clin Oncol* 2022; **40**: 161-170 [PMID: 34637336 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.21.01015]

87 **Morse MA**, Overman MJ, Hartman L, Khoukaz T, Brutcher E, Lenz HJ, Atasoy A, Shangguan T, Zhao H, El-Rayes B. Safety of Nivolumab plus Low-Dose Ipilimumab in Previously Treated Microsatellite Instability-High/Mismatch Repair-Deficient Metastatic Colorectal Cancer. *Oncologist* 2019; **24**: 1453-1461 [PMID: 31147488 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2019-0129]

88 **Kasi PM**, Budde G, Krainock M, Aushev VN, Koyen Malashevich A, Malhotra M, Olshan P, Billings PR, Aleshin A. Circulating tumor DNA (ctDNA) serial analysis during progression on PD-1 blockade and later CTLA-4 rescue in patients with mismatch repair deficient metastatic colorectal cancer. *J Immunother Cancer* 2022; **10** [PMID: 35101943 DOI: 10.1136/jitc-2021-003312]

89 **Johnson B**, Haymaker CL, Parra ER, Soto LMS, Wang X, Thomas JV, Dasari A, Morris VK, Raghav K, Vilar E, Kee BK, Eng C, Parseghian CM, Wolff RA, Lee Y, Lorenzini D, Laberiano-Fernandez C, Verma A, Lang W, Wistuba II, Futreal A, Kopetz S, Overman MJ. Phase II study of durvalumab (anti-PD-L1) and trametinib (MEKi) in microsatellite stable (MSS) metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC). *J Immunother Cancer* 2022; **10** [PMID: 36007963 DOI: 10.1136/jitc-2022-005332]

90 **Cohen R**, Bennouna J, Meurisse A, Tournigand C, De La Fouchardière C, Tougeron D, Borg C, Mazard T, Chibaudel B, Garcia-Larnicol ML, Svrcek M, Vernerey D, Menu Y, André T. RECIST and iRECIST criteria for the evaluation of nivolumab plus ipilimumab in patients with microsatellite instability-high/mismatch repair-deficient metastatic colorectal cancer: the GERCOR NIPICOL phase II study. *J Immunother Cancer* 2020; **8** [PMID: 33148693 DOI: 10.1136/jitc-2020-001499]

91 **Eng C**, Kim TW, Bendell J, Argilés G, Tebbutt NC, Di Bartolomeo M, Falcone A, Fakih M, Kozloff M, Segal NH, Sobrero A, Yan Y, Chang I, Uyei A, Roberts L, Ciardiello F; IMblaze370 Investigators. Atezolizumab with or without cobimetinib *vs* regorafenib in previously treated metastatic colorectal cancer (IMblaze370): a multicentre, open-label, phase 3, randomised, controlled trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2019; **20**: 849-861 [PMID: 31003911 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(19)30027-0]

92 **Hellmann MD**, Kim TW, Lee CB, Goh BC, Miller WH Jr, Oh DY, Jamal R, Chee CE, Chow LQM, Gainor JF, Desai J, Solomon BJ, Das Thakur M, Pitcher B, Foster P, Hernandez G, Wongchenko MJ, Cha E, Bang YJ, Siu LL, Bendell J. Phase Ib study of atezolizumab combined with cobimetinib in patients with solid tumors. *Ann Oncol* 2019; **30**: 1134-1142 [PMID: 30918950 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdz113]

93 **Fumet JD**, Isambert N, Hervieu A, Zanetta S, Guion JF, Hennequin A, Rederstorff E, Bertaut A, Ghiringhelli F. Phase Ib/II trial evaluating the safety, tolerability and immunological activity of durvalumab (MEDI4736) (anti-PD-L1) plus tremelimumab (anti-CTLA-4) combined with FOLFOX in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. *ESMO Open* 2018; **3**: e000375 [PMID: 29942666 DOI: 10.1136/esmoopen-2018-000375]

94 **Antoniotti C**, Rossini D, Pietrantonio F, Catteau A, Salvatore L, Lonardi S, Boquet I, Tamberi S, Marmorino F, Moretto

R, Ambrosini M, Tamburini E, Tortora G, Passardi A, Bergamo F, Kassambara A, Sbarrato T, Morano F, Ritorto G, Borelli B, Boccaccino A, Conca V, Giordano M, Ugolini C, Fieschi J, Papadopulos A, Massoué C, Aprile G, Antonuzzo L, Gelsomino F, Martinelli E, Pella N, Masi G, Fontanini G, Boni L, Galon J, Cremolini C; GONO Foundation Investigators. Upfront FOLFOXIRI plus bevacizumab with or without atezolizumab in the treatment of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer (AtezoTRIBE): a multicentre, open-label, randomised, controlled, phase 2 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2022; **23**: 876-887 [PMID: 35636444 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(22)00274-1]

95 **Tabernero J**, Grothey A, Arnold D, de Gramont A, Ducreux M, O'Dwyer P, Tahiri A, Gilberg F, Irahara N, Schmoll HJ, Van Cutsem E. MODUL cohort 2: an adaptable, randomized, signal-seeking trial of fluoropyrimidine plus bevacizumab with or without atezolizumab maintenance therapy for BRAF(wt) metastatic colorectal cancer. *ESMO Open* 2022; **7**: 100559 [PMID: 36029653 DOI: 10.1016/j.esmoop.2022.100559]

96 **Martinelli E**, Martini G, Famiglietti V, Troiani T, Napolitano S, Pietrantonio F, Ciardiello D, Terminiello M, Borrelli C, Vitiello PP, De Braud F, Morano F, Avallone A, Normanno N, Nappi A, Maiello E, Latiano T, Falcone A, Cremolini C, Rossini D, Santabarbara G, Pinto C, Santini D, Cardone C, Zanaletti N, Di Liello A, Renato D, Esposito L, Marrone F, Ciardiello F. Cetuximab Rechallenge Plus Avelumab in Pretreated Patients With RAS Wild-type Metastatic Colorectal Cancer: The Phase 2 Single-Arm Clinical CAVE Trial. *JAMA Oncol* 2021; **7**: 1529-1535 [PMID: 34382998 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2021.2915]

97 **Stein A**, Simnica D, Schultheiß C, Scholz R, Tintelnot J, Gökkurt E, von Wenserski L, Willscher E, Paschold L, Sauer M, Lorenzen S, Riera-Knorrenschild J, Depenbusch R, Ettrich TJ, Dörfel S, Al-Batran SE, Karthaus M, Pelzer U, Waberer L, Hinke A, Bauer M, Massa C, Seliger B, Wickenhauser C, Bokemeyer C, Hegewisch-Becker S, Binder M. PD-L1 targeting and subclonal immune escape mediated by PD-L1 mutations in metastatic colorectal cancer. *J Immunother Cancer* 2021; **9** [PMID: 34315821 DOI: 10.1136/jitc-2021-002844]

98 **Ciardiello D**, Famiglietti V, Napolitano S, Esposito L, Pietrantonio F, Avallone A, Maiello E, Cremolini C, Troiani T, Martinelli E, Ciardiello F, Martini G. Final results of the CAVE trial in RAS wild type metastatic colorectal cancer patients treated with cetuximab plus avelumab as rechallenge therapy: Neutrophil to lymphocyte ratio predicts survival. *Clin Colorectal Cancer* 2022; **21**: 141-148 [PMID: 35101346 DOI: 10.1016/j.clcc.2022.01.005]

99 **Cousin S**, Cantarel C, Guegan JP, Gomez-Roca C, Metges JP, Adenis A, Pernot S, Bellera C, Kind M, Auzanneau C, Le Loarer F, Soubeyran I, Bessede A, Italiano A. Regorafenib-Avelumab Combination in Patients with Microsatellite Stable Colorectal Cancer (REGOMUNE): A Single-arm, Open-label, Phase II Trial. *Clin Cancer Res* 2021; **27**: 2139-2147 [PMID: 33495314 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-20-3416]

100 **Segal NH**, Cercek A, Ku G, Wu AJ, Rimner A, Khalil DN, Reidy-Lagunes D, Cuaron J, Yang TJ, Weiser MR, Romesser PB, Stadler ZK, Varghese AM, Ganesh K, Yaeger R, Connell LC, Faleck D, Abou-Alfa GK, Mcauliffe KC, Vaiskauskas P, Solter ML, Ogle M, Adamow MJ, Holland A, Vedantam P, Wong P, Merghoub T, Vakiani E, Hollmann TJ, Juluru K, Chou JF, Capanu M, Erinjeri J, Solomon S, Yamada Y, Kemeny N, Crane CH, Saltz LB. Phase II Single-arm Study of Durvalumab and Tremelimumab with Concurrent Radiotherapy in Patients with Mismatch Repair-proficient Metastatic Colorectal Cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2021; **27**: 2200-2208 [PMID: 33504552 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-20-2474]

101 **Redman JM**, Tsai YT, Weinberg BA, Donahue RN, Gandhy S, Gatti-Mays ME, Abdul Sater H, Bilusic M, Cordes LM, Steinberg SM, Marte JL, Jochems C, Kim SS, Marshall JL, McMahon S, Redmond E, Schlom J, Gulley JL, Strauss J. A Randomized Phase II Trial of mFOLFOX6 + Bevacizumab Alone or with AdCEA Vaccine + Avelumab Immunotherapy for Untreated Metastatic Colorectal Cancer. *Oncologist* 2022; **27**: 198-209 [PMID: 35274710 DOI: 10.1093/oncolo/oyab046]

102 **Chen EX**, Jonker DJ, Loree JM, Kennecke HF, Berry SR, Couture F, Ahmad CE, Goffin JR, Kavan P, Harb M, Colwell B, Samimi S, Samson B, Abbas T, Aucoin N, Aubin F, Koski SL, Wei AC, Magoski NM, Tu D, O'Callaghan CJ. Effect of Combined Immune Checkpoint Inhibition *vs* Best Supportive Care Alone in Patients With Advanced Colorectal Cancer: The Canadian Cancer Trials Group CO.26 Study. *JAMA Oncol* 2020; **6**: 831-838 [PMID: 32379280 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2020.0910]

103 **Randrian V**, Pernot S, Le Malicot K, Catena V, Baumgaertner I, Tacher V, Forestier J, Hautefeuille V, Tabouret-Viaud C, Gagnaire A, Mitry E, Guiu B, Aparicio T, Smith D, Dhomps A, Tasu JP, Perdrisot R, Edeline J, Capron C, Cheze-Le Rest C, Emile JF, Laurent-Puig P, Bejan-Angoulvant T, Sokol H, Lepage C, Taieb J, Tougeron D. FFCD 1709-SIRTCI phase II trial: Selective internal radiation therapy plus Xelox, Bevacizumab and Atezolizumab in liver-dominant metastatic colorectal cancer. *Dig Liver Dis* 2022; **54**: 857-863 [PMID: 35610167 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2022.04.024]

104 **Lau D**, Kalaitzaki E, Church DN, Pandha H, Tomlinson I, Annels N, Gerlinger M, Sclafani F, Smith G, Begum R, Crux R, Gillbanks A, Wordsworth S, Chau I, Starling N, Cunningham D, Dhillon T. Rationale and design of the POLEM trial: avelumab plus fluoropyrimidine-based chemotherapy as adjuvant treatment for stage III mismatch repair deficient or POLE exonuclease domain mutant colon cancer: a phase III randomised study. *ESMO Open* 2020; **5** [PMID: 32079623 DOI: 10.1136/esmoopen-2019-000638]

105 **Ryman JT**, Meibohm B. Pharmacokinetics of Monoclonal Antibodies. *CPT Pharmacometrics Syst Pharmacol* 2017; **6**: 576-588 [PMID: 28653357 DOI: 10.1002/psp4.12224]

106 **Wang J**, Giragossian C, Hansel S. Analyze impact of tumor-associated kinetics on antibody delivery in solid tumors with a physiologically based pharmacokinetics/pharmacodynamics model. *Eur J Pharm Biopharm* 2021; **168**: 110-121 [PMID: 34478854 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejpb.2021.08.019]

107 **Gawel DR**, Serra-Musach J, Lilja S, Aagesen J, Arenas A, Asking B, Bengnér M, Björkander J, Biggs S, Ernerudh J, Hjortswang H, Karlsson JE, Köpsen M, Lee EJ, Lentini A, Li X, Magnusson M, Martínez-Enguita D, Matussek A, Nestor CE, Schäfer S, Seifert O, Sonmez C, Stjernman H, Tjärnberg A, Wu S, Åkesson K, Shalek AK, Stenmarker M, Zhang H, Gustafsson M, Benson M. A validated single-cell-based strategy to identify diagnostic and therapeutic targets in complex diseases. *Genome Med* 2019; **11**: 47 [PMID: 31358043 DOI: 10.1186/s13073-019-0657-3]

108 **Hu P**, Zhang W, Xin H, Deng G. Single Cell Isolation and Analysis. *Front Cell Dev Biol* 2016; **4**: 116 [PMID: 27826548 DOI: 10.3389/fcell.2016.00116]

109 **Gibney GT**, Weiner LM, Atkins MB. Predictive biomarkers for checkpoint inhibitor-based immunotherapy. *Lancet Oncol* 2016; **17**: e542-e551 [PMID: 27924752 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(16)30406-5]

110 **Dancsok AR**, Gao D, Lee AF, Steigen SE, Blay JY, Thomas DM, Maki RG, Nielsen TO, Demicco EG. Tumor-associated macrophages and macrophage-related immune checkpoint expression in sarcomas. *Oncoimmunology* 2020; **9**: 1747340 [PMID: 32313727 DOI: 10.1080/2162402X.2020.1747340]

111 **Solinas C**, De Silva P, Bron D, Willard-Gallo K, Sangiolo D. Significance of TIM3 expression in cancer: From biology to the clinic. *Semin Oncol* 2019; **46**: 372-379 [PMID: 31733828 DOI: 10.1053/j.seminoncol.2019.08.005]

112 **Olguín JE**, Medina-Andrade I, Molina E, Vázquez A, Pacheco-Fernández T, Saavedra R, Pérez-Plasencia C, Chirino YI, Vaca-Paniagua F, Arias-Romero LE, Gutierrez-Cirlos EB, León-Cabrera SA, Rodriguez-Sosa M, Terrazas LI. Early and Partial Reduction in CD4(+)Foxp3(+) Regulatory T Cells during Colitis-Associated Colon Cancer Induces CD4(+) and CD8(+) T Cell Activation Inhibiting Tumorigenesis. *J Cancer* 2018; **9**: 239-249 [PMID: 29344269 DOI: 10.7150/jca.21336]

113 **Sakuishi K**, Ngiow SF, Sullivan JM, Teng MW, Kuchroo VK, Smyth MJ, Anderson AC. TIM3(+)FOXP3(+) regulatory T cells are tissue-specific promoters of T-cell dysfunction in cancer. *Oncoimmunology* 2013; **2**: e23849 [PMID: 23734331 DOI: 10.4161/onci.23849]

114 **Curigliano G**, Gelderblom H, Mach N, Doi T, Tai D, Forde PM, Sarantopoulos J, Bedard PL, Lin CC, Hodi FS, Wilgenhof S, Santoro A, Sabatos-Peyton CA, Longmire TA, Xyrafas A, Sun H, Gutzwiller S, Manenti L, Naing A. Phase I/Ib Clinical Trial of Sabatolimab, an Anti-TIM-3 Antibody, Alone and in Combination with Spartalizumab, an Anti-PD-1 Antibody, in Advanced Solid Tumors. *Clin Cancer Res* 2021; **27**: 3620-3629 [PMID: 33883177 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-20-4746]

115 **Tian J**, Zhang B, Rui K, Wang S. The Role of GITR/GITRL Interaction in Autoimmune Diseases. *Front Immunol* 2020; **11**: 588682 [PMID: 33163004 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2020.588682]

116 **Geva R**, Voskoboynik M, Dobrenkov K, Mayawala K, Gwo J, Wnek R, Chartash E, Long GV. First-in-human phase 1 study of MK-1248, an anti-glucocorticoid-induced tumor necrosis factor receptor agonist monoclonal antibody, as monotherapy or with pembrolizumab in patients with advanced solid tumors. *Cancer* 2020; **126**: 4926-4935 [PMID: 32809217 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.33133]

117 **Huard B**, Tournier M, Hercend T, Triebel F, Faure F. Lymphocyte-activation gene 3/major histocompatibility complex class II interaction modulates the antigenic response of CD4+ T lymphocytes. *Eur J Immunol* 1994; **24**: 3216-3221 [PMID: 7805750 DOI: 10.1002/eji.1830241246]

118 **de Klerk LK**, Patel AK, Derks S, Pectasides E, Augustin J, Uduman M, Raman N, Akarca FG, McCleary NJ, Cleary JM, Rubinson DA, Clark JW, Fitzpatrick B, Brais LK, Cavanaugh ME, Rode AJ, Jean MG, Lizotte PH, Nazzaro MJ, Severgnini M, Zheng H, Fuchs CS, Enzinger PC, Bass AJ. Phase II study of pembrolizumab in refractory esophageal cancer with correlates of response and survival. *J Immunother Cancer* 2021; **9** [PMID: 34593617 DOI: 10.1136/jitc-2021-002472]

119 **Kim M**, Min YK, Jang J, Park H, Lee S, Lee CH. Single-cell RNA sequencing reveals distinct cellular factors for response to immunotherapy targeting CD73 and PD-1 in colorectal cancer. *J Immunother Cancer* 2021; **9** [PMID: 34253638 DOI: 10.1136/jitc-2021-002503]

120 **Turiello R**, Pinto A, Morello S. CD73: A Promising Biomarker in Cancer Patients. *Front Pharmacol* 2020; **11**: 609931 [PMID: 33364969 DOI: 10.3389/fphar.2020.609931]

121 **Thibaudin M**, Limagne E, Hampe L, Ballot E, Truntzer C, Ghiringhelli F. Targeting PD-L1 and TIGIT could restore intratumoral CD8 T cell function in human colorectal cancer. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2022; **71**: 2549-2563 [PMID: 35292828 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-022-03182-9]

122 **Chauvin JM**, Zarour HM. TIGIT in cancer immunotherapy. *J Immunother Cancer* 2020; **8** [PMID: 32900861 DOI: 10.1136/jitc-2020-000957]

123 **Español-Rego M**, Fernández-Martos C, Elez E, Foguet C, Pedrosa L, Rodríguez N, Ruiz-Casado A, Pineda E, Cid J, Cabezón R, Oliveres H, Lozano M, Ginés A, García-Criado A, Ayuso JR, Pagés M, Cuatrecasas M, Torres F, Thomson T, Cascante M, Benítez-Ribas D, Maurel J. A Phase I-II multicenter trial with Avelumab plus autologous dendritic cell vaccine in pre-treated mismatch repair-proficient (MSS) metastatic colorectal cancer patients; GEMCAD 1602 study. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2022 [PMID: 36083313 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-022-03283-5]

124 **Zhang Z**, Lu M, Qin Y, Gao W, Tao L, Su W, Zhong J. Neoantigen: A New Breakthrough in Tumor Immunotherapy. *Front Immunol* 2021; **12**: 672356 [PMID: 33936118 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2021.672356]

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2023 February 15; 15(2): 268-275

DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.268

ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Serum biomarkers for the differentiation of autoimmune pancreatitis from pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma

Octavio Caba, Carmelo Diéguez-Castillo, Joaquina Martínez-Galán, Irene González-Cebrián, Cristina Jiménez-Luna

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): D
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Masaru T, Hungary; Sun W, China

Received: September 20, 2022
Peer-review started: September 20, 2022
First decision: November 15, 2022
Revised: November 29, 2022
Accepted: January 17, 2023
Article in press: January 17, 2023
Published online: February 15, 2023

Octavio Caba, Cristina Jiménez-Luna, Institute of Biopathology and Regenerative Medicine (IBIMER), University of Granada, Granada 18016, Spain

Octavio Caba, Cristina Jiménez-Luna, Biosanitary Institute of Granada (ibs.GRANADA), 18014 Granada, Spain

Carmelo Diéguez-Castillo, Department of Gastroenterology, San Cecilio University Hospital, Granada 18016, Spain

Joaquina Martínez-Galán, Department of Medical Oncology, Virgen de las Nieves University Hospital, Granada 18014, Spain. Biosanitary Institute of Granada (ibs.GRANADA), 18014 Granada, Spain

Irene González-Cebrián, Department of Digestive Cancer, San Cecilio University Hospital, Granada 18016, Spain

Corresponding author: Carmelo Diéguez-Castillo, MD, PhD, Research Scientist, Department of Gastroenterology, San Cecilio University Hospital, Avenida del Conocimiento, s/n, Granada 18016, Spain. carmelo89dc@gmail.com

Abstract

Autoimmune pancreatitis (AIP), a chronic inflammation caused by the immune system attacking the pancreas, usually presents imaging and clinical features that overlap with those of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC). Serum biomarkers, substances that quantitatively change in sera during disease development, are a promising non-invasive tool with high utility for differentiating between these diseases. In this way, the presence of AIP is currently suspected when serum concentrations of immunoglobulin G4 (IgG4) antibody are elevated. However, this approach has some drawbacks. Notably, IgG4 antibody concentrations are also elevated in sera from some patients with PDAC. This review focuses on the most recent and relevant serum biomarkers proposed to differentiate between AIP and PDAC, evaluating the usefulness of immunoglobulins, autoantibodies, chemokines, and cytokines. The proposed serum biomarkers have proven useful, although most studies had a small sample size, did not examine their presence in patients with PDAC, or did not test them in humans. In addition, current evidence suggests that a single serum biomarker is unlikely to accurately differentiate these diseases and that a set of biomarkers will be needed to achieve adequate specificity and sensitivity, either alone or in

combination with clinical data and/or radiological images.

Key Words: Autoimmune pancreatitis; Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma; Serum; Biomarkers; Differentiation

©The Author(s) 2023. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: The imaging and clinical features of autoimmune pancreatitis commonly overlap with those of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. This study reviews the most recent and relevant serum biomarkers proposed to differentiate between these diseases of the pancreas, including serum immunoglobulins, autoantibodies, chemokines, and cytokines, evaluating their usefulness for this purpose. One of the key conclusions is that a panel of various serum biomarkers appears to be necessary for an accurate differentiation between these diseases, either alone or in combination with clinical data and/or radiological images. Importantly, further research is warranted to assess the usefulness of these promising serum biomarkers in clinical practice

Citation: Caba O, Diéguez-Castillo C, Martínez-Galán J, González-Cebrián I, Jiménez-Luna C. Serum biomarkers for the differentiation of autoimmune pancreatitis from pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2023; 15(2): 268-275
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v15/i2/268.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.268

INTRODUCTION

Autoimmune pancreatitis (AIP) is a rare entity that represents 2%-10% of chronic pancreatitis (CP) cases [1]. Elevated serum concentrations of immunoglobulin (Ig), especially IgG4, have been observed in the majority of AIP patients[2], and Umehara *et al*[3] introduced the concept of IgG4-related disease in 2011, including AIP as one of these disorders. AIP can be classified into types 1 and 2, with more than 90% of cases corresponding to type 1[4]. Type 1 is associated with high serum IgG4 concentrations, unlike type 2[5]. Given the large proportion of cases that are type 1, type 1 AIP is referred to as AIP in this review.

The clinical and radiological characteristics of AIP can mimic those of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC), leading to misdiagnosis and therapeutic errors that increase the morbidity and mortality of patients. This difficulty in differentiating AIP from PDAC has been well documented, with up to 15% of neoplasms being classified as AIP and up to 36% of AIP cases diagnosed as cancer. It should also be borne in mind that AIP, like other forms of CP, increases the risk of PDAC and therefore requires close follow-up[6]. The similarity between AIP and PDAC means that invasive methods must be applied, when possible, to establish the differential diagnosis using histological criteria.

The current diagnostic criteria for AIP, displayed in Table 1, were established in 2011 by consensus among international experts[7], who recognized that AIP has two different histopathological and clinical subtypes, types 1 and 2, as noted above.

Although serum IgG4 antibodies are used for the diagnosis of AIP, elevated IgG4 concentrations are not AIP-specific and are observed in other diseases, including PDAC[8]. In a study of 510 patients, Ghazale *et al*[9] observed increased serum IgG4 in around 10 % of PDAC cases, yielding false positives. In addition, not all patients with AIP have elevated serum IgG4 Levels, resulting in false negatives and an inadequate diagnostic accuracy[10]. Hence, this serological biomarker alone does not define the disease, and its usefulness is more limited in type 2 AIP.

Radiological criteria should also not be used alone, because they can lead to an erroneous differential diagnosis between AIP and PDAC[11]. Current recommendations require an exhaustive study to establish the diagnosis, including histological and morphological criteria and the response of patients to corticosteroid treatment[8]. Although not included in recommendations, clinical characteristics can also help the differential diagnosis of PDAC and the two AIP subtypes. Weight loss and anorexia are more frequently observed in PDAC, while other organs are more commonly involved in AIP[12]. Ultrasound endoscopy plays a key role in the diagnosis, allowing the morphology to be assessed and a core needle biopsy to be obtained before the proposal of a percutaneous biopsy or videolaparoscopy[13].

Hence, new serological biomarkers other than IgG4 antibodies are needed for the differential diagnosis in order to rule out malignancy and establish the appropriate treatment, avoiding unnecessary surgical resection and the erroneous treatment of patients. Some authors have increased the diagnostic potential of IgG4 by combining it with other serum biomarkers. Chang *et al*[14] increased the diagnostic accuracy to differentiate between AIP and PDAC by combining IgG4 and carbohydrate antigen 19-9 (CA 19-9) levels, with cutoff values of > 140 mg/dL and < 37 U/mL, respectively, obtaining

Table 1 Diagnostic criteria for autoimmune pancreatitis

Radiology	Serology	Histology	Response to steroid
Parenchyma:Diffuse enlargement with enhancement	IgG4 > 2 x upper limit of normal value	At least three	< 2 wk radiologically demonstrable resolution or marked improvement pancreatic/extrapancreatic manifestations
Duct: > 1/3 length of the main pancreatic duct		Periductal lymphoplasmacytic infiltrate without granulocytic infiltration	
Atypical: Segmental/focal narrowing with duct < 5 mm		Storiform fibrosis	
Other organ involvement: Bile duct: Segmental/multiple proximal or distal stricture		Obliterative phlebitis	
Retroperitoneal fibrosis		> 10 IgG4-positive cells/high power field	
Salivary/lachrymal glands: Symmetrically enlarged			
Renal involvement			

IgG4: Immunoglobulin G4.

a sensitivity of 64%, specificity of 92%, and diagnostic accuracy of 82 %. When the authors increased the cutoff to 280 mg/mL for IgG4 and 85 U/mL for CA 19-9, they reported a higher diagnostic accuracy of 86.9%. These results differ from those described by van Heerde *et al*[15], who considered less strict cutoff levels (1 g/L for IgG4 and 74 U/mL for CA 19-9) and obtained a sensitivity of 94 % and specificity of 100 %. These discrepancies highlight the need to study large samples of patients with homogeneous clinical characteristics to ensure the reproducibility of data on diagnostic accuracy. However, the search for new biomarkers is hampered by the fact that AIP is a rare entity, limiting sample sizes. In this review, we summarize and discuss the progress made in the search for new serum biomarkers for the diagnosis of AIP.

CLASSIC SEROLOGICAL MARKERS IN AIP AND PDAC

IgG4

IgG4 is the only serological biomarker currently included in diagnostic criteria for AIP, specifically type 1 AIP[7]. Values above 135-140 mg/dL were previously established as the cut-off point for the diagnosis, varying in sensitivity and specificity according to the population under study[16].

Absolute values are not taken into account in the diagnosis because of the interlaboratory variability in normal values, and patients are considered positive when their IgG4 concentrations are two-fold higher than the upper limit of normality[17]. European guidelines on IgG4 disease published in 2020 describe the IgG4 concentration has having diagnostic value when concentrations are four-fold higher than the upper limit of normality, which is only observed in a minority of patients[18]. Indeed, when jaundice secondary to a pancreatic mass is present, only a value 92-fold higher than the upper limit of normality is considered strongly suggestive of AIP[7].

Besides its elevation in PDAC patients[8,19], the usefulness of this serum biomarker is also reduced by its lack of specificity and sensitivity to differentiate between primary sclerosing cholangitis and cholangiocarcinoma, which can increase the false positive rate by up to 40%[20]. Serum IgG4 is also not useful for the diagnosis of type 2 AIP associated with inflammatory bowel disease[16] and must be accompanied at least by suggestive radiological findings to have diagnostic value in AIP[21]. Finally, normal IgG4 concentrations have been reported in up to 20% of AIP patients, even in the active phase [22].

CA 19-9

CA 19-9 is a tumor marker that is detectable in serum and widely used in the clinical management of PDAC[23]. CA 19-9 is elevated in the majority of PDAC patients and is useful for monitoring purposes; however, this biomarker is not useful for the early diagnosis of PDAC detection because of the substantial number of false positives and negatives[24].

Furthermore, CA 19-9 is commonly elevated in AIP patients, almost 40% of whom have concentrations above 100 U/mL[15]. In this way, individual measurements of either CA 19-9 or IgG4 are unable to distinguish AIP from PDAC[25].

The numerous limitations of CA 19-9 include the influence on its concentrations of the presence of jaundice and cholangitis, among many other factors. Nevertheless, it is widely used because it is accessible and cheap, and the sensitivity and specificity can be improved by its combination with other clinical, serological, histological and/or morphological criteria[26].

Hence, the combination of various serological biomarkers appears necessary to distinguish between AIP and PDAC. In this line, Yan *et al*[27] proposed combining CA 19-9 with globulin, eosinophils, and hemoglobin for the differential diagnosis. Elevated concentrations of eosinophils and globulin together with reduced concentrations of Hb and CA 19-9 were found to identify patients with AIP with a sensitivity of 92% and specificity of 79%, a relatively high diagnostic value.

NOVEL SERUM BIOMARKERS PROPOSED FOR THE DIFFERENTIATION OF AIP FROM PDAC

Igs

IgG1 and IgG2 have been studied in relation to AIP. IgG1 has been proposed as a diagnostic marker for AIP and IgG4-associated disease due to its involvement in the immunogenesis of the disease[28]. However, IgG2 concentrations were lowest in AIP and highest in IgG4-associated disease with orbital involvement[29].

There are different glycoforms of IgG subclasses, and different patterns of glycosylation have been described between patients with AIP and PDAC. Quantitative analysis of the IgG glycosylation profile may therefore allow the differential diagnosis between these entities to be established with high precision[30].

In addition, the proportion of different types of Igs has also shown some promise as a biomarker. An increase in IgG and inversely proportional reduction in IgA and IgM have been reported in AIP and IgG4-associated disease. In addition, elevated IgE has been described as having diagnostic and prognostic value for disease relapse in both entities[31].

Autoantibodies

Anti-annexin A11, anti-laminin 511-E8, and anti-galectin-3 autoantibodies have been implicated in the pathogenesis of AIP over recent years. Hubers *et al*[32], proposed annexin 11, a calcium-dependent phospholipid-binding protein, as an autoantigen in AIP. They showed that annexin A11-specific IgG4 competitively inhibited the pathogenic binding of annexin A11-specific IgG1 to shared epitopes, suggesting that the IgG1-mediated pro-inflammatory response could be downregulated by IgG4. Laminin 511-E8 is a truncated form of laminin 511, which is part of the extracellular matrix of the pancreas. Shiokawa *et al*[33] detected laminin 511-E8 in 51% of AIP patients (n = 51) compared with 1.6% of controls (n = 122) and suggested that it is an autoantigen in this disease. Galectin-3, which has been associated with fibrotic disorders, has also been proposed as a candidate biomarker[34]. In addition, anti-trypsinogen autoantibodies have been observed in sera from AIP patients and related to the loss of acinar cells[35].

Autoantibodies to amylase-2A and heat-shock protein 10 (HSP10) were previously found to be present not only in AIP but also in fulminant type 1 diabetes. Amylase-2A autoantibodies have not been detected in toxic CP or PDAC, while anti-HSP10 antibodies have been reported in a small percentage of patients[36,37].

Anti-plasminogen-binding protein autoantibodies have been observed in almost 95% of AIP patients (n = 35). Interestingly, these antibodies were presented by IgG4-negative patients with AIP but not by IgG4-positive patients with type 2 AIP[38]. Anti-pancreatic secretory trypsin inhibitor has also been suggested as a potential AIP-specific antibody, although it was detected in serum from less than half of AIP patients[39].

Other proposed autoantibodies have been those against carbonic anhydrase II, but they are not AIP-specific and are observed at high levels in other disorders such as Sjögren's syndrome[40]. In the same way, high concentrations of anti-lactoferrin antibodies have been described in immune diseases other than AIP such as ulcerative colitis[41], and anti-prohibitin antibodies are detectable not only in AIP patients (73.5%, n = 34) but also in patients with Mikulicz's disease (53%, n = 15%) or retroperitoneal fibrosis (54%, n = 11)[42].

Felix *et al*[43], studied the spectrum of autoantibodies in patients with AIP (n = 14 with type 1 and 11 with type 2) or PDAC (n = 26) and healthy controls (n = 22), showing elevated titers of both novel and previously reported antibodies against a variety of autoantigens, including carboxypeptidase A1 precursor, procarboxypeptidase A2, trypsin-1-preproprotein, and vimentin, among others. The authors found 68 autoantigens in AIP, 26 in PDAC and 21 in both diseases. The researchers selected 13 autoantibodies with potential to discriminate between the two types of AIP and also proposed antitransaldolase antibody as a biomarker to differentiate between type 2 AIP and PDAC.

Chemokines and cytokines

The Th2 immune response is a prominent feature of AIP, and some Th2 chemokines might therefore be useful as AIP biomarkers. Increased serum concentrations of C-C Motif Chemokine Ligand 17 have been reported in patients with IgG4-related disease, but this biomarker has not been explored in AIP [44].

Increased expressions of C-X-C motif chemokine ligand (CXCL) 9 and CXCL10 were recently demonstrated in an experimental model of AIP, but data on their concentrations in patients are not yet available[45].

Th2 cytokines have also been proposed as AIP biomarkers. Thus, interleukin (IL)-5 was found to be upregulated in patients with IgG4-related sclerosing cholangitis and suggested as a biomarker of AIP [46].

Serum concentrations of interferon (IFN)-alpha and IL-33 were found to be higher in patients with AIP than in those with chronic alcoholic pancreatitis or healthy controls. These concentrations were positively correlated with the serum concentrations of IgG4 antibodies. In addition, the observation of decreased IFN-alpha and IL-33 after treatment with corticosteroids, unlike IgG4 concentrations, suggests that they may be useful for following the response to treatment[47].

In a very interesting study, Ghassem-Zadeh *et al*[48] investigated the serum cytokine profile of patients with AIP (n = 29), CP (n = 17), and PDAC (n = 27) and its capacity to discriminate AIP from the other conditions. The authors found that serum levels of IL-1 beta, IL-7, IL-13, and granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF) were higher in patients with AIP *vs* PDAC. The best diagnostic utility to differentiate AIP from PDAC was shown by IL-7 alone [area under the curve (AUC) = 0.780], obtaining a marginal added value when it was combined with G-CSF (AUC = 0.782). In the same line, G-CSF alone evidenced a better capacity to identify patients with CP from those with AIP (AUC = 0.804). In addition, the expression of tumor necrosis factor was found to be higher in PDAC tissue lysates than in either type of AIP.

Other cytokines suggested as potential AIP biomarkers include B cell-activating factor and proliferation-inducing ligand, which were found to be higher in patients with AIP than in healthy controls [49]. A decrease in these cytokines has also been observed after treatment with corticosteroids[45].

CONCLUSION

AIP and PDAC often course with similar symptoms, and biomarkers that can differentiate between them are needed for early initiation of the appropriate clinical action protocol. If this milestone is reached, it will be possible to avoid pancreatic resection in patients with AIP and incorrect steroid treatment in patients with PDAC.

Serum markers may be useful in patients with the presence of compatible symptoms and radiological findings, which have a low positive predictive value. Thus, some symptoms, such as abdominal pain and diabetes, may be present in both entities.

In addition, radiological criteria for suspicion of AIP are frequently not all present to establish a given diagnosis. Given the improved safety and performance of histological sampling of the pancreas by endosonography, this procedure should be added in cases of diagnostic doubt. However, the absence of malignancy does not definitively rule out neoplasia and, in the absence of histological criteria for a definitive AIP diagnosis, active suspicion of neoplasia should be maintained. In this context, the combination of serum biomarkers with all these tests can have a high qualitative and quantitative value to achieve a reliable diagnosis in these patients. This review describes serological biomarkers proposed for this purpose.

Increased serum concentrations of IgG4 antibody are a feature of AIP, but there are two main drawbacks to its usefulness as optimal AIP biomarker: (1) It is elevated in PDAC patients; and (2) It is not increased in a fraction of AIP patients. These problems have been addressed by numerous studies of new biomarkers for AIP diagnostics. These include biomarkers related to AIP immunopathogenesis, such as certain cytokines and chemokines, which have shown usefulness in research involving a small number of patients, although most studies did not examine the presence of these biomarkers in patients with PDAC. Some potential biomarkers have also been identified in experimental models but need to be tested in humans.

Another aspect to highlight is that, given the nature of these diseases, the use of a single serum biomarker is unlikely to accurately differentiate between AIP and PDAC. As observed in this study, almost all authors propose the utilization of a set of biomarkers to achieve high specificity and sensitivity for their reliable differentiation.

Translational application in this field will be achieved over the medium term, but further research is required on the numerous biomarkers proposed to date, recruiting larger samples of patients with AIP and assessing their presence in patients with PDAC. This is needed to verify their true specificity and to analyze their possible application in combination with clinical symptoms and/or radiological tests to achieve accurate differentiation between AIP and PDAC.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors are grateful to Layla and Richard Davies for assistance with the English version.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Caba O designed the overall concept and outline of the manuscript; Diéguez-Castillo C, Martí nez-Galán J, and González-Cebrián I contributed to the discussion, and carried out the design of the manuscript; Dié guez-Castillo C and Jiménez-Luna C contributed to the writing and editing of the manuscript and review of the literature.

Supported by Fondos Feder, No. A-CTS-436-UGR20.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All the authors report no relevant conflicts of interest for this article.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: Spain

ORCID number: Octavio Caba 0000-0003-3426-8294; Carmelo Diéguez-Castillo 0000-0002-4304-5853; Joaquina Martínez-Galán 0000-0002-6814-2748; Cristina Jimenez-Luna 0000-0002-2395-1728.

Corresponding Author's Membership in Professional Societies: Sociedad Española De Patologia Digestiva.

S-Editor: Liu GL
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Liu GL

REFERENCES

1 **Lopes Vendrami C**, Shin JS, Hammond NA, Kothari K, Mittal PK, Miller FH. Differentiation of focal autoimmune pancreatitis from pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *Abdom Radiol (NY)* 2020; **45**: 1371-1386 [PMID: 31493022 DOI: 10.1007/s00261-019-02210-0]
2 **Hamano H**, Kawa S, Horiuchi A, Unno H, Furuya N, Akamatsu T, Fukushima M, Nikaido T, Nakayama K, Usuda N, Kiyosawa K. High serum IgG4 concentrations in patients with sclerosing pancreatitis. *N Engl J Med* 2001; **344**: 732-738 [PMID: 11236777 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM200103083441005]
3 **Umehara H**, Okazaki K, Masaki Y, Kawano M, Yamamoto M, Saeki T, Matsui S, Yoshino T, Nakamura S, Kawa S, Hamano H, Kamisawa T, Shimosegawa T, Shimatsu A, Ito T, Notohara K, Sumida T, Tanaka Y, Mimori T, Chiba T, Mishima M, Hibi T, Tsubouchi H, Inui K, Ohara H. Comprehensive diagnostic criteria for IgG4-related disease (IgG4-RD), 2011. *Mod Rheumatol* 2012; **22**: 21-30 [PMID: 22218969 DOI: 10.1007/s10165-011-0571-z]
4 **Kamisawa T**, Chari ST, Lerch MM, Kim MH, Gress TM, Shimosegawa T. Recent advances in autoimmune pancreatitis: type 1 and type 2. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 1373-1380 [PMID: 23749606 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-304224]
5 **Chari ST**, Kloeppel G, Zhang L, Notohara K, Lerch MM, Shimosegawa T. Histopathologic and clinical subtypes of autoimmune pancreatitis: the honolulu consensus document. *Pancreatology* 2010; **10**: 664-672 [PMID: 21242705 DOI: 10.1159/000318809]
6 **Dickerson LD**, Farooq A, Bano F, Kleeff J, Baron R, Raraty M, Ghaneh P, Sutton R, Whelan P, Campbell F, Healey P, Neoptolemos JP, Yip VS. Differentiation of Autoimmune Pancreatitis from Pancreatic Cancer Remains Challenging. *World J Surg* 2019; **43**: 1604-1611 [PMID: 30815742 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-019-04928-w]
7 **Shimosegawa T**, Chari ST, Frulloni L, Kamisawa T, Kawa S, Mino-Kenudson M, Kim MH, Klöppel G, Lerch MM, Löhr M, Notohara K, Okazaki K, Schneider A, Zhang L; International Association of Pancreatology. International consensus diagnostic criteria for autoimmune pancreatitis: guidelines of the International Association of Pancreatology. *Pancreas* 2011; **40**: 352-358 [PMID: 21412117 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0b013e3182142fd2]
8 **Umehara H**, Okazaki K, Nakamura T, Satoh-Nakamura T, Nakajima A, Kawano M, Mimori T, Chiba T. Current approach to the diagnosis of IgG4-related disease - Combination of comprehensive diagnostic and organ-specific criteria. *Mod Rheumatol* 2017; **27**: 381-391 [PMID: 28165852 DOI: 10.1080/14397595.2017.1290911]
9 **Ghazale A**, Chari ST, Smyrk TC, Levy MJ, Topazian MD, Takahashi N, Clain JE, Pearson RK, Pelaez-Luna M, Petersen BT, Vege SS, Farnell MB. Value of serum IgG4 in the diagnosis of autoimmune pancreatitis and in distinguishing it from pancreatic cancer. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 1646-1653 [PMID: 17555461 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2007.01264.x]
10 **Liu B**, Tang N, Yao Y, Li H, Xu L, Zhou B, Liu B. Steroid treatment response combined with serological mark in differentiating type-1 autoimmune pancreatitis from pancreatic cancer. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2022; **101**: e31660 [PMID: 36397434 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000031660]

11 **Ha J**, Choi SH, Byun JH, Kim KW, Kim SY, Kim JH, Kim HJ. Meta-analysis of CT and MRI for differentiation of autoimmune pancreatitis from pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *Eur Radiol* 2021; **31**: 3427-3438 [PMID: 33146798 DOI: 10.1007/s00330-020-07416-1]

12 **Ardila-Suarez O**, Abril A, Gómez-Puerta JA. IgG4-related disease: A concise review of the current literature. *Reumatol Clin* 2017; **13**: 160-166 [PMID: 27329319 DOI: 10.1016/j.reuma.2016.05.009]

13 **Baenas DF**, Miretti VS, Caeiro F, Paira S. Differential diagnosis between pancreatic involvement in IgG4-related disease and pancreatic cancer. *Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2021; **44**: 144-155 [PMID: 32718841 DOI: 10.1016/j.gastrohep.2020.05.019]

14 **Chang MC**, Liang PC, Jan S, Yang CY, Tien YW, Wei SC, Wong JM, Chang YT. Increase diagnostic accuracy in differentiating focal type autoimmune pancreatitis from pancreatic cancer with combined serum IgG4 and CA19-9 levels. *Pancreatology* 2014; **14**: 366-372 [PMID: 25278306 DOI: 10.1016/j.pan.2014.07.010]

15 **van Heerde MJ**, Buijs J, Hansen BE, de Waart M, van Eijck CH, Kazemier G, Pek CJ, Poley JW, Bruno MJ, Kuipers EJ, van Buuren HR. Serum level of Ca 19-9 increases ability of IgG4 test to distinguish patients with autoimmune pancreatitis from those with pancreatic carcinoma. *Dig Dis Sci* 2014; **59**: 1322-1329 [PMID: 24385012 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-013-3004-3]

16 **Yokode M**, Shiokawa M, Kodama Y. Review of Diagnostic Biomarkers in Autoimmune Pancreatitis: Where Are We Now? *Diagnostics (Basel)* 2021; **11** [PMID: 33923064 DOI: 10.3390/diagnostics11050770]

17 **Hara A**, Watanabe T, Minaga K, Yoshikawa T, Kamata K, Kudo M. Biomarkers in autoimmune pancreatitis and immunoglobulin G4-related disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 2257-2269 [PMID: 34040320 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i19.2257]

18 **Löhr JM**, Beuers U, Vujasinovic M, Alvaro D, Frøkjær JB, Buttgereit F, Capurso G, Culver EL, de-Madaria E, Della-Torre E, Detlefsen S, Dominguez-Muñoz E, Czubkowski P, Ewald N, Frulloni L, Gubergrits N, Duman DG, Hackert T, Iglesias-Garcia J, Kartalis N, Laghi A, Lammert F, Lindgren F, Okhlobystin A, Oracz G, Parniczky A, Mucelli RMP, Rebours V, Rosendahl J, Schleinitz N, Schneider A, van Bommel EF, Verbeke CS, Vullierme MP, Witt H; UEG guideline working group. European Guideline on IgG4-related digestive disease - UEG and SGF evidence-based recommendations. *United European Gastroenterol J* 2020; **8**: 637-666 [PMID: 32552502 DOI: 10.1177/2050640620934911]

19 **Pak LM**, Schattner MA, Balachandran V, D'Angelica MI, DeMatteo RP, Kingham TP, Jarnagin WR, Allen PJ. The clinical utility of immunoglobulin G4 in the evaluation of autoimmune pancreatitis and pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *HPB (Oxford)* 2018; **20**: 182-187 [PMID: 29033025 DOI: 10.1016/j.hpb.2017.09.001]

20 **Martín-Nares E**, Hernández-Molina G, Baenas DF, Paira S. IgG4-Related Disease: Mimickers and Diagnostic Pitfalls. *J Clin Rheumatol* 2022; **28**: e596-e604 [PMID: 34538846 DOI: 10.1097/RHU.0000000000001787]

21 **Löhr JM**, Vujasinovic M, Rosendahl J, Stone JH, Beuers U. IgG4-related diseases of the digestive tract. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2022; **19**: 185-197 [PMID: 34750548 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-021-00529-y]

22 **Paik WH**, Ryu JK, Park JM, Song BJ, Park JK, Kim YT, Lee K. Clinical and pathological differences between serum immunoglobulin G4-positive and -negative type 1 autoimmune pancreatitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 4031-4038 [PMID: 23840149 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i25.4031]

23 **O'Neill RS**, Stoita A. Biomarkers in the diagnosis of pancreatic cancer: Are we closer to finding the golden ticket? *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 4045-4087 [PMID: 34326612 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i26.4045]

24 **Zhang L**, Sanagapalli S, Stoita A. Challenges in diagnosis of pancreatic cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2018; **24**: 2047-2060 [PMID: 29785074 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v24.i19.2047]

25 **Dugic A**, Verdejo Gil C, Mellenthin C, Vujasinovic M, Löhr JM, Mühldorfer S. The Clinical Utility of Soluble Serum Biomarkers in Autoimmune Pancreatitis: A Systematic Review. *Biomedicines* 2022; **10** [PMID: 35884816 DOI: 10.3390/biomedicines10071511]

26 **Chang JC**, Kundranda M. Novel Diagnostic and Predictive Biomarkers in Pancreatic Adenocarcinoma. *Int J Mol Sci* 2017; **18** [PMID: 28335509 DOI: 10.3390/ijms18030667]

27 **Yan T**, Ke Y, Chen Y, Xu C, Yu C, Li Y. Serological characteristics of autoimmune pancreatitis and its differential diagnosis from pancreatic cancer by using a combination of carbohydrate antigen 19-9, globulin, eosinophils and hemoglobin. *PLoS One* 2017; **12**: e0174735 [PMID: 28369140 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0174735]

28 **Shiokawa M**, Kodama Y, Kuriyama K, Yoshimura K, Tomono T, Morita T, Kakiuchi N, Matsumori T, Mima A, Nishikawa Y, Ueda T, Tsuda M, Yamauchi Y, Minami R, Sakuma Y, Ota Y, Maruno T, Kurita A, Sawai Y, Tsuji Y, Uza N, Matsumura K, Watanabe T, Notohara K, Tsuruyama T, Seno H, Chiba T. Pathogenicity of IgG in patients with IgG4-related disease. *Gut* 2016; **65**: 1322-1332 [PMID: 26964842 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2015-310336]

29 **Chan ASY**, Mudhar H, Shen SY, Lang SS, Fernando M, Hilmy MH, Guppy NJ, Rennie I, Dunkley L, Al Jajeh I. Serum IgG2 and tissue IgG2 plasma cell elevation in orbital IgG4-related disease (IgG4-RD): Potential use in IgG4-RD assessment. *Br J Ophthalmol* 2017; **101**: 1576-1582 [PMID: 28351925 DOI: 10.1136/bjophthalmol-2017-310148]

30 **Shih HC**, Chang MC, Chen CH, Tsai IL, Wang SY, Kuo YP, Chang YT. High accuracy differentiating autoimmune pancreatitis from pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma by immunoglobulin G glycosylation. *Clin Proteomics* 2019; **16**: 1 [PMID: 30622446 DOI: 10.1186/s12014-018-9221-1]

31 **Culver EL**, Sadler R, Bateman AC, Makuch M, Cargill T, Ferry B, Aalberse R, Barnes E, Rispens T. Increases in IgE, Eosinophils, and Mast Cells Can be Used in Diagnosis and to Predict Relapse of IgG4-Related Disease. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2017; **15**: 1444-1452.e6 [PMID: 28223204 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2017.02.007]

32 **Hubers LM**, Vos H, Schuurman AR, Erken R, Oude Elferink RP, Burgering B, van de Graaf SFJ, Beuers U. Annexin A11 is targeted by IgG4 and IgG1 autoantibodies in IgG4-related disease. *Gut* 2018; **67**: 728-735 [PMID: 28765476 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2017-314548]

33 **Shiokawa M**, Kodama Y, Sekiguchi K, Kuwada T, Tomono T, Kuriyama K, Yamazaki H, Morita T, Marui S, Sogabe Y, Kakiuchi N, Matsumori T, Mima A, Nishikawa Y, Ueda T, Tsuda M, Yamauchi Y, Sakuma Y, Maruno T, Uza N, Tsuruyama T, Mimori T, Seno H, Chiba T. Laminin 511 is a target antigen in autoimmune pancreatitis. *Sci Transl Med* 2018; **10** [PMID: 30089633 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aaq0997]

34 **Perugino CA**, AlSalem SB, Mattoo H, Della-Torre E, Mahajan V, Ganesh G, Allard-Chamard H, Wallace Z, Montesi SB, Kreuzer J, Haas W, Stone JH, Pillai S. Identification of galectin-3 as an autoantigen in patients with IgG(4)-related disease.

J Allergy Clin Immunol 2019; **143**: 736-745.e6 [PMID: 29852256 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaci.2018.05.011]

35 **Löhr JM**, Faissner R, Koczan D, Bewerunge P, Bassi C, Brors B, Eils R, Frulloni L, Funk A, Halangk W, Jesenofsky R, Kaderali L, Kleeff J, Krüger B, Lerch MM, Lösel R, Magnani M, Neumaier M, Nittka S, Sahin-Tóth M, Sänger J, Serafini S, Schnölzer M, Thierse HJ, Wandschneider S, Zamboni G, Klöppel G. Autoantibodies against the exocrine pancreas in autoimmune pancreatitis: gene and protein expression profiling and immunoassays identify pancreatic enzymes as a major target of the inflammatory process. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 2060-2071 [PMID: 20407433 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2010.141]

36 **Endo T**, Takizawa S, Tanaka S, Takahashi M, Fujii H, Kamisawa T, Kobayashi T. Amylase alpha-2A autoantibodies: novel marker of autoimmune pancreatitis and fulminant type 1 diabetes. *Diabetes* 2009; **58**: 732-737 [PMID: 19001184 DOI: 10.2337/db08-0493]

37 **Takizawa S**, Endo T, Wanjia X, Tanaka S, Takahashi M, Kobayashi T. HSP 10 is a new autoantigen in both autoimmune pancreatitis and fulminant type 1 diabetes. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2009; **386**: 192-196 [PMID: 19520060 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2009.06.009]

38 **Detlefsen S**, de Vos JD, Tanassi JT, Heegaard NHH, Fristrup C, Schaffalitzky de Muckadell OB. Value of anti-plasminogen binding peptide, anti-carbonic anhydrase II, immunoglobulin G4, and other serological markers for the differentiation of autoimmune pancreatitis and pancreatic cancer. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2018; **97**: e11641 [PMID: 30075546 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000011641]

39 **Sah RP**, Chari ST. Serologic issues in IgG4-related systemic disease and autoimmune pancreatitis. *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 2011; **23**: 108-113 [PMID: 21124093 DOI: 10.1097/BOR.0b013e3283413469]

40 **Pertovaara M**, Bootorabi F, Kuuslahti M, Pasternack A, Parkkila S. Novel carbonic anhydrase autoantibodies and renal manifestations in patients with primary Sjogren's syndrome. *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 2011; **50**: 1453-1457 [PMID: 21427176 DOI: 10.1093/rheumatology/ker118]

41 **Okazaki K**, Uchida K, Ohana M, Nakase H, Uose S, Inai M, Matsushima Y, Katamura K, Ohmori K, Chiba T. Autoimmune-related pancreatitis is associated with autoantibodies and a Th1/Th2-type cellular immune response. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **118**: 573-581 [PMID: 10702209 DOI: 10.1016/s0016-5085(00)70264-2]

42 **Du H**, Shi L, Chen P, Yang W, Xun Y, Yang C, Zhao L, Zhou Y, Chen G. Prohibitin Is Involved in Patients with IgG4 Related Disease. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0125331 [PMID: 25932630 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0125331]

43 **Felix K**, Hauck O, Schnölzer M, Kempf T, Warnken U, Schneider K, Bergmann F, Fritz S, Werner J. Identification of Novel Serum Autoantibodies for Differential Diagnosis of Autoimmune Pancreatitis and Pancreatic Ductal Adenocarcinoma. *Pancreas* 2016; **45**: 1309-1319 [PMID: 27623556 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0000000000000647]

44 **Umeda M**, Origuchi T, Kawashiri SY, Koga T, Ichinose K, Furukawa K, Sato T, Tsuji S, Endo Y, Takatani A, Shimizu T, Fukui S, Iwamoto N, Igawa T, Tamai M, Nakamura H, Kawakami A. Thymus and Activation-regulated Chemokine as a Biomarker for IgG4-related Disease. *Sci Rep* 2020; **10**: 6010 [PMID: 32265499 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-020-62941-9]

45 **Arai Y**, Yamashita K, Kuriyama K, Shiokawa M, Kodama Y, Sakurai T, Mizugishi K, Uchida K, Kadowaki N, Takaori-Kondo A, Kudo M, Okazaki K, Strober W, Chiba T, Watanabe T. Plasmacytoid Dendritic Cell Activation and IFN-α Production Are Prominent Features of Murine Autoimmune Pancreatitis and Human IgG4-Related Autoimmune Pancreatitis. *J Immunol* 2015; **195**: 3033-3044 [PMID: 26297761 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1500971]

46 **Yamamoto M**, Takano K, Kamekura R, Suzuki C, Ichimiya S, Himi T, Nakase H, Takahashi H. Stage classification of IgG4-related dacryoadenitis and sialadenitis by the serum cytokine environment. *Mod Rheumatol* 2018; **28**: 1004-1008 [PMID: 29385874 DOI: 10.1080/14397595.2018.1436029]

47 **Minaga K**, Watanabe T, Hara A, Kamata K, Omoto S, Nakai A, Otsuka Y, Sekai I, Yoshikawa T, Yamao K, Takenaka M, Chiba Y, Kudo M. Identification of serum IFN-α and IL-33 as novel biomarkers for type 1 autoimmune pancreatitis and IgG4-related disease. *Sci Rep* 2020; **10**: 14879 [PMID: 32938972 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-020-71848-4]

48 **Ghassem-Zadeh S**, Gaida MM, Szanyi S, Acha-Orbea H, Frossard JL, Hinz U, Hackert T, Strobel O, Felix K. Distinct pathophysiological cytokine profiles for discrimination between autoimmune pancreatitis, chronic pancreatitis, and pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *J Transl Med* 2017; **15**: 126 [PMID: 28578701 DOI: 10.1186/s12967-017-1227-3]

49 **Kiyama K**, Kawabata D, Hosono Y, Kitagori K, Yukawa N, Yoshifuji H, Omura K, Fujii T, Mimori T. Serum BAFF and APRIL levels in patients with IgG4-related disease and their clinical significance. *Arthritis Res Ther* 2012; **14**: R86 [PMID: 22531553 DOI: 10.1186/ar3810]

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2023 February 15; 15(2): 276-285

DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.276

ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Evaluation of polygenic risk score for risk prediction of gastric cancer

Xiao-Yu Wang, Li-Li Wang, Lin Xu, Shu-Zhen Liang, Meng-Chao Yu, Qiu-Yue Zhang, Quan-Jiang Dong

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Kawabata H, Japan; Yuan XX, China

Received: November 18, 2022
Peer-review started: November 18, 2022
First decision: January 3, 2023
Revised: January 11, 2023
Accepted: February 2, 2023
Article in press: February 2, 2023
Published online: February 15, 2023

Xiao-Yu Wang, Li-Li Wang, Lin Xu, Shu-Zhen Liang, Meng-Chao Yu, Quan-Jiang Dong, Central Laboratories and Department of Gastroenterology, Qingdao Municipal Hospital, Qingdao University, Qingdao 266071, Shandong Province, China

Qiu-Yue Zhang, Department of Clinical Laboratory, the Eighth Medical Center of the General Hospital of the People's Liberation Army, Beijing 100000, China

Corresponding author: Quan-Jiang Dong, MD, PhD, Chief Doctor, Professor, Central Laboratories and Department of Gastroenterology, Qingdao Municipal Hospital, Qingdao University, No. 5 Donghai Middle Road, Qingdao 266071, Shandong Province, China. allyking114@126.com

Abstract

Genetic variations are associated with individual susceptibility to gastric cancer. Recently, polygenic risk score (PRS) models have been established based on genetic variants to predict the risk of gastric cancer. To assess the accuracy of current PRS models in the risk prediction, a systematic review was conducted. A total of eight eligible studies consisted of 544842 participants were included for evaluation of the performance of PRS models. The overall accuracy was moderate with Area under the curve values ranging from 0.5600 to 0.7823. Incorporation of epidemiological factors or *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) status increased the accuracy for risk prediction, while selection of single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) and number of SNPs appeared to have little impact on the model performance. To further improve the accuracy of PRS models for risk prediction of gastric cancer, we summarized the association between gastric cancer risk and *H. pylori* genomic variations, cancer associated bacteria members in the gastric microbiome, discussed the potentials for performance improvement of PRS models with these microbial factors. Future studies on comprehensive PRS models established with human SNPs, epidemiological factors and microbial factors are indicated.

Key Words: Polygenic risk scores; Gastric cancer; *Helicobacter pylori*; Gastric microbiome

©The Author(s) 2023. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: A systematic review was conducted to evaluate current polygenic risk score (PRS) models in gastric cancer risk prediction. Our study showed that PRS models had the potential to predict the risk of gastric cancer with a moderate accuracy. The prediction models' performance could be improved after incorporating epidemiological factors or *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) status. The potential of *H. pylori* genomic variations and members of the gastric microbiome were discussed as candidates for gastric cancer prediction models.

Citation: Wang XY, Wang LL, Xu L, Liang SZ, Yu MC, Zhang QY, Dong QJ. Evaluation of polygenic risk score for risk prediction of gastric cancer. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2023; 15(2): 276-285
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v15/i2/276.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.276

INTRODUCTION

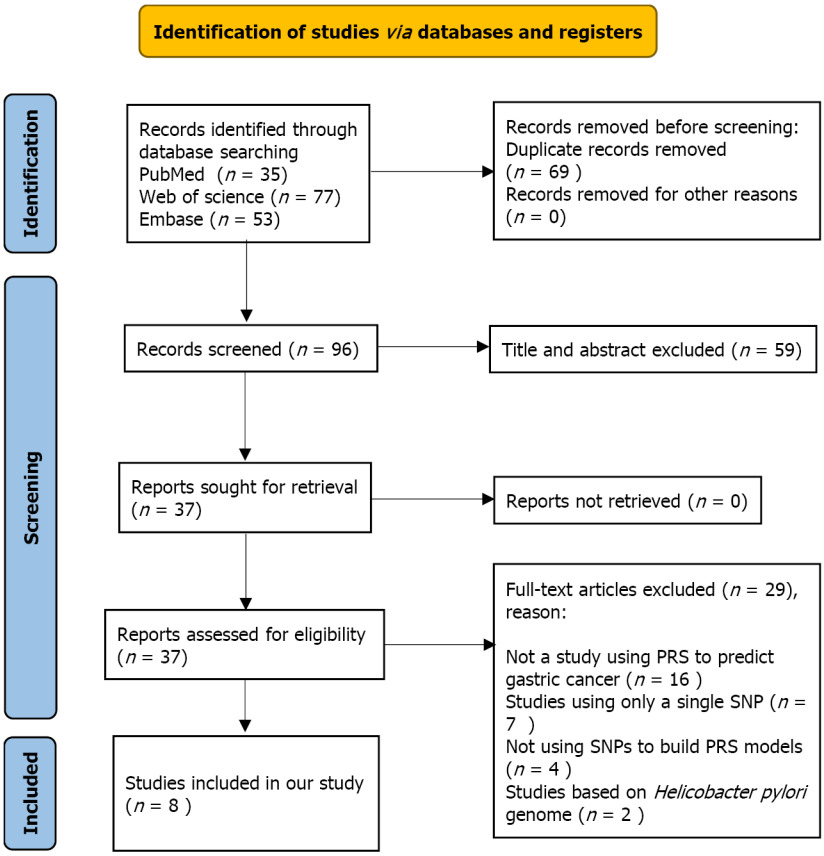
Gastric cancer (GC) is the fourth most commonly diagnosed type of cancer worldwide and the second leading cause of cancer-related death[1]. According to the latest cancer statistics, there were approximately 26380 new gastric cancer cases and 11090 deaths in the United States in 2022[2]. The occurrence of gastric cancer results from a combination of risk factors, including host genetic factors and *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection[3,4]. Genetic variations play an important role in the occurrence and progression of gastric cancer[5,6]. Genome-wide association studies have identified many single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) in the human genome that are involved in the development of gastric cancer. *H. pylori* infection affects approximately half of the world's population. The pathogen is considered a definite carcinogen of gastric cancer[7]. Epidemiological studies have revealed that age, sex, alcohol consumption and smoking are risk factors for gastric cancer[8].

To prevent the development of gastric cancer, it is important to identify individuals at high risk for cancer and apply intervention measures to impede the progression of the disease. Many studies have been conducted to explore the performance of biomarkers or models established with risk factors for predicting gastric cancer risk. Models based on epidemiological factors, including age, sex and *H. pylori* infection, have adequate performance in the prediction of gastric cancer risk[9,10]. Genetic variations of *H. pylori* show great potential for use in the prediction of gastric cancer risk[11]. Cancer-associated SNPs have been reported to be valuable in stratifying gastric cancer risk based on the genetic background[12,13].

Polygenic risk score (PRS) models are established with a number of SNPs or genetic variants to explore the combined effect of multiple genetic variations in the risk prediction of disease[14]. They show improved performance in the prediction of the risk of breast, prostate, and colorectal cancer and diseases involving multiple genetic factors[15-17]. Calculations of PRS vary among different models. The simplest way to calculate the PRS is summing the number of all risk alleles[18]. Considering variations in the cancer risk associated with different SNPs, each risk allele is weighted by its odds ratio (OR) value for cancer. PRS is then calculated as a sum of weighted risk alleles[14]. To date, studies have been conducted employing PRS models to predict gastric cancer risk. Different sets of cancer-associated SNPs have been used in the PRS models. In certain studies, epidemiological factors have been included in the establishment of the models. To assess the performance of PRS models in the prediction of gastric cancer risk, this article aimed to comprehensively analyze the accuracy of PRS models for risk prediction through a systematic review of related studies and discuss potentials in the performance improvement of PRS models with the inclusion of *H. pylori* genetic variations and bacterial members of the gastric microbiome for use in the future.

PERFORMANCE OF CURRENT PRS MODELS

To assess the performance of PRS models for the prediction of gastric cancer risk, a systematic review was conducted. The details of the methods for the systematic review can be found in Supplementary material. The PRISMA flow chart (Figure 1) shows the article retrieval and filtering process. A total of 165 articles were retrieved from PubMed, Web of Science, and Embase electronic database using the search strategies in the Methods (Supplementary material). After removing duplicates, a total of 96 articles were further screened. According to the topics and abstracts, 37 articles were selected and analysed for eligibility. Of them, 8 studies were eligible and included in our systematic review in accordance with the inclusion and exclusion criteria[19-26]. The reasons for exclusion are shown in the PRISMA flow diagram.



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.276 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 1 PRISMA flow diagram. PRISMA flow diagram showed the process of the study selection. SNP: Single nucleotide polymorphism; PRS: Polygenic risk score.

The characteristics of the included studies are shown in Table 1. All of the studies were published in the last five years. Six of them were case-control studies, and two were cohort studies. The study areas included China (5), Korea (1), Japan (1) and Europe (1). The sample sizes in the included studies ranged from 1088 to 400807. A total of 544842 participants were included. All the studies established a PRS model to predict the risk of gastric cancer.

Details regarding the establishment and evaluation of PRS models in these studies are described in Table 2. The accuracy of the PRS models was assessed with the Area under the curve (AUC) in five included studies. The performance of the models was moderate, with AUC values ranging from 0.5600 to 0.7823. The highest performance has been reported by Ishikura *et al*[25] from Japan, with an AUC of 0.7677 in the training set and 0.7823 in the validation set. Two studies from China have used ORs to evaluate the performance of PRS models[19,23]. OR values for the highest quartile with respect to the lowest are 1.14 and 1.19, indicating that the performance of the models was unsatisfactory. The hazard ratio (HR) was used in the remaining study with a value of 2.08 for the highest quantile with respect to the lowest. Overall, the performance of the current PRS models varies considerably among the included studies and appears to have a moderate predictive power for gastric cancer. Factors affecting the performance are indicated.

Pearson correlation analysis of sample sizes and AUC values demonstrated that there was no significant correlation between them (r = -0.51, P = 0.380). This result suggested that the variations in the sample size of the included studies had minimal influence on the predictive power of the PRS model. The number of genetic variants in the models ranged from 3 to 112 SNPs. Pearson correlation analyses were performed to explore whether the number of SNPs was related to the predictive power of the model. The results showed that there was no significant correlation between the number of SNPs and AUC (r = 0.85, P = 0.067). Our results are consistent with previous systematic reviews of breast cancer [27]. This suggests that the inclusion of more SNPs in the PRS model would not improve the performance in the prediction of gastric cancer risk.

All of the included studies used the weighted PRS method instead of the simple counting method. The weight of risk alleles is crucial for the performance of the PRS models[14,28]. Of note, the same SNP, such as rs2294008, has been used in different models, but the weights varied greatly (Table 1). Accordingly, the predictive power varied among studies (Table 2). Generally, the weight of a risk allele derives from the OR of risk alleles for the development of gastric cancer. In the included studies, the ORs mostly came directly from the results of case-control comparisons. They have not been, however,

Table 1 Main characteristics of the included studies

Ref.	Population	Design	Group	Sample size	Sex, (%)	Age, (%)	SNPs (RA, OR)
Mao *et al* [19], 2017	Chinese	Case-control	GC, HC	2631, 4373	Male: 5100 (72.8%); female: 1904 (27.2%)	< 60 yr 3299 (52.9%); ≥ 60 yr 3705 (47.1%)	rs1514175 (A, 1.01), rs2815752 (A, 1.07), rs574367 (T, 1.11), rs12463617 (C, 1.05), rs1861411 (A, 1.02), rs6545814 (G, 1.05), rs10513801 (T, 1.17), rs2535633 (G, 0.98), rs16858082 (T, 0.96), rs261967 (C, 1.02), rs888789 (A, 0.99), rs6890814 (C, 0.99), rs4713766 (A, 1.05), rs9356744 (T, 1.03), rs9473924 (T, 0.98), rs17150703 (G, 1), rs4735692 (A, 1.02), rs11142387 (C, 1.06), rs1211166 (A, 1.02), rs11191580 (C, 0.92), rs10160804 (A, 0.99), rs11030104 (A, 1.02), rs11604680 (G, 0.97), rs2237892 (T, 1), rs671 (G, 1.12), rs897057 (C, 1.04), rs7989336 (A, 1.03), rs9568867 (A, 1.03), rs4776970 (A, 1.05), rs1558902 (A, 1.04), rs2531995 (T, 1.05), rs4788102 (A, 1.08), rs7503807 (A, 1), rs9299 (T, 0.9), rs591166 (A, 1.08), rs11671664 (G, 0.97), rs3810291 (A, 1.02)
Choi *et al*[20], 2020	European	Cohort	GC	272 cases in 400807 individuals	Male: 186372 (46.5%); female: 214435 (53.5%)	NR	rs2990223 (G, 1.27), rs10036575 (T, 1.23), rs2294008 (T, 1.21)
Jin *et al* [21], 2020	Chinese	Cohort	GC	Training set: 10254 cases and 10914 controls; validation set: 692 cases in 100220 individuals	Training set: NR; validation set: Male: 42862 (42.8%); female: 57358 (57.2%)	Training set: NR; validation set: < 60 yr 69805 (69.7%); ≥ 60 yr 30415 (30.3%); mean in case: 60.82 ± 9.33; mean in controls: 53.64 ± 11.00	NR
Qiu *et al* [22], 2020	Chinese	Case-control	GC, HC	1115, 1172	Male: 1615 (70.6%); female: 672 (29.4%)	< 60 yr 1162 (50.8%); ≥ 60 yr 1125 (49.2%)	rs13361707 (C, 1.47), rs2294008 (T, 1.19), rs4072037 (T, 1.38), rs3762272 (T, 1.21), rs2274223 (G, 1.35), rs80142782 (T, 1.36)
Wang *et al*[23], 2020	Chinese	Case-control	GC, HC	2631, 4373	Male: 5100 (72.8%); female: 1904 (27.2%)	< 60 yr 3299 (52.9%); ≥ 60 yr 3705 (47.1%)	rs1801133 (A, 1.02), rs2275565 (G, 1.01), rs4660306 (T, 1), rs1047891 (A, 1), rs9369898 (A, 1), rs548987 (C, 0.98), rs42648 (G, 1.01), rs1801222 (A, 0.99), rs12780845 (A, 1.01), rs7130284 (C, 1.01), rs2251468 (C, 1.03), rs154657 (A, 1.01), rs12921383 (C, 1.01), rs838133 (A, 1.02), rs234709 (C, 0.99)
Duan *et al*[24], 2021	Chinese	Case-control	GC, HC	544, 544	Male: 825 (75.8%); female: 263 (24.2%)	Mean in case: 57.80 ± 12.06; mean in controls: 57.02 ± 11.97	rs1859168 (C, 1.09), rs3815254 (A, 0.98), rs4784659 (C, 0.55), rs579501 (A, 0.71), rs77628730 (A, 1.26), rs6989575 (C, 1.03), rs7816475 (A, 1.19), rs6470502 (T, 0.51), rs1518338 (C, 1.08), rs2867837 (G, 0.95), rs12494960 (A, 2.62), rs74798803 (T, 0.97), rs7818137 (T, 1.2), rs550894 (T, 1.13), rs3825071 (A, 1.48), rs580933 (G, 0.98), rs7943779 (A, 1.54), rs911157 (T, 1.74), rs16981280 (C, 0.76), rs2273534 (C, 0.92), rs957313 (T, 1.04)
Ishikura *et al*[25], 2021	Japanese	Case-control	GC, HC	Training set: 696 cases and 1392 controls; validation set: 795 cases and 795 controls	Training set: Male: 1560 (74.7%); female: 528 (25.3%); validation set: Male: 1180 (74.2%); female: 410 (25.8%)	Training set: < 60 yr 1034 (49.5%); ≥ 60 yr 1054 (50.5%); validation set: < 60 yr 621 (39.1%); ≥ 60 yr 969 (60.9%)	rs4072037 (G, 1.35), rs2294008 (T, 0.62), rs7849280 (G, 0.24)
Park *et al* [26], 2021	Korean	Case-control	GC, HC	450, 1136	Male: 836 (52.7%); female: 750 (47.3%)	Mean in case: 55.4 ± 10.7; mean in control: 52.1 ± 8.5	rs2294008 (T, 1.2), rs6656150 (C, 0.8), rs8280142782 (C, 0.6), rs760077 (A, 0.8), rs140081212 (A, 0.8), rs4460629 (T, 0.8)

SNP: Single nucleotide polymorphism included in studies; GC: Gastric cancer group; HC: Healthy controls; NR: Not reported/Not retrieved; RA: Allele associated with gastric cancer; OR: Odds ratio.

confirmed in a validation set. This might account for the different weights that have been used among studies. It appears that a validation of the OR is required to eliminate the bias of weights among studies, improving the consistency in the performance of PRS models.

To improve the accuracy of the PRS model in the prediction of cancer risk, certain epidemiological factors implicated in cancer development have been considered[29,30]. A number of epidemiological factors are associated with the occurrence of gastric cancer. Individuals of male sex and older age are at increased risk for gastric cancer[9,31]. Previous studies have revealed environmental factors in gastric cancer development. A family history has been considered to be significantly associated with the

Table 2 Development and evaluation of Polygenetic risk scores for predicting gastric cancer

Ref.	No. of SNPs included	SNP selection	PRS and related methods used to calculate it	AUC or OR (95%CI) of model with PRS	AUC or OR (95%CI) of model with PRS and Clinical risk factors	Difference	Clinical risk factors included
Mao *et al* [19], 2017	37	Significance level and linkage disequilibrium	Weighted PRS using weights derived from the same study	OR for the highest quartile respect to the lower quartile: 1.14 (1.01-1.29)	-	-	-
Choi *et al* [20], 2020	3	Significance level	Weighted PRS using weights derived from literature	AUC: 0.56 (0.53- 0.60); HR for the highest quintiles respect to the lower quintiles: 1.75 (1.18-2.59)	-	-	-
Jin *et al* [21], 2020	112	Significance level	Weighted PRS using weights derived from the same study	HR for the highest quintiles respect to the lower quintiles: 2.08 (1.61-2.69)	HR for participants with a high genetic risk and an unfavorable lifestyle respect to those with a low genetic risk and a favorable lifestyle 5.14 (2.04–12.93)	-	Smoking, alcohol consumption, consumption of preserved foods, intake of fresh fruit and vegetables
Qiu *et al* [22], 2020	6	Significance level and validated to be associated with gastric cancer risk	Weighted PRS using weights derived from the same study	AUC 0.653	AUC 0.684	0.031	BMI
Wang *et al*[23], 2020	15	Significance level	Weighted PRS using weights derived from literature	OR for the highest quartile respect to the lower quartile: 1.19 (1.04–1.37)	-	-	-
Duan *et al*[24], 2021	21	Prediction functions through bioinformatics tools	Weighted PRS using weights derived from the same study	AUC 0.737 (0.71-0.76); OR for the highest 10% respect to the 40-60%: 5.75 (3.09-10.70)	AUC for PRS + *Hp* infection: 0.752 (0.690-0.814); AUC for PRS + family history of tumor: 0.773 (0.702-0.843)	PRS + *Hp* infection: 0.014; PRS + family history of tumor: 0.036	*Hp* infection, family history, smoking, alcohol consumption
Ishikura *et al*[25], 2021	3	Significance level	Weighted PRS using weights derived from the same study	AUC for training set: 0.6287 (0.6039–0.6530); AUC for validation set: 0.5673 (0.5391–0.5960)	AUC for training set: 0.7677 (0.7465–0.7890); AUC for validation set: 0.7823 (0.7694–0.8140)	Training set: 0.139; validation set: 0.215	Smoking, alcohol consumption, fruit and vegetable intake, and ABCD classification
Park *et al* [26], 2021	6	Significance level	Weighted PRS using weights derived from literature	AUC: 0.565 (0.535–0.596); OR for the highest tertile respect to the lower tertile: 2.03 (1.51–2.72)	AUC: 0.607 (0.576–0.638); OR for the highest tertile respect to the lower tertile: 2.53 (1.92–3.34)	0.042	A sex-specific prediction model

SNP: Single nucleotide polymorphism; PRS: Polygenic risk score; AUC: Area under the curve; OR: Odds ratio; HR: Hazard ratio; CI: Confidence interval; BMI: Body mass index; *Hp*: *Helicobacter pylori*; ABCD classification: *Helicobacter pylori* infection-related factor.

occurrence of gastric cancer, with OR of more than 2[32]. Studies have revealed a close association between alcohol consumption and the risk of gastric cancer. A meta-analysis showed that heavy alcohol consumption increases the risk of gastric cancer[33,34]. Smokers have been reported to be at high risk of gastric cancer[35]. In this study, epidemiological factors were included in five studies in addition to genetic variations (Table 2). After taking into account the epidemiological factors, the AUC achieved using each model increased by 0.014 to 0.215. To explore whether the predictive performance of the PRS model was improved after epidemiological factors were included, the Mann-Whitney test was performed. The results showed that the AUC values were significantly increased from 0.56-0.74 to 0.61-0.78 after epidemiological factors were considered (P = 0.047).

H. pylori is a major cause of gastric cancer. The risk of non-cardia gastric cancer in *H. pylori*-infected individuals is 6 times higher than that in uninfected individuals[36]. Only one of the included studies

took *H. pylori* into account in the establishment of the PRS model. The performance of the model for the prediction of gastric cancer risk increased with an AUC value increasing from 0.737 to 0.752. *H. pylori* infection serves as a biomarker for gastric cancer and has been combined with other epidemiological factors to predict gastric cancer risk. Tan *et al*[37] found that *H. pylori* infection alone had moderate power for predicting gastric cancer risk with an AUC of 0.66. The accuracy of prediction was improved after other clinical factors were incorporated. A study consisting of 14929 participants demonstrated that *H. pylori* infection combined with seven epidemiological factors has a high predictive power with an AUC value of 0.76[38]. These findings suggest that incorporating *H. pylori* status into PRS models boosts the predictive power for gastric cancer risk.

In many types of cancer, PRS models have shown great power for risk prediction[39,40]. Our analyses demonstrated that the performance of current PRS models is promising in predicting the risk of gastric cancer. Nonetheless, the predictive power is not as satisfying as expected. Inclusion of epidemiological factors and *H. pylori* infections likely enhances the performance of the PRS model for the prediction of gastric cancer risk.

RISK PREDICATION WITH MICROBIAL FACTORS

In the reported PRS models, the risk of gastric cancer has been predicted mainly based on the genetic susceptibility resulting from genetic variations and common cancer risk factors, including age, sex, smoking status, and alcohol consumption. Previous studies have reported serum pepsinogen status could reflect the extent of atrophic change in gastric mucosa[41]. The combination of serum pepsinogen status and *H. pylori* status serves as a valuable marker for stratifying the risk of gastric cancer[42]. Individuals with decrease status of pepsinogen and *H. pylori* infection had a higher risk of gastric cancer compared with healthy control, with a HR value of 6.0[43]. Furthermore, recent studies have demonstrated that many microbial factors play roles in gastric carcinogenesis. Infection with *H. pylori* causes gastric cancer in only a minority of individuals[44]. Genetic differences between strains of *H. pylori* account in part for the differential outcomes of the infection among individuals[45]. The dysbiotic gastric microbiome plays an important role in the development of gastric cancer[46,47]. In addition, studies have shown that other bacteria may play an important role in promoting cancer, following the structural imbalance of the stomach microbiome induced by *H. pylori*[48,49]. As we mentioned, multiple studies have reported other bacteria that are associated with gastric cancer[50,51]. We believe that the gastric microbiome can be used as a valuable candidate to establish a prediction model for the occurrence of gastric cancer.

Gastric cancer-associated SNPs of H. pylori

The genome of *H. pylori* is substantially diverse[45]. There is a high level of differences in the gene contents, deletion/insertion, genetic inversion, sequence variations and SNPs[52]. Genetic variations in virulence genes, including *cagA*, *vacA*, and *babA*, are closely associated with gastric cancer risk[53,54]. Genome-wide association studies have identified a number of gastric cancer-associated SNPs in the *H. pylori* genome[55,56]. These cancer-associated genetic variations of *H. pylori* can be used in the risk prediction of gastric cancer. During the process of screening the studies (Figure 1), we observed that studies used gastric cancer-associated SNPs of the *H. pylori* genome to predict gastric cancer risk. Using a model comprising six validated loci in the *cag* pathogenicity island, a study on 1220 subjects demonstrated a sound predictive power for gastric cancer with an AUC of 0.65[57]. Berthenet *et al*[55] generated a risk score model with 12 gastric cancer-associated SNPs identified by a GWAS study of *H. pylori*. The results of this study have shown that the model is capable of predicting gastric cancer risk. A recent report established a PRS model with gastric cancer-associated SNPs selected from previous studies[11]. The model based on *H. pylori* SNPs achieved good predictive performance. These results convincingly support that the incorporation of *H. pylori* genomic variations into current PRS models would considerably enhance the accuracy in the prediction of gastric cancer risk.

Cancer-associated bacteria in the gastric microbiome

Dysbiosis of the gastric microbiome promotes the development of gastric cancer[46,47]. Many bacteria in the gastric microbiome possess carcinogenic potential[50,51,58].

An observational study of 1043 patients demonstrated a significant enrichment of *Streptococcus anginosus* (*S. anginosus*) and *Streptococcus constellatus* (*S. constellatus*) in gastric cancer[58,59]. The abundances of *S. anginosus* and *S. constellatus* serve as novel faecal signatures of early gastric cancer. Coker *et al* demonstrated an association between *S. anginosus*, *Peptostreptococcus stomatis*, *Parvimonas micra*, *Slackia exigua*, *Dialister pneumosintes* and gastric cancer[60]. These bacteria could form a synergistic network, leading to additional contributions to the disease. They could be used as potential tissue markers for gastric cancer with AUC values of 0.82 and 0.81 in the discovery and validation cohorts, respectively. Png *et al*[61] conducted a cohort study involving 43 participants to identify potential carcinogenic bacteria. The study demonstrates that the *Moryella* genus, *Vibro* genus, *Comamonadaceae* family, *Paludibacter* genus, *Agrobacterium* genus, and *Clostridiales* order in the gastric microbiome are

associated with gastric cancer. The model containing analyses of these bacteria is capable of predicting early gastric cancer with an AUC of 0.82. It has been shown that a random forest model generated with bacterial members of the gastric microbiome has a high performance in risk prediction[62,63]. These findings collectively support that bacterial members of the gastric microbiome have potential in the risk stratification of gastric cancer. Despite the requirement of further validation, the inclusion of the analysis of these bacteria in PRS models most likely enhances the accuracy in the prediction of gastric cancer.

CONCLUSION

Our systematic review showed that PRS models have great potential in the prediction of gastric cancer. Incorporation of other risk factors for gastric cancer could increase the accuracy of the models. To further increase the predictive performance of PRS models for gastric cancer, a comprehensive PRS model generated with the analysis of epidemiological risk factors, genetic variations of *H. pylori*, and bacterial members of the gastric microbiome in addition to human genetic variations requires further evaluation. PRS models with high accuracy would benefit the development of individual risk scores, facilitating the prevention of gastric cancer.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Wang XY and Liang SZ collected sequencing data; Wang LL and Xu L analyzed the data; Wang XY, Yu MC, and Zhang QY wrote the manuscript; Dong QJ designed the research and supervised the manuscript; all authors reviewed the manuscript and approved the final version of the manuscript.

Supported by the National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 31870777.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that they have no competing interests.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Xiao-Yu Wang 0000-0002-3278-0879; Li-Li Wang 0000-0002-3607-0786; Lin Xu 0000-0003-3098-8251; Quan-Jiang Dong 0000-0002-5226-7853.

S-Editor: Chen YL
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Chen YL

REFERENCES

1 **Fuchs CS**, Mayer RJ. Gastric carcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 1995; **333**: 32-41 [PMID: 7776992 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199507063330107]
2 **Siegel RL**, Miller KD, Fuchs HE, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2022. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2022; **72**: 7-33 [PMID: 35020204 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21708]
3 **Hartgrink HH**, Jansen EP, van Grieken NC, van de Velde CJ. Gastric cancer. *Lancet* 2009; **374**: 477-490 [PMID: 19625077 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(09)60617-6]
4 **McLean MH**, El-Omar EM. Genetics of gastric cancer. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **11**: 664-674 [PMID: 25134511 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2014.143]
5 **Zhang H**, Jin G, Li H, Ren C, Ding Y, Zhang Q, Deng B, Wang J, Hu Z, Xu Y, Shen H. Genetic variants at 1q22 and 10q23 reproducibly associated with gastric cancer susceptibility in a Chinese population. *Carcinogenesis* 2011; **32**: 848-852 [PMID: 21427165 DOI: 10.1093/carcin/bgr051]
6 **Mocellin S**, Verdi D, Pooley KA, Nitti D. Genetic variation and gastric cancer risk: a field synopsis and meta-analysis. *Gut* 2015; **64**: 1209-1219 [PMID: 25731870 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2015-309168]
7 **Chmiela M**, Karwowska Z, Gonciarz W, Allushi B, Stączek P. Host pathogen interactions in Helicobacter pylori related gastric cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2017; **23**: 1521-1540 [PMID: 28321154 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v23.i9.1521]
8 **Machlowska J**, Baj J, Sitarz M, Maciejewski R, Sitarz R. Gastric Cancer: Epidemiology, Risk Factors, Classification, Genomic Characteristics and Treatment Strategies. *Int J Mol Sci* 2020; **21** [PMID: 32512697 DOI: 10.3390/ijms21114012]

9 **Charvat H**, Sasazuki S, Inoue M, Iwasaki M, Sawada N, Shimazu T, Yamaji T, Tsugane S; JPHC Study Group. Prediction of the 10-year probability of gastric cancer occurrence in the Japanese population: the JPHC study cohort II. *Int J Cancer* 2016; **138**: 320-331 [PMID: 26219435 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.29705]

10 **Iida M**, Ikeda F, Hata J, Hirakawa Y, Ohara T, Mukai N, Yoshida D, Yonemoto K, Esaki M, Kitazono T, Kiyohara Y, Ninomiya T. Development and validation of a risk assessment tool for gastric cancer in a general Japanese population. *Gastric Cancer* 2018; **21**: 383-390 [PMID: 29043529 DOI: 10.1007/s10120-017-0768-8]

11 **Wang XY**, Wang LL, Liang SZ, Yang C, Xu L, Yu MC, Wang YX, Dong QJ. Prediction of gastric cancer risk by a polygenic risk score of Helicobacter pylori. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2022; **14**: 1844-1855 [PMID: 36187384 DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v14.i9.1844]

12 **Cai M**, Dai S, Chen W, Xia C, Lu L, Qi J, Wang M, Zhou L, Lei F, Zuo T, Zeng H, Zhao X. Environmental factors, seven GWAS-identified susceptibility loci, and risk of gastric cancer and its precursors in a Chinese population. *Cancer Med* 2017; **6**: 708-720 [PMID: 28220687 DOI: 10.1002/cam4.1038]

13 **Ji X**, Yan Y, Ma N, He G, Wang K, Zhang Y, Yin J, Song C, Wang P, Ye H, Dai L, Zhang J. Variant of SNPs at lncRNA NEAT1 contributes to gastric cancer susceptibility in Chinese Han population. *Int J Clin Oncol* 2021; **26**: 694-700 [PMID: 33464437 DOI: 10.1007/s10147-020-01852-1]

14 **Collister JA**, Liu X, Clifton L. Calculating Polygenic Risk Scores (PRS) in UK Biobank: A Practical Guide for Epidemiologists. *Front Genet* 2022; **13**: 818574 [PMID: 35251129 DOI: 10.3389/fgene.2022.818574]

15 **Seibert TM**, Fan CC, Wang Y, Zuber V, Karunamuni R, Parsons JK, Eeles RA, Easton DF, Kote-Jarai Z, Al Olama AA, Garcia SB, Muir K, Grönberg H, Wiklund F, Aly M, Schleutker J, Sipeky C, Tammela TL, Nordestgaard BG, Nielsen SF, Weischer M, Bisbjerg R, Røder MA, Iversen P, Key TJ, Travis RC, Neal DE, Donovan JL, Hamdy FC, Pharoah P, Pashayan N, Khaw KT, Maier C, Vogel W, Luedeke M, Herkommer K, Kibel AS, Cybulski C, Wokolorczyk D, Kluzniak W, Cannon-Albright L, Brenner H, Cuk K, Saum KU, Park JY, Sellers TA, Slavov C, Kaneva R, Mitev V, Batra J, Clements JA, Spurdle A, Teixeira MR, Paulo P, Maia S, Pandha H, Michael A, Kierzek A, Karow DS, Mills IG, Andreassen OA, Dale AM; PRACTICAL Consortium*. Polygenic hazard score to guide screening for aggressive prostate cancer: development and validation in large scale cohorts. *BMJ* 2018; **360**: j5757 [PMID: 29321194 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.j5757]

16 **Lecarpentier J**, Silvestri V, Kuchenbaecker KB, Barrowdale D, Dennis J, McGuffog L, Soucy P, Leslie G, Rizzolo P, Navazio AS, Valentini V, Zelli V, Lee A, Amin Al Olama A, Tyrer JP, Southey M, John EM, Conner TA, Goldgar DE, Buys SS, Janavicius R, Steele L, Ding YC, Neuhausen SL, Hansen TVO, Osorio A, Weitzel JN, Toss A, Medici V, Cortesi L, Zanna I, Palli D, Radice P, Manoukian S, Peissel B, Azzollini J, Viel A, Cini G, Damante G, Tommasi S, Peterlongo P, Fostira F, Hamann U, Evans DG, Henderson A, Brewer C, Eccles D, Cook J, Ong KR, Walker L, Side LE, Porteous ME, Davidson R, Hodgson S, Frost D, Adlard J, Izatt L, Eeles R, Ellis S, Tischkowitz M; EMBRACE, Godwin AK, Meindl A, Gehrig A, Dworniczak B, Sutter C, Engel C, Niederacher D, Steinemann D, Hahnen E, Hauke J, Rhiem K, Kast K, Arnold N, Ditsch N, Wang-Gohrke S, Wappenschmidt B, Wand D, Lasset C, Stoppa-Lyonnet D, Belotti M, Damiola F, Barjhoux L, Mazoyer S; GEMO Study Collaborators, Van Heetvelde M, Poppe B, De Leeneer K, Claes KBM, de la Hoya M, Garcia-Barberan V, Caldes T, Perez Segura P, Kiiski JI, Aittomäki K, Khan S, Nevanlinna H, van Asperen CJ; HEBON, Vaszko T, Kasler M, Olah E, Balmaña J, Gutiérrez-Enríquez S, Diez O, Teulé A, Izquierdo A, Darder E, Brunet J, Del Valle J, Feliubadalo L, Pujana MA, Lazaro C, Arason A, Agnarsson BA, Johannsson OT, Barkardottir RB, Alducci E, Tognazzo S, Montagna M, Teixeira MR, Pinto P, Spurdle AB, Holland H; KConFab Investigators, Lee JW, Lee MH, Lee J, Kim SW, Kang E, Kim Z, Sharma P, Rebbeck TR, Vijai J, Robson M, Lincoln A, Musinsky J, Gaddam P, Tan YY, Berger A, Singer CF, Loud JT, Greene MH, Mulligan AM, Glendon G, Andrulis IL, Toland AE, Senter L, Bojesen A, Nielsen HR, Skytte AB, Sunde L, Jensen UB, Pedersen IS, Krogh L, Kruse TA, Caligo MA, Yoon SY, Teo SH, von Wachenfeldt A, Huo D, Nielsen SM, Olopade OI, Nathanson KL, Domchek SM, Lorenchick C, Jankowitz RC, Campbell I, James P, Mitchell G, Orr N, Park SK, Thomassen M, Offit K, Couch FJ, Simard J, Easton DF, Chenevix-Trench G, Schmutzler RK, Antoniou AC, Ottini L. Prediction of Breast and Prostate Cancer Risks in Male BRCA1 and BRCA2 Mutation Carriers Using Polygenic Risk Scores. *J Clin Oncol* 2017; **35**: 2240-2250 [PMID: 28448241 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2016.69.4935]

17 **Xin J**, Du M, Gu D, Ge Y, Li S, Chu H, Meng Y, Shen H, Zhang Z, Wang M. Combinations of single nucleotide polymorphisms identified in genome-wide association studies determine risk for colorectal cancer. *Int J Cancer* 2019; **145**: 2661-2669 [PMID: 30859566 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.32267]

18 **Hung CF**, Breen G, Czamara D, Corre T, Wolf C, Kloiber S, Bergmann S, Craddock N, Gill M, Holsboer F, Jones L, Jones I, Korszun A, Kutalik Z, Lucae S, Maier W, Mors O, Owen MJ, Rice J, Rietschel M, Uher R, Vollenweider P, Waeber G, Craig IW, Farmer AE, Lewis CM, Müller-Myhsok B, Preisig M, McGuffin P, Rivera M. A genetic risk score combining 32 SNPs is associated with body mass index and improves obesity prediction in people with major depressive disorder. *BMC Med* 2015; **13**: 86 [PMID: 25903154 DOI: 10.1186/s12916-015-0334-3]

19 **Mao Y**, Yan C, Lu Q, Zhu M, Yu F, Wang C, Dai J, Ma H, Hu Z, Shen H, Jin G. Genetically predicted high body mass index is associated with increased gastric cancer risk. *Eur J Hum Genet* 2017; **25**: 1061-1066 [PMID: 28635950 DOI: 10.1038/ejhg.2017.103]

20 **Choi J**, Jia G, Wen W, Long J, Zheng W. Evaluating polygenic risk scores in assessing risk of nine solid and hematologic cancers in European descendants. *Int J Cancer* 2020; **147**: 3416-3423 [PMID: 32588423 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.33176]

21 **Jin G**, Lv J, Yang M, Wang M, Zhu M, Wang T, Yan C, Yu C, Ding Y, Li G, Ren C, Ni J, Zhang R, Guo Y, Bian Z, Zheng Y, Zhang N, Jiang Y, Chen J, Wang Y, Xu D, Zheng H, Yang L, Chen Y, Walters R, Millwood IY, Dai J, Ma H, Chen K, Chen Z, Hu Z, Wei Q, Shen H, Li L. Genetic risk, incident gastric cancer, and healthy lifestyle: a meta-analysis of genome-wide association studies and prospective cohort study. *Lancet Oncol* 2020; **21**: 1378-1386 [PMID: 33002439 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(20)30460-5]

22 **Qiu L**, Qu X, He J, Cheng L, Zhang R, Sun M, Yang Y, Wang J, Wang M, Zhu X, Guo W. Predictive model for risk of gastric cancer using genetic variants from genome-wide association studies and high-evidence meta-analysis. *Cancer Med* 2020; **9**: 7310-7316 [PMID: 32777176 DOI: 10.1002/cam4.3354]

23 **Wang T**, Ren C, Ni J, Ding H, Qi Q, Yan C, Deng B, Dai J, Li G, Ding Y, Jin G. Genetic Association of Plasma

Homocysteine Levels with Gastric Cancer Risk: A Two-Sample Mendelian Randomization Study. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2020; **29**: 487-492 [PMID: 31748259 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-19-0724]

24 **Duan F**, Song C, Wang P, Ye H, Dai L, Zhang J, Wang K. Polygenic Risk Scores for Prediction of Gastric Cancer Based on Bioinformatics Screening and Validation of Functional lncRNA SNPs. *Clin Transl Gastroenterol* 2021; **12**: e00430 [PMID: 34797779 DOI: 10.14309/ctg.0000000000000430]

25 **Ishikura N**, Ito H, Oze I, Koyanagi YN, Kasugai Y, Taniyama Y, Kawakatsu Y, Tanaka T, Ito S, Tajika M, Shimizu Y, Niwa Y, Matsuo K. Risk Prediction for Gastric Cancer Using GWAS-Identifie Polymorphisms, Helicobacter pylori Infection and Lifestyle-Related Risk Factors in a Japanese Population. *Cancers (Basel)* 2021; **13** [PMID: 34771687 DOI: 10.3390/cancers13215525]

26 **Park B**, Yang S, Lee J, Choi IJ, Kim YI, Kim J. Gastric Cancer Risk Prediction Using an Epidemiological Risk Assessment Model and Polygenic Risk Score. *Cancers (Basel)* 2021; **13** [PMID: 33669642 DOI: 10.3390/cancers13040876]

27 **Fung SM**, Wong XY, Lee SX, Miao H, Hartman M, Wee HL. Performance of Single-Nucleotide Polymorphisms in Breast Cancer Risk Prediction Models: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2019; **28**: 506-521 [PMID: 30563826 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-18-0810]

28 **Lewis CM**, Vassos E. Polygenic risk scores: from research tools to clinical instruments. *Genome Med* 2020; **12**: 44 [PMID: 32423490 DOI: 10.1186/s13073-020-00742-5]

29 **Liyanarachchi S**, Gudmundsson J, Ferkingstad E, He H, Jonasson JG, Tragante V, Asselbergs FW, Xu L, Kiemeney LA, Netea-Maier RT, Mayordomo JI, Plantinga TS, Hjartarson H, Hrafnkelsson J, Sturgis EM, Brock P, Nabhan F, Thorleifsson G, Ringel MD, Stefansson K, de la Chapelle A. Assessing thyroid cancer risk using polygenic risk scores. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2020; **117**: 5997-6002 [PMID: 32132206 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1919976117]

30 **Yiangou K**, Kyriacou K, Kakouri E, Marcou Y, Panayiotidis MI, Loizidou MA, Hadjisavvas A, Michailidou K. Combination of a 15-SNP Polygenic Risk Score and Classical Risk Factors for the Prediction of Breast Cancer Risk in Cypriot Women. *Cancers (Basel)* 2021; **13** [PMID: 34572793 DOI: 10.3390/cancers13184568]

31 **Eom BW**, Joo J, Kim S, Shin A, Yang HR, Park J, Choi IJ, Kim YW, Kim J, Nam BH. Prediction Model for Gastric Cancer Incidence in Korean Population. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0132613 [PMID: 26186332 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0132613]

32 **Yaghoobi M**, Bijarchi R, Narod SA. Family history and the risk of gastric cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2010; **102**: 237-242 [PMID: 19888225 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6605380]

33 **Rota M**, Pelucchi C, Bertuccio P, Matsuo K, Zhang ZF, Ito H, Hu J, Johnson KC, Palli D, Ferraroni M, Yu GP, Muscat J, Lunet N, Peleteiro B, Ye W, Song H, Zaridze D, Maximovitch D, Guevara M, Fernández-Villa T, Vioque J, Navarrete-Muñoz EM, Wolk A, Orsini N, Bellavia A, Håkansson N, Mu L, Persiani R, Kurtz RC, Lagiou A, Lagiou P, Galeone C, Bonzi R, Boffetta P, Boccia S, Negri E, La Vecchia C. Alcohol consumption and gastric cancer risk-A pooled analysis within the StoP project consortium. *Int J Cancer* 2017; **141**: 1950-1962 [PMID: 28718913 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.30891]

34 **Tramacere I**, Negri E, Pelucchi C, Bagnardi V, Rota M, Scotti L, Islami F, Corrao G, La Vecchia C, Boffetta P. A meta-analysis on alcohol drinking and gastric cancer risk. *Ann Oncol* 2012; **23**: 28-36 [PMID: 21536659 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdr135]

35 **Poorolajal J**, Moradi L, Mohammadi Y, Cheraghi Z, Gohari-Ensaf F. Risk factors for stomach cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Epidemiol Health* 2020; **42**: e2020004 [PMID: 32023777 DOI: 10.4178/epih.e2020004]

36 **Yang L**, Kartsonaki C, Yao P, de Martel C, Plummer M, Chapman D, Guo Y, Clark S, Walters RG, Chen Y, Pei P, Lv J, Yu C, Jeske R, Waterboer T, Clifford GM, Franceschi S, Peto R, Hill M, Li L, Millwood IY, Chen Z; China Kadoorie Biobank Collaborative Group. The relative and attributable risks of cardia and non-cardia gastric cancer associated with Helicobacter pylori infection in China: a case-cohort study. *Lancet Public Health* 2021; **6**: e888-e896 [PMID: 34838195 DOI: 10.1016/S2468-2667(21)00164-X]

37 **Tan MC**, Ho Q, Nguyen TH, Liu Y, El-Serag HB, Thrift AP. Risk Score Using Demographic and Clinical Risk Factors Predicts Gastric Intestinal Metaplasia Risk in a U.S. Population. *Dig Dis Sci* 2022; **67**: 4500-4508 [PMID: 34797447 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-021-07309-3]

38 **Cai Q**, Zhu C, Yuan Y, Feng Q, Feng Y, Hao Y, Li J, Zhang K, Ye G, Ye L, Lv N, Zhang S, Liu C, Li M, Liu Q, Li R, Pan J, Yang X, Zhu X, Li Y, Lao B, Ling A, Chen H, Li X, Xu P, Zhou J, Liu B, Du Z, Du Y, Li Z; Gastrointestinal Early Cancer Prevention & Treatment Alliance of China (GECA). Development and validation of a prediction rule for estimating gastric cancer risk in the Chinese high-risk population: a nationwide multicentre study. *Gut* 2019; **68**: 1576-1587 [PMID: 30926654 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2018-317556]

39 **Opstal-van Winden AWJ**, de Haan HG, Hauptmann M, Schmidt MK, Broeks A, Russell NS, Janus CPM, Krol ADG, van der Baan FH, De Bruin ML, van Eggermond AM, Dennis J, Anton-Culver H, Haiman CA, Sawyer EJ, Cox A, Devilee P, Hooning MJ, Peto J, Couch FJ, Pharoah P, Orr N, Easton DF, Aleman BMP, Strong LC, Bhatia S, Cooke R, Robison LL, Swerdlow AJ, van Leeuwen FE. Genetic susceptibility to radiation-induced breast cancer after Hodgkin lymphoma. *Blood* 2019; **133**: 1130-1139 [PMID: 30573632 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2018-07-862607]

40 **Sassano M**, Mariani M, Quaranta G, Pastorino R, Boccia S. Polygenic risk prediction models for colorectal cancer: a systematic review. *BMC Cancer* 2022; **22**: 65 [PMID: 35030997 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-021-09143-2]

41 **Miki K**, Ichinose M, Kawamura N, Matsushima M, Ahmad HB, Kimura M, Sano J, Tashiro T, Kakei N, Oka H. The significance of low serum pepsinogen levels to detect stomach cancer associated with extensive chronic gastritis in Japanese subjects. *Jpn J Cancer Res* 1989; **80**: 111-114 [PMID: 2498245 DOI: 10.1111/j.1349-7006.1989.tb02276.x]

42 **Yamaji Y**, Mitsushima T, Ikuma H, Okamoto M, Yoshida H, Kawabe T, Shiratori Y, Saito K, Yokouchi K, Omata M. Inverse background of Helicobacter pylori antibody and pepsinogen in reflux oesophagitis compared with gastric cancer: analysis of 5732 Japanese subjects. *Gut* 2001; **49**: 335-340 [PMID: 11511553 DOI: 10.1136/gut.49.3.335]

43 **Watabe H**, Mitsushima T, Yamaji Y, Okamoto M, Wada R, Kokubo T, Doi H, Yoshida H, Kawabe T, Omata M. Predicting the development of gastric cancer from combining Helicobacter pylori antibodies and serum pepsinogen status: a prospective endoscopic cohort study. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 764-768 [PMID: 15888780 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2004.055400]

44 **Kumar S**, Metz DC, Ellenberg S, Kaplan DE, Goldberg DS. Risk Factors and Incidence of Gastric Cancer After Detection of Helicobacter pylori Infection: A Large Cohort Study. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 527-536.e7 [PMID: 31654635 DOI:

10.1053/j.gastro.2019.10.019]
45 **Dong QJ**, Zhan SH, Wang LL, Xin YN, Jiang M, Xuan SY. Relatedness of Helicobacter pylori populations to gastric carcinogenesis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 6571-6576 [PMID: 23236231 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i45.6571]
46 **Castaño-Rodríguez N**, Goh KL, Fock KM, Mitchell HM, Kaakoush NO. Dysbiosis of the microbiome in gastric carcinogenesis. *Sci Rep* 2017; **7**: 15957 [PMID: 29162924 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-017-16289-2]
47 **Liu X**, Shao L, Liu X, Ji F, Mei Y, Cheng Y, Liu F, Yan C, Li L, Ling Z. Alterations of gastric mucosal microbiota across different stomach microhabitats in a cohort of 276 patients with gastric cancer. *EBioMedicine* 2019; **40**: 336-348 [PMID: 30584008 DOI: 10.1016/j.ebiom.2018.12.034]
48 **de Assumpção PP**, Araújo TMT, de Assumpção PB, Barra WF, Khayat AS, Assumpção CB, Ishak G, Nunes DN, Dias-Neto E, Coelho LGV. Suicide journey of H. pylori through gastric carcinogenesis: the role of non-H. pylori microbiome and potential consequences for clinical practice. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 2019; **38**: 1591-1597 [PMID: 31114971 DOI: 10.1007/s10096-019-03564-5]
49 **Guo Y**, Zhang Y, Gerhard M, Gao JJ, Mejias-Luque R, Zhang L, Vieth M, Ma JL, Bajbouj M, Suchanek S, Liu WD, Ulm K, Quante M, Li ZX, Zhou T, Schmid R, Classen M, Li WQ, You WC, Pan KF. Effect of Helicobacter pylori on gastrointestinal microbiota: a population-based study in Linqu, a high-risk area of gastric cancer. *Gut* 2020; **69**: 1598-1607 [PMID: 31857433 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2019-319696]
50 **Aviles-Jimenez F**, Vazquez-Jimenez F, Medrano-Guzman R, Mantilla A, Torres J. Stomach microbiota composition varies between patients with non-atrophic gastritis and patients with intestinal type of gastric cancer. *Sci Rep* 2014; **4**: 4202 [PMID: 24569566 DOI: 10.1038/srep04202]
51 **Yang I**, Woltemate S, Piazuelo MB, Bravo LE, Yepez MC, Romero-Gallo J, Delgado AG, Wilson KT, Peek RM, Correa P, Josenhans C, Fox JG, Suerbaum S. Different gastric microbiota compositions in two human populations with high and low gastric cancer risk in Colombia. *Sci Rep* 2016; **6**: 18594 [PMID: 26729566 DOI: 10.1038/srep18594]
52 **Ge Z**, Taylor DE. Contributions of genome sequencing to understanding the biology of Helicobacter pylori. *Annu Rev Microbiol* 1999; **53**: 353-387 [PMID: 10547695 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.micro.53.1.353]
53 **da Costa DM**, Pereira Edos S, Rabenhorst SH. What exists beyond cagA and vacA? *World J Gastroenterol* 2015; **21**: 10563-10572 [PMID: 26457016 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v21.i37.10563]
54 **Nejati S**, Karkhah A, Darvish H, Validi M, Ebrahimpour S, Nouri HR. Influence of Helicobacter pylori virulence factors CagA and VacA on pathogenesis of gastrointestinal disorders. *Microb Pathog* 2018; **117**: 43-48 [PMID: 29432909 DOI: 10.1016/j.micpath.2018.02.016]
55 **Berthenet E**, Yahara K, Thorell K, Pascoe B, Meric G, Mikhail JM, Engstrand L, Enroth H, Burette A, Megraud F, Varon C, Atherton JC, Smith S, Wilkinson TS, Hitchings MD, Falush D, Sheppard SK. A GWAS on Helicobacter pylori strains points to genetic variants associated with gastric cancer risk. *BMC Biol* 2018; **16**: 84 [PMID: 30071832 DOI: 10.1186/s12915-018-0550-3]
56 **Tuan VP**, Yahara K, Dung HDQ, Binh TT, Huu Tung P, Tri TD, Thuan NPM, Khien VV, Trang TTH, Phuc BH, Tshibangu-Kabamba E, Matsumoto T, Akada J, Suzuki R, Okimoto T, Kodama M, Murakami K, Yano H, Fukuyo M, Takahashi N, Kato M, Nishiumi S, Azuma T, Ogura Y, Hayashi T, Toyoda A, Kobayashi I, Yamaoka Y. Genome-wide association study of gastric cancer- and duodenal ulcer-derived Helicobacter pylori strains reveals discriminatory genetic variations and novel oncoprotein candidates. *Microb Genom* 2021; **7** [PMID: 34846284 DOI: 10.1099/mgen.0.000680]
57 **Canzian F**, Rizzato C, Obazee O, Stein A, Flores-Luna L, Camorlinga-Ponce M, Mendez-Tenorio A, Vivas J, Trujillo E, Jang H, Chen W, Kasamatsu E, Bravo MM, Torres J, Muñoz N, Kato I. Genetic polymorphisms in the cag pathogenicity island of Helicobacter pylori and risk of stomach cancer and high-grade premalignant gastric lesions. *Int J Cancer* 2020; **147**: 2437-2445 [PMID: 32363734 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.33032]
58 **Schulz C**, Schütte K, Mayerle J, Malfertheiner P. The role of the gastric bacterial microbiome in gastric cancer: Helicobacter pylori and beyond. *Therap Adv Gastroenterol* 2019; **12**: 1756284819894062 [PMID: 31897087 DOI: 10.1177/1756284819894062]
59 **Zhou CB**, Pan SY, Jin P, Deng JW, Xue JH, Ma XY, Xie YH, Cao H, Liu Q, Xie WF, Zou XP, Sheng JQ, Wang BM, Wang H, Ren JL, Liu SD, Sun YW, Meng XJ, Zhao G, Chen JX, Cui Y, Wang PQ, Guo HM, Yang L, Chen X, Ding J, Yang XN, Wang XK, Qian AH, Hou LD, Wang Z, Chen YX, Fang JY. Fecal Signatures of Streptococcus anginosus and Streptococcus constellatus for Noninvasive Screening and Early Warning of Gastric Cancer. *Gastroenterology* 2022; **162**: 1933-1947.e18 [PMID: 35167866 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2022.02.015]
60 **Coker OO**, Dai Z, Nie Y, Zhao G, Cao L, Nakatsu G, Wu WK, Wong SH, Chen Z, Sung JJY, Yu J. Mucosal microbiome dysbiosis in gastric carcinogenesis. *Gut* 2018; **67**: 1024-1032 [PMID: 28765474 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2017-314281]
61 **Png CW**, Lee WJJ, Chua SJ, Zhu F; Gastric Consortium5, Yeoh KG, Zhang Y. Mucosal microbiome associates with progression to gastric cancer. *Theranostics* 2022; **12**: 48-58 [PMID: 34987633 DOI: 10.7150/thno.65302]
62 **Liu D**, Chen S, Gou Y, Yu W, Zhou H, Zhang R, Wang J, Ye F, Liu Y, Sun B, Zhang K. Gastrointestinal Microbiota Changes in Patients With Gastric Precancerous Lesions. *Front Cell Infect Microbiol* 2021; **11**: 749207 [PMID: 34956928 DOI: 10.3389/fcimb.2021.749207]
63 **Liu D**, Zhang R, Chen S, Sun B, Zhang K. Analysis of gastric microbiome reveals three distinctive microbial communities associated with the occurrence of gastric cancer. *BMC Microbiol* 2022; **22**: 184 [PMID: 35870901 DOI: 10.1186/s12866-022-02594-y]

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2023 February 15; 15(2): 286-302

DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.286

ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

Cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A enhances chemoresistance of gastric cancer cells to oxaliplatin

Yong-Xun Zhao, Li-Bin Ma, Ze Yang, Fang Wang, Hui-Ying Wang, Jia-Yao Dang

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Aurello P, Italy; Hori T, Japan; Rakić M, Croatia

Received: September 8, 2022
Peer-review started: September 8, 2022
First decision: November 12, 2022
Revised: November 23, 2022
Accepted: January 5, 2023
Article in press: January 5, 2023
Published online: February 15, 2023

Yong-Xun Zhao, Li-Bin Ma, Ze Yang, The Seventh Department of General Surgery, The First Hospital of Lanzhou University, Lanzhou 730000, Gansu Province, China

Fang Wang, Department of Pathology, The First Hospital of Lanzhou University, Lanzhou 730000, Gansu Province, China

Hui-Ying Wang, Jia-Yao Dang, The First Clinical Medical School, Lanzhou University, Lanzhou 730000, Gansu Province, China

Corresponding author: Yong-Xun Zhao, PhD, Surgeon, The Seventh Department of General Surgery, The First Hospital of Lanzhou University, No. 1 Donggang West Road, Lanzhou 730000, Gansu Province, China. yongxunzh@163.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A (CIP2A) is a newly discovered oncogene. It is an active cell proliferation regulatory factor that inhibits tumor apoptosis in gastric cancer (GC) cells. CIP2A is functionally related to chemoresistance in various types of tumors according to recent studies. The underlying mechanism, however, is unknown. Further, the primary treatment regimen for GC is oxaliplatin-based chemotherapy. Nonetheless, it often fails due to chemoresistance of GC cells to oxaliplatin.

AIM

The goal of this study was to examine CIP2A expression and its association with oxaliplatin resistance in human GC cells.

METHODS

Immunohistochemistry was used to examine CIP2A expression in GC tissues and adjacent normal tissues. CIP2A expression in GC cell lines was reduced using small interfering RNA. After confirming the silencing efficiency, 3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide tetrazolium and flow cytometry assays were used to evaluate cell proliferation and apoptosis caused by oxaliplatin treatment. Further, the key genes and protein changes were verified using real-time quantitative reverse transcription PCR and Western blotting, respectively, before and after intervention. For bioinformatics analysis, we used the R software and Bioconductor project. For statistical analysis, we used GraphPad Prism 6.0 and the Statistical Package for the Social Sciences software version 20.0 (IBM,

Armonk, United States).

RESULTS

A high level of CIP2A expression was associated with tumor size, T stage, lymph node metastasis, Tumor Node Metastasis stage, and a poor prognosis. Further, CIP2A expression was higher in GC cells than in normal human gastric epithelial cells. Using small interfering RNA against CIP2A, we discovered that CIP2A knockdown inhibited cell proliferation and significantly increased GC cell sensitivity to oxaliplatin. Moreover, CIP2A knockdown enhanced oxaliplatin-induced apoptosis in GC cells. Hence, high CIP2A levels in GC may be a factor in chemoresistance to oxaliplatin. In human GC cells, CIP2A regulated protein kinase B phosphorylation, and chemical inhibition of the protein kinase B signaling pathway was significantly associated with increased sensitivity to oxaliplatin. Therefore, the protein kinase B signaling pathway was correlated with CIP2A-enhanced chemoresistance of human GC cells to oxaliplatin.

CONCLUSION

CIP2A expression could be a novel therapeutic strategy for chemoresistance in GC.

Key Words: Cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A; Gastric cancer; Oxaliplatin; Chemoresistance; Akt

©The Author(s) 2023. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: Gastric cancer (GC) is primarily treated with oxaliplatin-based chemotherapy. Patients who receive chemotherapy often develop resistance. Cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A (CIP2A) is a novel oncogene. Recent studies suggested that CIP2A is linked to chemoresistance in various cancers. The purpose of this study was to look into the relationship between CIP2A expression and oxaliplatin resistance in GC. The findings revealed that GC tissues have higher CIP2A expression than matched adjacent normal gastric tissues, and CIP2A expression plays an important role in the chemoresistance of GC, suggesting a new treatment strategy for GC.

Citation: Zhao YX, Ma LB, Yang Z, Wang F, Wang HY, Dang JY. Cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A enhances chemoresistance of gastric cancer cells to oxaliplatin. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2023; 15(2): 286-302
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v15/i2/286.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.286

INTRODUCTION

Gastric cancer (GC) is the most common solid tumor originating from the digestive system and is one of the most severe and fatal malignancies worldwide[1]. GC has a high mortality rate of 75.0% and accounts for 8.8% of all cancer-related deaths[2]. Advanced-stage GC is associated with rapid metastatic growth, relapse, and a poor prognosis with a 5-year survival rate of 30%-50%. Clinically, GC is treated *via* surgical resection and chemotherapy, which is a viable option[3]. The primary treatment for GC is neoadjuvant or adjuvant therapy. Chemoresistance is a major challenge with few benefits. Further, the aggressiveness of GC is attributed in part to intrinsic and extrinsic chemoresistance[4]. As a result, identifying the molecular mechanism of chemoresistance in GC is critical.

S-1 (tegafur, gimeracil, and oteracil potassium capsules) or capecitabine in combination with oxaliplatin is currently used as adjuvant therapy for GC in various East Asian institutions[5,6]. Oxaliplatin is a third-generation platinum analog commonly used to treat GC, resulting in a large amount of platinum-DNA adducts that are poorly identified by the mismatch repair system[7]. Although oxaliplatin initially has a high responsiveness rate, patients eventually develop resistance[8]. Protein kinase B (Akt), also known as protein kinase B, is involved in a variety of critical cellular processes such as cell proliferation and migration, metastasis, and cancer progression[9]. Drug resistance in various types of human cancers is influenced by changes in Akt expression or activity[10-12]. Moreover, trastuzumab resistance is primarily determined by Akt signaling activation in breast cancer[12,13]. The aberrant Akt signaling pathway activation-mediated epithelial-mesenchymal transition is important in the development of doxorubicin resistance in GC cells[14]. Akt signaling has been linked to oxaliplatin resistance in GC cells in several studies[15-17].

Cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A (CIP2A) is an oncogene that inhibits c-Myc degradation. CIP2A has been shown to facilitate the proliferation of various cancer cells[18]**.** Moreover, CIP2A is overexpressed in a variety of cancers, including breast, head and neck, prostate, lung, and

digestive system cancers[18-20]. In human GC, cancer tissues had higher CIP2A levels than noncancerous tissues. As a result, CIP2A may play an oncogenic role in human GC progression and is correlated with a poor prognosis[21-23]. Recent studies have linked increased CIP2A expression to doxorubicin resistance in human breast and colon cancer cells[24]. Moreover, CIP2A overexpression is associated with cisplatin chemoresistance in human non–small cell lung carcinoma, and Akt phosphorylation may play a role in this process[25]. The effect of CIP2A on oxaliplatin resistance in human GC is unknown.

The current study sought to investigate CIP2A expression in tumor tissue and its relationship to clinicopathological features and prognosis in GC patients. We investigated the expression of CIP2A and its relationship with oxaliplatin resistance in human GC cells as well as the possible mechanisms involved.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients and their clinicopathological characteristics

Between January 2012 and December 2015, 108 paired primary gastric carcinoma tissue and adjacent normal tissue (> 5 cm from the tumor margin and noncancerous tissues determined by the pathologist) specimens were collected from patients undergoing D2 radical resection at the Department of Gastroenterological and Oncological Surgery of the First Hospital of Lanzhou University. Prior to surgery, none of the patients received chemotherapy, radiotherapy, targeted therapy, or immunotherapy. Patients with GC ranged in age from 26-years-old to 78-years-old (mean: 57.3 ± 6.8 years). Table 1 shows the clinicopathological characteristics of patients. The Tumor Node Metastasis stage of the tumor was determined using the 8th edition of the American Joint Committee on Cancer staging manual[26]. All patients were followed up for at least 5 years after surgery. Further, following surgery, all patients received six cycles of S-1 (tegafur, gimeracil, and oteracil potassium capsules) combined with oxaliplatin. To detect the mRNA and protein expression of CIP2A, 18 frozen GC tissue and paired normal tissue specimens were selected. All pathological results were evaluated independently by two specialized pathologists who were blinded. The ethics review board of the First Hospital of Lanzhou University approved this study, and each participant provided written informed consent. All experiments were performed in accordance with the principles of the Declaration of Helsinki.

Immunohistochemistry analysis

The expression of CIP2A in 108 pairs of GC tissue and matched adjacent normal tissue samples was evaluated *via* immunohistochemistry (IHC) using the SP method. Formaldehyde-fixed and paraffin-embedded 4-μm-thick samples were deparaffinized with xylene and rehydrated with graded ethanol. Antigen retrieval was performed by boiling in a pressure cooker. The endogenous peroxidase activity was blocked with H_2O_2. Primary antibodies (CIP2A antibody 1:500, Santa Cruz Biotechnology, United States) were added to the sections and incubated for 1 h at 37 °C in the dark. The secondary antibodies were then added at 37 °C for 30 min. Next, DAB (3,3′-Diaminobenzidine) chromogenic reagent was added to develop, and hematoxylin was added for staining. In the negative control group, phosphate-buffered solution (PBS) was used instead of the primary antibody. The IHC score of each slide was calculated by multiplying the intensity of staining by the average percentage of positive cells[27]. The staining intensity scores were classified as follows: colorless (no staining), 0; light yellow (weak staining), 1; yellow-brown (moderate staining), 2; and brown (strong staining), 3. The average percentages of positive cells were as follows: 1 = 1%-25%, 2 = 26%-50%, 3 = 51%-75%, and 4 = 76%-100%. Based on the Statistical Package for Social Sciences software version 20.0, the optimal cutoff IHC score was set as 6. In the final analysis, samples with a score of ≥ 6 were classified as $CIP2A^{high}$ expression, whereas those with a score of < 6 were classified as $CIP2A^{low}$ expression.

Bioinformatics analysis

The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA) and The National Center for Biotechnology Information Gene Expression Omnibus (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/geo/) were used to obtain data on *CIP2A* mRNA expression. Moreover, R software and the Bioconductor project were used to analyze and process data on *CIP2A* mRNA expression. Data on the mRNA expression of *CIP2A* were processed with log2 and standardized with R software. For the survival analysis of *CIP2A*, the online tool Kaplan–Meier plotter (http://www.kmplot.com/gastric) was used to assess the prognostic value of *CIP2A* in GC patients. The Kaplan–Meier plotter database contains 875 patients with clinicopathologic information about GC from the National Center for Biotechnology Information Gene Expression Omnibus 208853 dataset. Moreover, the survival data were analyzed online. The Kaplan–Meier survival curves were drawn using GraphPad (GraphPad Prism 6.0, La Jolla, CA, United States).

Cell culture, reagents, and small interference RNA

Human GC cell lines MKN-45 and AGS, as well as normal human gastric epithelial cells (GES-1)

Table 1 Association between the expression of cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A and clinicopathological features in patients with gastric cancer

Prognostic variables	Number	Expression of CIP2A		χ^2	*P* value
		Low	High		
Sex				1.766	0.184
Male	71	27	44		
Female	37	19	18		
Age, yr				0.175	0.676
< 60	68	30	38		
≥ 60	40	16	24		
Tumor location				0.097	0.756
Proximal + middle	37	15	22		
Distal	71	31	40		
Histological grade				0.001	0.973
G1 + G2	26	11	15		
G3	82	35	47		
Tumor size in cm				5.975	0.015[a]
< 5	84	41	43		
≥ 5	24	5	19		
T stage				5.472	0.019[a]
T1–T2	36	21	15		
T3–T4	72	25	47		
N stage				12.428	0.000[a]
N0	47	29	18		
N1–N3	61	17	44		
TNM stage				5.168	0.023[a]
I + II	69	35	34		
III + IV	39	11	28		

[a]$P < 0.05$.

CIP2A: Cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A; G: Grade; N: Node; T: Tumor; TNM: Tumor Node Metastasis.

(Chinese Academy of Sciences, China), were cultured in RPMI-1640 (Hyclone Laboratories Inc., United States) supplemented with 1% penicillin and streptomycin (North China Pharmaceutical Company, Inc., China) and 10% fetal bovine serum (Hyclone Laboratories Inc., United States). Oxaliplatin was purchased from the Hengrui Medicine Co., Ltd. (Jiangsu, China). Further, Invitrogen Inc. (Carlsbad, CA, United States) provided the unique *CIP2A* small interfering RNA (siRNA) and negative control. The *CIP2A* siRNA sequence is 5′-GACAACUGUCAAGUGUACCACUCUU-3′[28]. To deliver the siRNA into the MKN-45 and AGS cells, Lipofectamine™ 2000 (Invitrogen Inc., Carlsbad, CA, United States) was used based on the manufacturer's instructions. In addition, MK-2206 was acquired from Cell Signaling Inc. (InvivoGen, San Diego, CA, United States).

3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide tetrazolium assay

Cell proliferation was detected using the 3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide tetrazolium (MTT) assay. Cultured cells were separated in 96-well plates for 12 h (5000 cells/well). Moreover, 20 μL/well of the MTT reagent was added to each sample after treatment. The sample was then incubated at 37 °C for 4 h before being washed with PBS. Following that, 200 μL of dimethyl sulfoxide was added. The 490-nm optical density was evaluated. The rate of cell proliferation was calculated as the score of surviving cells. Cell viability was measured as a percentage of survival (control group: 100%).

Real-time quantitative reverse transcription PCR

Total RNA was extracted in an RNase-free environment using TRIzol reagent (Invitrogen, United States), and cDNA was obtained using PrimeScript™ RT Master Mix (Takara Biotechnology Co., China) according to the manufacturer's instructions. Real-time quantitative reverse transcription (RT-q) PCR was performed using the 7500 Fast PCR System (Applied Biosystems, CA, United States) with SYBR® Premix Ex Taq™ II (Takara Biotechnology Co., China). The reactions were carried out using the 20-μL reaction system *per* the manufacturer's instructions. Moreover, glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase was used as the housekeeping gene. The primer sequences were as follows: *CIP2A* (accession no. NM020890) sense 5′-GGCACTTGGAGGTAATTTCT-3′, anti-sense 5′-CTGGTTTCAATGTCTACTGCTAG-3′, glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase (accession no. NM002046) sense 5′-AAGGCTGGGGCTCATTTG-3′, and anti-sense 5′-AGGAGGCATTGCTGATGATC-3′. All primers were provided by Takara Biotechnology Co. The expression of the reference gene glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase was used to normalize the mRNA expression.

Immunoblotting assay

PBS and radio immunoprecipitation assay lysis buffer (Beyotime Biotechnology, China) was used to treat the cells, which were supplemented with 1 mmol/L phenylmethanesulfonyl fluoride. They were centrifuged for 15 min at 12000 × g at 4 °C. The supernatant was then collected, and the protein concentration was determined using the BCA protein assay (Beyotime Biotechnology, China). Using 10% sodium dodecyl sulfate-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis, an equal amount of sample (50 μg) was isolated and moved into the polyvinylidene fluoride membrane. The samples were then blocked with 5% nonfat milk and incubated with the following primary antibodies: CIP2A (2G10-3B5, Santa Cruz Biotechnology, United States), phospho-Akt (Ser473, Santa Cruz Biotechnology, United States), Akt (Cell Signaling Technology, Inc., United States), and β-actin (Zhongshan Golden Bridge Biotech, China). β-actin was used as an internal control. After that, samples were incubated with secondary antibodies (Zhongshan Golden Bridge Biotech, China) (1:5000). The SuperSignal West Pico Chemiluminescent Substrate (Thermo Fisher Scientific Inc., United States) was used to obtain the results. Moreover, data were analyzed using Quantity One (Bio-Rad Inc.).

Annexin V assay of apoptosis

After 48 h of siRNA treatment, the GC cells were treated with a specific dose of oxaliplatin (2 μg/mL) for 24 h. They were then collected, washed with PBS, and suspended with propidium iodide annexin V-fluorescein 5-isothiocyanate (BD Pharmingen, United States) in the binding buffer of annexin V. Fluorescence was detected using a flow cytometer (BD Biosciences, San Jose, CA, United States) after 20 min in the dark at room temperature. The cells were then counted using Flow Cytometry Cell Quest, and data were analyzed using Magnetic Cell Sorting Quant.

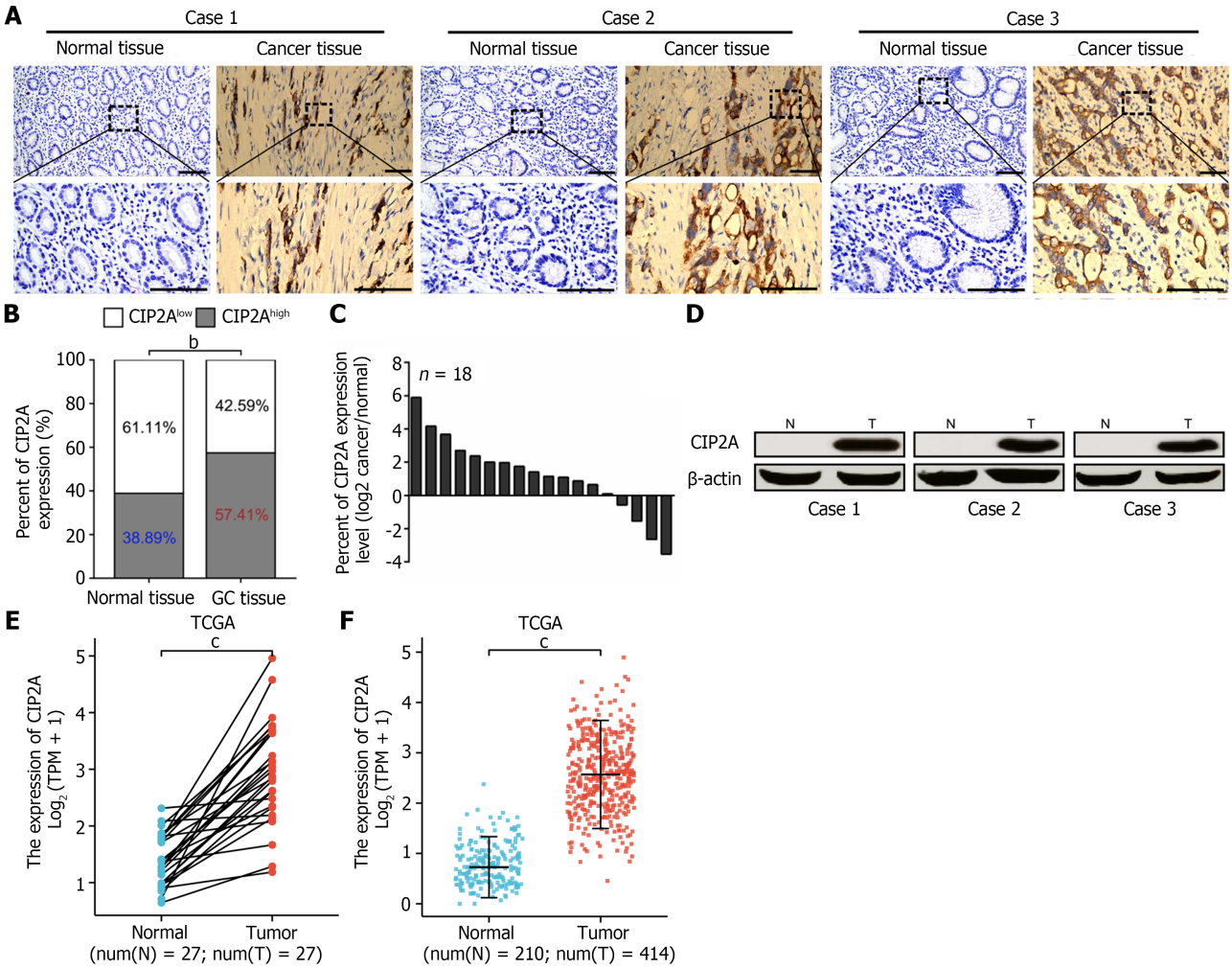
Statistical analysis

All examinations were performed in triplicate, and the results were presented as mean ± standard deviation. To compare absorbance values and percentages of apoptotic and viable cells, the two-tailed Student's *t* test was used. The Pearson's χ^2 test was used to examine the relationship between CIP2A and clinicopathological features. Moreover, survival analysis was conducted using the Kaplan–Meier method, and the difference in survival curves was examined using the log-rank test. We also ran univariate and multivariate Cox proportional hazards regression analyses. All statistical analyses were performed using GraphPad Prism 6.0 and the Statistical Package for the Social Sciences software version 20.0 (IBM, Armonk, United States). SigmaPlot 10.0 (Systat Software Inc., United States) was utilized to display the results. Further, P values of < 0.05 ($^aP < 0.05$, $^bP < 0.01$, $^cP < 0.001$) were considered significant.

RESULTS

High CIP2A expression in GC tissues and its correlation with clinicopathological features

To investigate the clinical value of CIP2A in GC, we assessed the expression of CIP2A in 108 pairs of GC tissue and matched normal tissue samples using IHC and hematoxylin and eosin staining (Figure 1A). CIP2A was found in the nucleus and, more specifically, the cytoplasm of GC cells (Figure 1A). CIP2A expression was found to be significantly higher in tumor tissues. Meanwhile, CIP2A expression was absent or significantly reduced in adjacent normal gastric tissues (Figure 1A). CIP2A expression in GC tissues was significantly higher than that in adjacent normal gastric tissues (Figure 1B). RT-qPCR and Western blot analysis were performed to detect the expression of CIP2A in 18 pairs of fresh GC tissue and adjacent normal gastric tissue samples. Results showed that the expression of CIP2A in GC tissues was significantly higher than that in adjacent normal gastric tissues (Figure 1C and D). This finding supported the IHC analysis results of paraffin-embedded tissues (Figure 1A). The mRNA expression of *CIP2A* was then assessed using The Cancer Genome Atlas data from paired ($n = 27$, $P < 0.05$, Figure 1E)



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.286 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 1 Cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A was highly expressed in gastric cancer tissues. A: Representative immunohistochemistry images of cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A (CIP2A) in the adjacent normal gastric tissues and gastric cancer (GC) tissues (scale bar = 50 μm); B: The percentage of CIP2A^{high} expression was significantly higher in GC tissues than in adjacent normal gastric tissues; C: The mRNA expression levels of *CIP2A* were higher in 18 fresh frozen GC tissues than in matched adjacent normal gastric tissues; D: Western blot analysis showed that CIP2A expression level in tumor tissues (T) was significantly higher than that in adjacent normal tissues (N). Representative images were displayed in paired fresh surgical GC tissues; E and F: Based on data in The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA), including paired sample data and unpaired sample data (F), GC tissues had a higher *CIP2A* expression than adjacent normal gastric tissues. $^{b}P < 0.01$. $^{c}P < 0.001$.

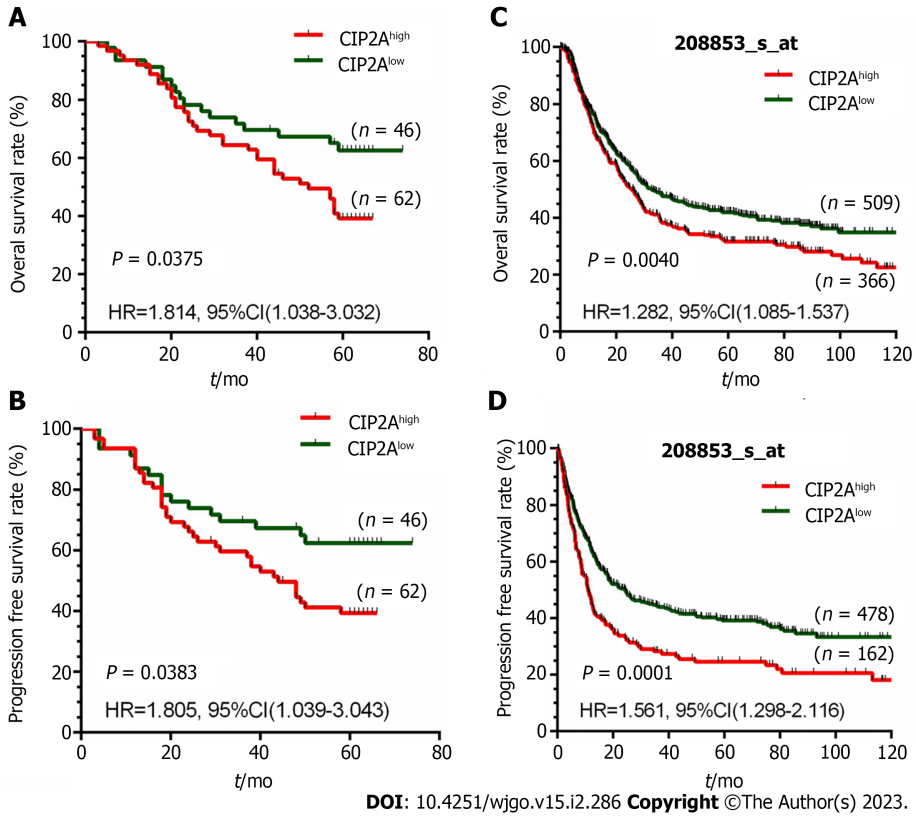
and unpaired databases (n = 210, normal samples; n = 414, tumor samples, $P < 0.05$, Figure 1F). CIP2A expression was significantly higher in GC tissues than in adjacent normal gastric tissues (Figure 1).

We further investigated the relationship between CIP2A expression and clinicopathological features in 108 patients with GC. As shown in Table 1, high CIP2A expression was associated with tumor size (P = 0.015), T stage (P = 0.019), N stage (P = 0.000), and Tumor Node Metastasis stage (P = 0.023) but not with sex (P = 0.184), age (P = 0.676), tumor location (P = 0.756), and histological grade (P = 0.973).

According to these findings, CIP2A expression was significantly higher in GC tissues. CIP2A could thus be an oncogene that promotes tumor development in GC.

Association between the overexpression of CIP2A and poor prognosis in patients with GC

We investigated the prognostic value of CIP2A expression in GC patients. In 108 GC patients followed up for a median of 58 mo (range: 3–74 mo), 61 (56.48%) died and 47 (43.52%) survived. According to the Kaplan–Meier survival analysis, patients with high CIP2A expression had a shorter overall survival (hazard ratio: = 1.814, 95% confidence interval = 1.038–3.032, P = 0.0375, Figure 2A) and progression-free survival (hazard ratio = 1.805, 95% confidence interval = 1.039–3.043, P = 0.0383, Figure 2B) than those with low CIP2A expression. Based on the National Center for Biotechnology Information Gene Expression Omnibus 208853 dataset, a similar trend was discovered, confirming the prognostic significance of *CIP2A* expression in patients with GC (Figure 2C and D).



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.286 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 2 High expression of cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A was associated with poor overall survival rate and progression-free survival rate in patients with gastric cancer. A: Based on the Kaplan–Meier analysis, a high cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A (CIP2A) expression was associated with overall survival (P = 0.0375) in 108 patients with gastric cancer; B: Based on the Kaplan–Meier analysis, a high CIP2A expression was associated with progression-free survival (P = 0.0383) in 108 patients with gastric cancer; C and D: According to the Kaplan–Meier analysis of data on gastric cancer from the 208853_s_at dataset, patients with CIP2A^{high} expression tumors had a significantly lower overall survival rate (P = 0.0040) (C) and progression-free survival rate (P < 0.0001) (D) than those with CIP2A^{low} expression tumors. CI: Confidence interval; HR: Hazard ratio.

The Cox proportional risk regression model was used to evaluate CIP2A expression and the prognostic factors in GC patients. Univariate analysis showed that tumor size, T stage, N stage, Tumor Node Metastasis stage, and CIP2A expression (Tables 2 and 3) were significantly correlated with prognosis in patients with GC. According to the multivariate analysis, a significant increase in CIP2A expression was associated with lower overall survival and progression-free survival rates in patients with GC. Further, the expression of CIP2A was an independent prognostic factor in patients with GC (P = 0.046 and 0.042, Tables 2 and 3). As a result, CIP2A could be an important oncoprotein in the development of GC.

High expression of CIP2A in human GC cell lines

CIP2A has been shown to promote the proliferation of the human GC cell lines AGS and MKN-45. However, its molecular mechanism remains unknown. To determine the expression of CIP2A in AGS, MKN-45, and GES-1, RT-qPCR and immunoblotting were performed. The mRNA expression of *CIP2A* in human GC cell lines AGS and MKN-45 was higher than in the human GC cell line GES-1 (Figure 3A). According to the protein expression analysis, CIP2A expression was higher in the human GC cell lines AGS and MKN-45 (Figure 3B and C). Due to their high expression of CIP2A, AGS and MKN-45 were selected.

Proliferation of human GC cells decreased after knockdown of CIP2A

To assess the role of CIP2A in the growth of human GC cell lines, siRNA targeting CIP2A was transfected into AGS and MKN-45. RT-qPCR revealed that the mRNA expression of *CIP2A* knockdown in MKN-45 cells was 90% lower than that of scrambled siRNA and mock cells (P < 0.01). Meanwhile, the mRNA expression of *CIP2A* knockdown in AGS cells was 88% lower than that of scrambled siRNA and mock cells (P < 0.01). There was no statistically significant difference between the last two samples (Figure 4A and B). These findings were confirmed by immunoblotting (Figure 4C-F). Based on the MTT assay, the downregulation of CIP2A expression significantly reduced the proliferation of AGS and MKN-45 cells. When compared to scrambled siRNA and mock cells, CIP2A siRNA significantly reduced the rate of AGS and MKN-45 cell proliferation (P < 0.05) (Figure 4G and H).

Table 2 Univariate and multivariate analyses of overall survival in patients with gastric cancer

Prognostic variables	Univariate analysis			Multivariate analysis		
	Hazard ratio	95% confidence interval	*P* value	Hazard ratio	95% confidence interval	*P* value
Sex	0.99	0.584–1.679	0.97	-	-	-
Age	1.372	0.820–2.296	0.229	-	-	-
Tumor location	0.925	0.545–1.569	0.772	-	-	-
Histological grade	0.736	0.420–1.288	0.283	-	-	-
Tumor size	2.417	1.399–4.176	0.004[a]	0.87	0.504–1.504	0.619
T stage	3.184	1.687–6.007	0.000[a]	2.651	1.295–5.423	0.008[a]
N stage	2.034	1.196–3.457	0.009[a]	1.414	0.709–2.818	0.325
TNM stage	1.946	1.168–3.243	0.011[a]	0.912	0.469–1.774	0.786
CIP2A expression	2.319	1.288–3.927	0.003[a]	1. 802	1.012–3.210	0.046[a]

[a]$P < 0.05$.

T: Tumor; N: Node; TNM: Tumor Node Metastasis; CIP2A: Cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A.

Table 3 Univariate and multivariate analyses of progression-free survival in patients with gastric cancer

Prognostic variables	Univariate analysis			Multivariate analysis		
	Hazard ratio	95% confidence interval	*P* value	Hazard ratio	95% confidence interval	*P* value
Sex	0.973	0.574–1.650	0.919	-	-	-
Age	1.363	0.814–2.281	0.239	-	-	-
Tumor location	0.913	0.538–1.548	0.735	-	-	-
Histological grade	0.73	0.417–1.278	0.27	-	-	-
Tumor size	2.43	1.407–4.197	0.004[a]	0.869	0.504–1.499	0.614
T stage	3.15	1.669–5.943	0.000[a]	2.644	1.294–5.420	0.009[a]
N stage	2.044	1.202–3.476	0.008[a]	1.451	0.728–2.891	0.29
TNM stage	1.917	1.150–3.194	0.013[a]	0.88	0.452–1.713	0.88
CIP2A expression	2.309	1.282–3.911	0.003[a]	1.821	1.021–3.247	0.042[a]

[a]$P < 0.05$.

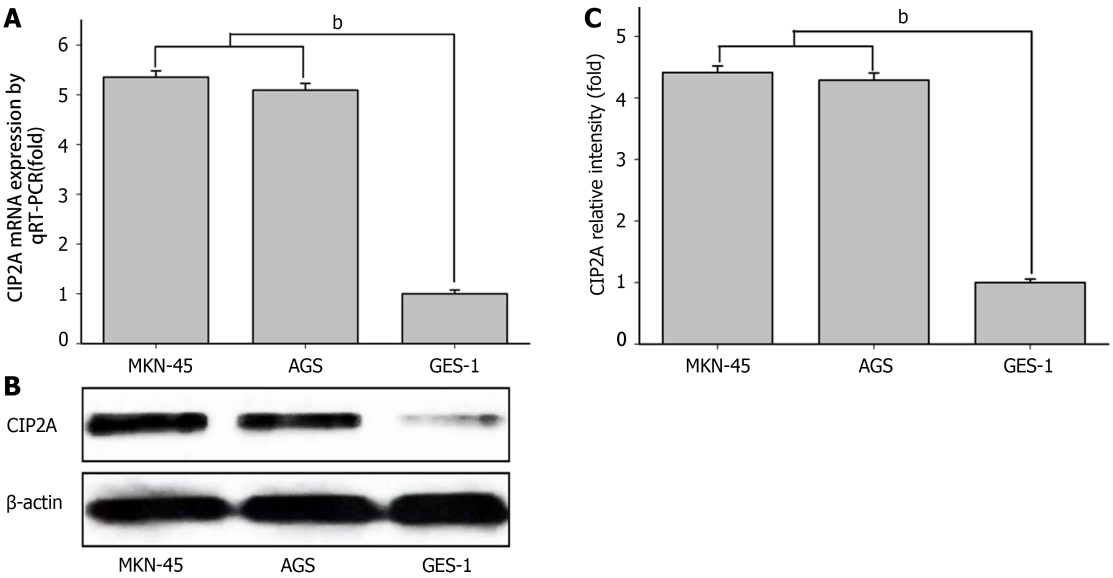
T: Tumor; N: Node; TNM: Tumor Node Metastasis; CIP2A: Cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A.

Increased sensitivity to oxaliplatin in human GC cells induced by the knockdown of CIP2A

CIP2A may be overexpressed in human GC cells. Thus, there could be a correlation between CIP2A expression and oxaliplatin sensitivity. To test this theory, CIP2A knockdown cells were treated with oxaliplatin at various concentrations. CIP2A knockdown increased susceptibility to oxaliplatin significantly (Figure 5A and B). The half maximal inhibitory concentrations of oxaliplatin in CIP2A-downregulated MKN-45 and AGS cells were 2.9 μg/mL and 3.6 μg/mL, respectively. In the control sample, the concentrations were 5.3 μg/mL and 6.2 μg/mL, respectively ($P < 0.05$). The susceptibility of MKN-45 and AGS cells to oxaliplatin were strengthened by 45% and 42%, respectively. Thus, cells with downregulated CIP2A expression were more sensitive to oxaliplatin treatment.

Oxaliplatin-induced apoptosis in human GC cells induced by the knockdown of CIP2A

Flow cytometric analysis was used to determine whether CIP2A knockdown promoted cell apoptosis. Following oxaliplatin treatment, propidium iodide and annexin V staining were performed. Interestingly, CIP2A knockdown significantly enhanced apoptosis caused by oxaliplatin (2 μg/mL). The apoptosis rates of CIP2A-downregulated MKN-45 and AGS cells added to oxaliplatin exhibited 33.5% and 23.6%, respectively. Control rates in oxaliplatin-treated cells were 16.3% and 11.6%, respectively ($P < 0.05$). In addition, siRNA transfection of CIP2A did not increase the apoptosis rate (Figure 6A-C). As a result, CIP2A knockdown caused cell apoptosis. Hence, high CIP2A expression could be a factor of



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.286 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 3 Expression of cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A in human gastric cancer cells. A: The mRNA expression of cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A (CIP2A) in human gastric cancer cell lines (MKN-45 and AGS) and normal gastric epithelial cells (GES-1); B: The expression of cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A was examined *via* immunoblotting; C: Immunoblotting was quantified using a spectrophotometer. The results consisted of three independent tests. Gastric cancer cell lines *vs* GES-1. $^{b}P < 0.01$. RT: Reverse transcription.

oxaliplatin resistance in GC cells.

Akt phosphorylation of human GC cells regulated by CIP2A

To validate the potential mechanisms by which CIP2A promoted the chemoresistance of human GC cells, the protein expression and phosphorylation level of Akt signaling in CIP2A knockdown AGS and MKN-45 cells were evaluated. According to the findings, CIP2A knockdown significantly reduced Akt phosphorylation levels (Ser473). However, it had no effect on the level of Akt protein expression (Figure 7A-C). Based on these findings, CIP2A influenced Akt activity in human GC cells, and CIP2A knockdown decreased cell proliferation and increased sensitivity to oxaliplatin in human GC cells by decreasing the Akt activity.

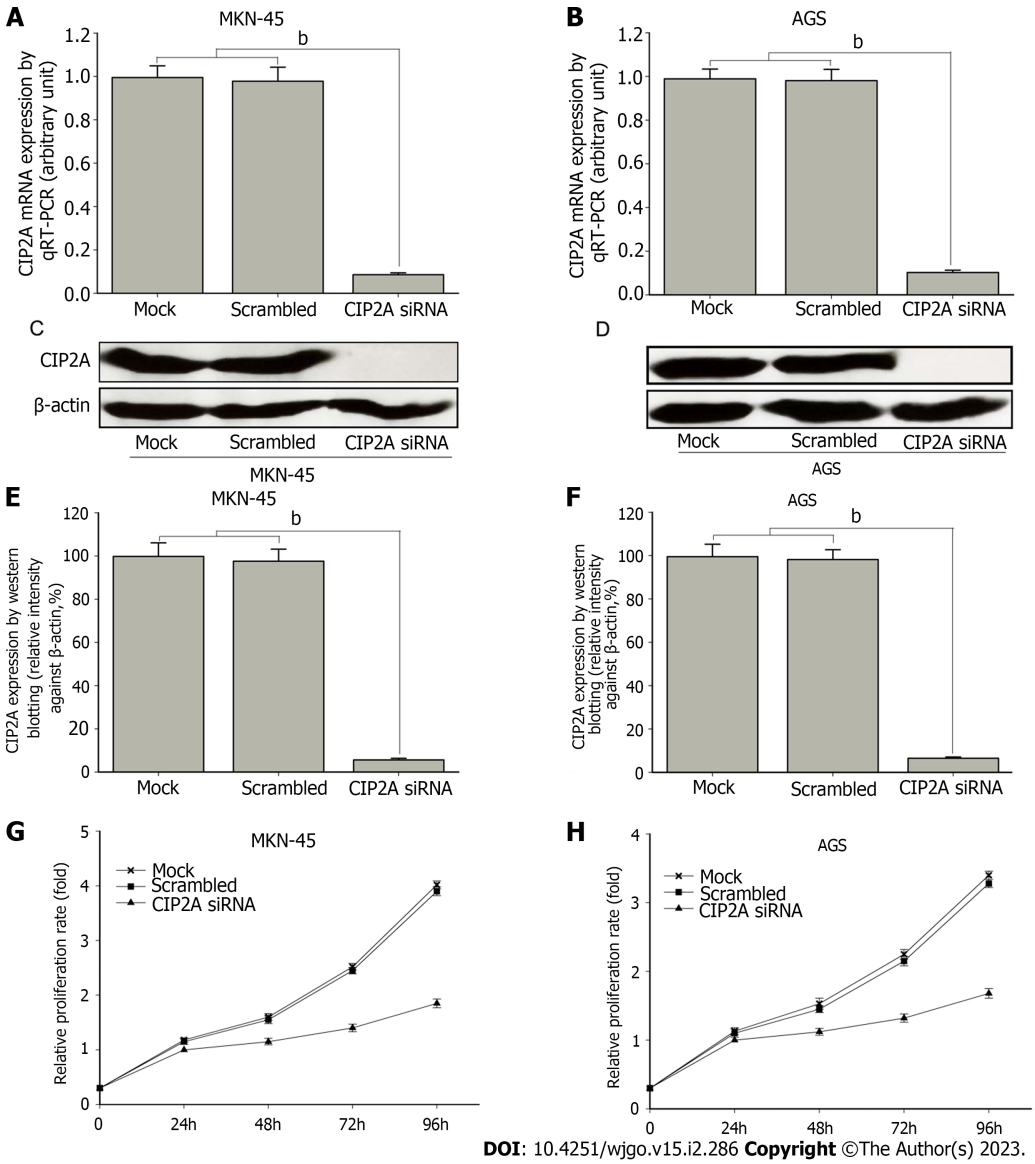
Increased sensitivity to oxaliplatin in human GC cells caused by chemical inhibition of Akt signaling

Moreover, to validate the effects of Akt signaling in CIP2A with respect to sensitivity to oxaliplatin, MK-2206, an allosteric Akt inhibitor, was used to pretreat the high expression CIP2A human GC cell line. The expression of the indicated proteins and sensitivity to oxaliplatin were assessed using immunoblotting and the MTT assay, respectively. Pretreatment with MK-2206 reduced p-Akt levels (Figure 8A and B) while increasing sensitivity to oxaliplatin (Figure 8C and D) in MKN-45 and AGS cells. Thus, Akt signaling may play a role in sensitizing CIP2A overexpression in human GC cells exposed to oxaliplatin.

DISCUSSION

When first diagnosed, most patients have middle- and late-stage GC. The only curative treatment option for gastric tumors is surgical resection. However, patients frequently relapse after resection. Therefore, after 1B resection, combination therapy has become the standard treatment for advanced-stage disease [29]. As the first-line chemotherapy regimen, a platinum–fluoropyrimidine-based treatment is often used[30]. Oxaliplatin, as the third-generation platinum derivative, has been used successfully to treat GC[31,32]. According to the CLASSIC trial, XELOX (capecitabine and oxaliplatin) is superior to observation alone after D2 radical gastrectomy. Hence, chemotherapy is effective[33]. Although patients initially respond well to oxaliplatin, they eventually develop resistance[34,35]. Tumor cells can gain resistance to the cytotoxic effects of oxaliplatin, similar to other anticancer drugs[36]. However, its specific molecular mechanism remains unknown, and it must be investigated further.

CIP2A promotes cell proliferation and tumorigenesis in numerous types of tumors by maintaining c-Myc[18,22,37]. In addition, CIP2A overexpression is correlated with a poor prognosis[21,37]. Interestingly, recent studies on breast, colon, and lung cancer cells have revealed that overexpression of CIP2A may induce chemoresistance in cancer cells[24,25]. The current study sought to determine the



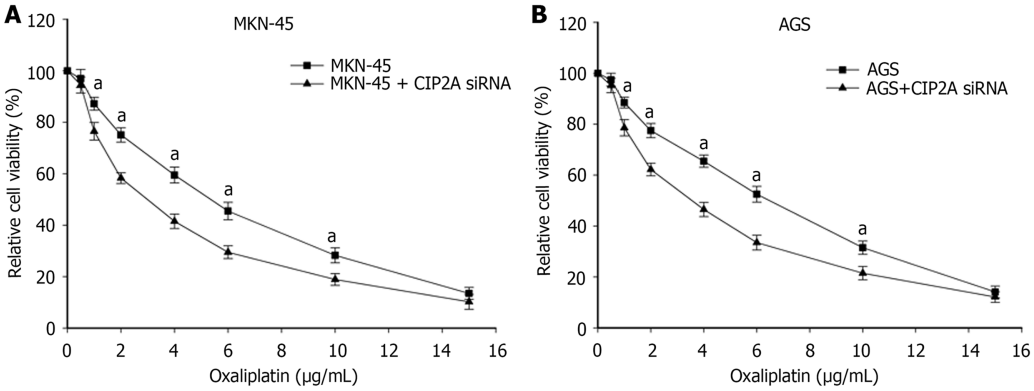
DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.286 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 4 Small interference RNA targeting cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A effectively downregulated expression and decreased cell proliferation in human gastric cancer cells. MKN-45 and AGS cells were transfected with negative control small interference RNA (siRNA) or cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A (*CIP2A*) siRNA for 48 h. A: *CIP2A* expression in MKN-45 cells was determined *via* real-time quantitative reverse transcription (RT) PCR; B: *CIP2A* expression in AGS cells was determined *via* real-time quantitative RT PCR; C and D: CIP2A expression was determined *via* immunoblotting; E and F: Data were quantified using a spectrophotometer. The CIP2A siRNA group *vs* the control siRNA group. G and H: The downregulation of CIP2A expression could decrease cell proliferation in MKN-45 and AGS cells based on the 3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide tetrazolium assay. Data showed a significant reduction in the proliferation of CIP2A siRNA-treated cells. The results were three independent tests. $^{b}P < 0.01$.

association between CIP2A expression and oxaliplatin sensitivity.

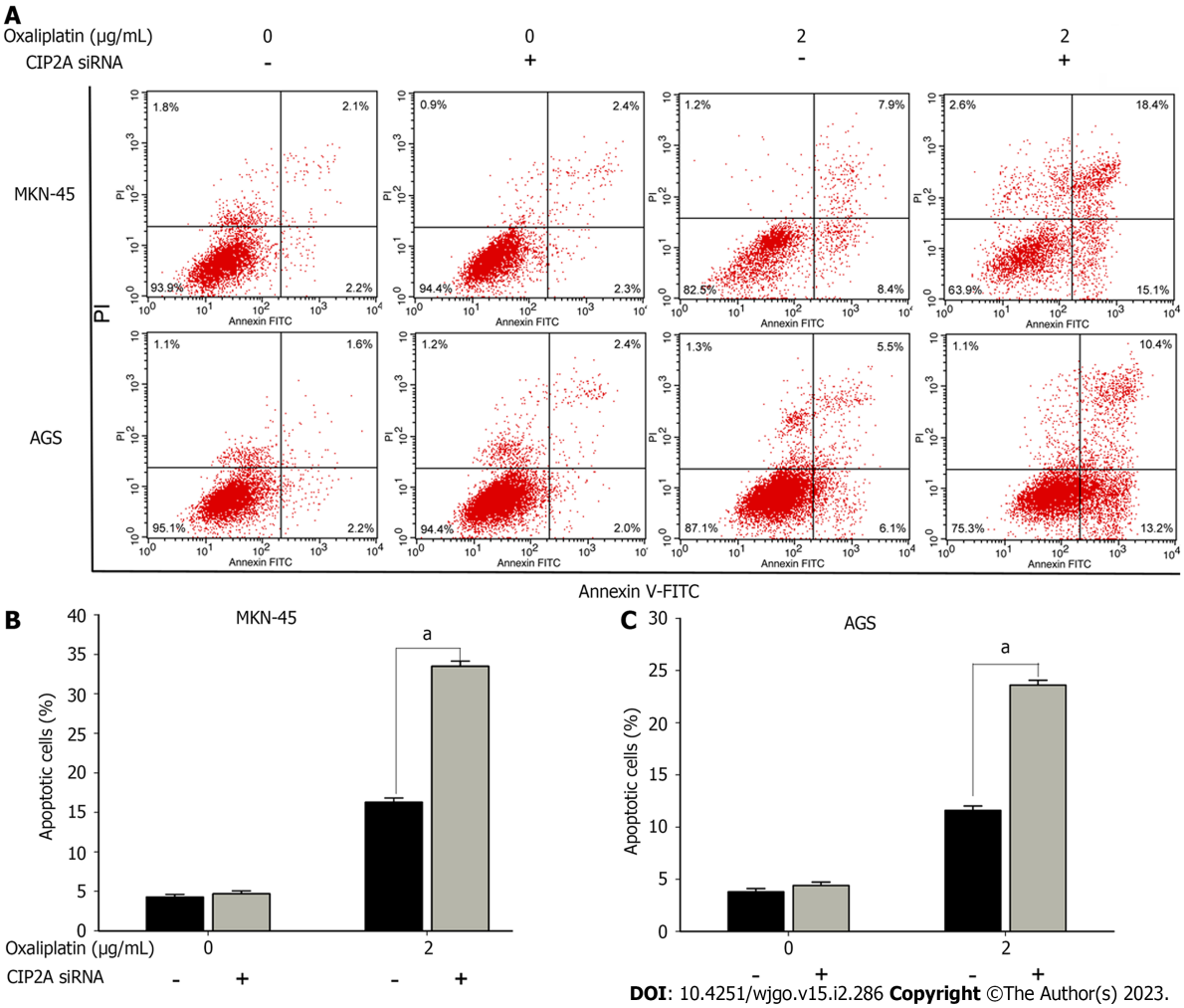
Using The Cancer Genome Atlas data analysis, we discovered that the expression of *CIP2A* in GC tissues was significantly higher than that in adjacent normal gastric tissues. We also confirmed consistent results in GC tissue specimens. Survival analysis revealed that *CIP2A* expression was significantly correlated with overall survival and progression-free survival in patients with GC. Moreover, CIP2A expression in GC cells was significantly higher compared to GES-1 cells. CIP2A overexpression has previously been observed in several GC cells[38], and this finding is similar to the current study. As a result, MKN-45 and AGS were studied further because they have high CIP2A expression[18,39-41].

We performed siRNA knockdown of CIP2A expression to investigate its biological function in GC cells. Results showed that CIP2A silencing reduced the growth rate of MKN-45 and AGS cells, indicating that CIP2A plays an important role in GC cell proliferation. A similar finding has been reported in our previous studies[42]. To investigate the association between CIP2A expression and drug sensitivity, we knocked down CIP2A in GC cells and tested their sensitivity to oxaliplatin treatment. Previous studies have shown that the knockdown of CIP2A significantly increased the susceptibility of GC cells to oxaliplatin. Based on some reports, CIP2A can promote the proliferation of colon cancer



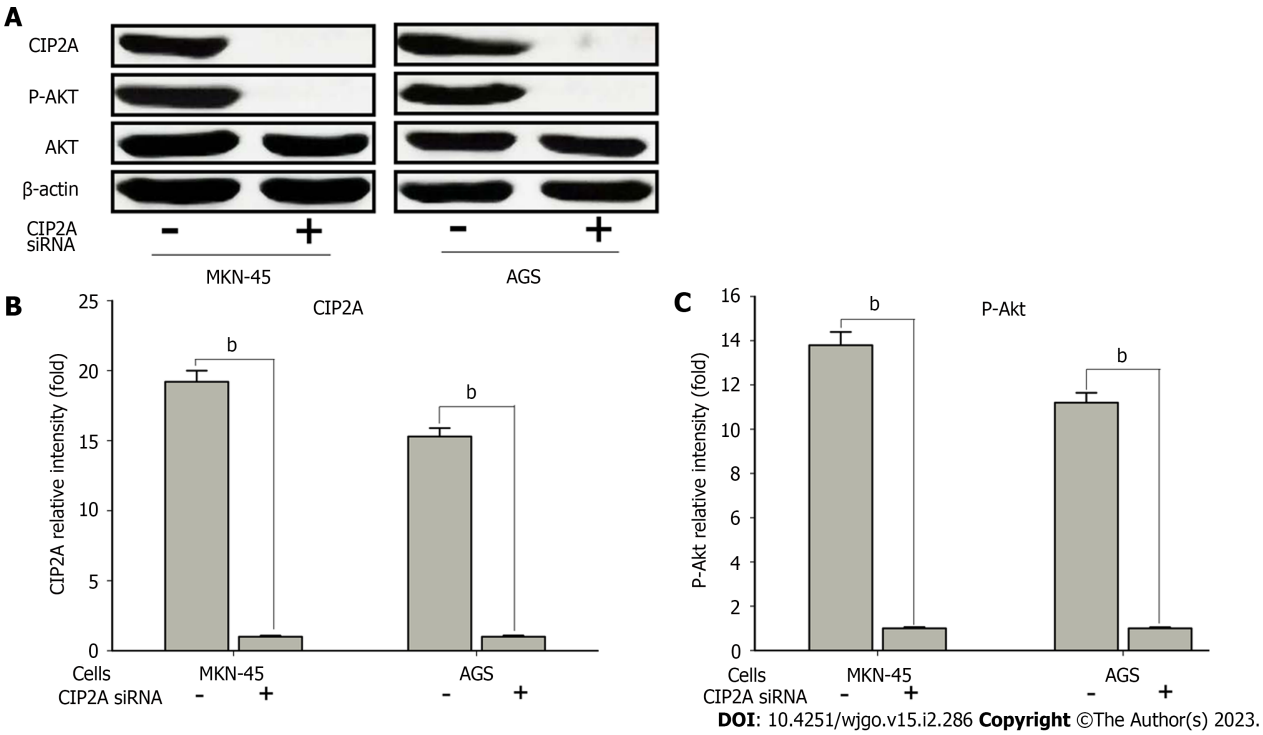
DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.286 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 5 Downregulation of cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A significantly increased sensitivity to oxaliplatin in human gastric cancer cells. A: MKN-45 cells were transfected with cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A (CIP2A) small interfering RNA (siRNA) for 48 h and were added with oxaliplatin at different concentrations for 24 h; B: AGS cells were transfected with cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A siRNA for 48 h and were added with oxaliplatin at different concentrations for 24 h. The cell viability was examined using the 3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide tetrazolium assay. The results consisted of three independent tests. The siRNA group *vs* the control siRNA group. $^{b}P < 0.01$.



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.286 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 6 Downregulation of cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A promoted oxaliplatin-related apoptosis in human gastric cancer cells. Control small interference RNA (siRNA) and cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A (CIP2A) siRNA-transfected human gastric cancer cells were exposed to oxaliplatin (2 μg/mL). A: At 24 h after treatment, apoptosis was examined *via* annexin V/propidium iodide staining and flow cytometry; B and C: The percentage of apoptotic cells was quantitatively presented in MKN-45 (B) and AGS (C) cells. The results consisted of three independent tests. The cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A siRNA group *vs* the control siRNA group. $^{a}P < 0.05$. V-FITC: V-fluorescein 5-isothiocyanate.



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.286 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 7 Cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A affected protein kinase B phosphorylation in human gastric cancer cells. MKN-45 and AGS cells were transfected with the control small interfering RNA (siRNA) or cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A (CIP2A) siRNA for 48 h. A: Immunoblotting was used to analyze the indicated protein expression; B and C: The CIP2A (B) and phosphorylated protein kinase B (p-Akt) (C) protein levels were quantified using a spectrophotometer. The results consisted of three independent tests. $^{b}P < 0.01$. Akt: Protein kinase B.

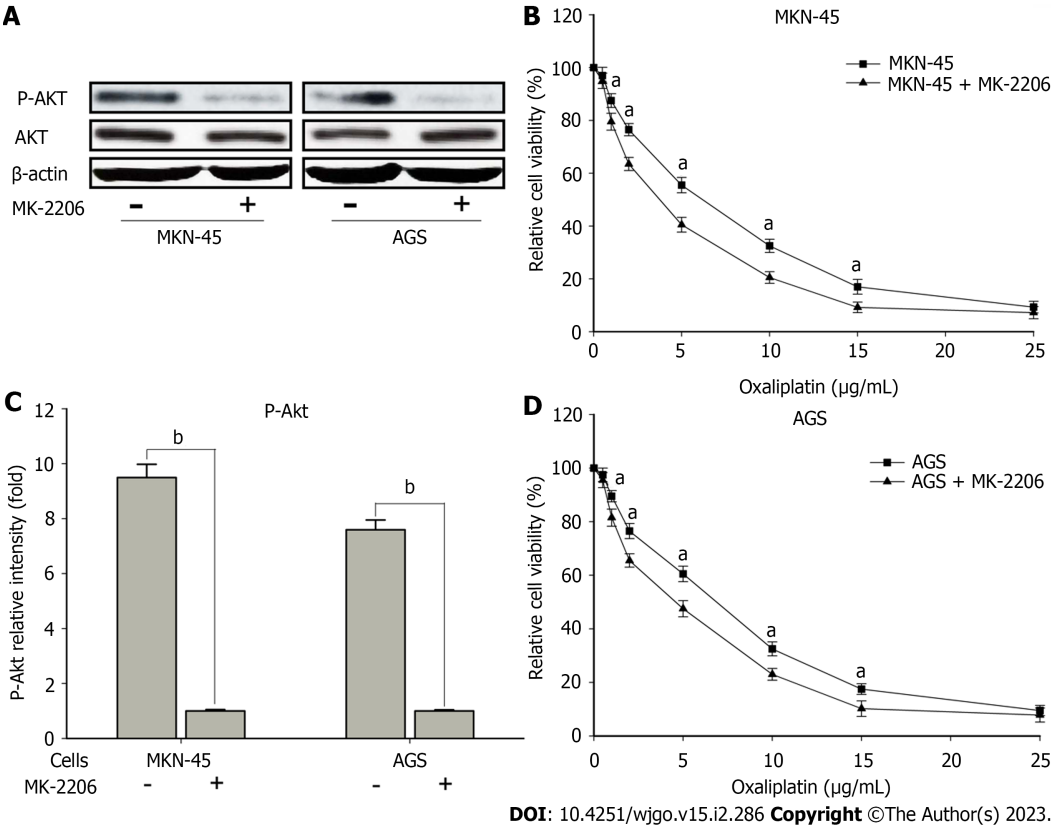
cells, and CIP2A knockdown significantly increased sensitivity to oxaliplatin in colon cancer cells[43,44]. As a result, GC cells with CIP2A expression downregulation were more sensitive to oxaliplatin treatment.

Oxaliplatin has the ability to cause apoptosis in GC cells[45,46]. Nevertheless, the underlying mechanism is unknown. Previous studies have shown that CIP2A plays an important role in lung cancer cell apoptosis when treated with cisplatin[47]. The biological impact of CIP2A is a common phenomenon in tumor cells. According to a recent study, the downregulation of CIP2A expression in MKN-45 and AGS cells increased apoptosis and oxaliplatin sensitivity, which could be a cause of oxaliplatin resistance in GC. Therefore, CIP2A knockdown made GC cells more susceptible to oxaliplatin-induced apoptosis, enhancing the cytotoxic effect of oxaliplatin.

According to a previous study, inhibiting the Akt pathway sensitizes GC cells to apoptosis caused by cisplatin[48]. Therefore, we discovered that signaling was correlated with the biological behaviors of CIP2A. Since the phosphorylation of Akt is a critical step in phosphoinositide 3-kinase/Akt signaling activation[49], we confirmed its association with CIP2A expression. CIP2A knockdown caused the phosphorylation of Akt in both MKN-45 and AGS cells, according to the findings. Moreover, the chemical inhibition of the Akt signaling pathway increased oxaliplatin sensitivity in human GC cells. Several studies have found that the downregulation of CIP2A expression can improve the efficacy of chemotherapeutic drugs and inhibit Akt signaling in colorectal and lung cancers[26,38]. As a result, the association between CIP2A and the Akt signaling pathway might be involved in the biological functions of GC cells. This interaction could be correlated with oxaliplatin resistance in GC.

CONCLUSION

A high expression of CIP2A can promote chemoresistance to oxaliplatin in GC, and Akt signaling may play a role in this mechanism. The inhibition of CIP2A significantly improved sensitivity to oxaliplatin in human GC cells. As a result, suppressing CIP2A expression may be an indirect strategy for more effectively treating patients with GC. Nevertheless, further clinical trials on the role of this signaling pathway should be conducted.



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.286 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 8 Chemical inhibition of protein kinase B signaling significantly increased sensitivity to oxaliplatin in human gastric cancer cells. MKN-45 and AGS cells were added to inhibitor of protein kinase B (MK-2206; 20 μM) for 2 h. A: Immunoblotting was performed to evaluate the corresponding protein expression; B: The phosphorylated protein kinase B (P-Akt) protein levels were quantified *via* densitometry; C and D: The pretreated cells were exposed to oxaliplatin at different concentrations for 24 h, and the viability was examined using the 3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide tetrazolium assay. The results consisted of three independent tests. The MK-2206-treated group *vs* the control group. [a]*P* < 0.05. [b]*P* < 0.01. Akt: Protein kinase B.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A (CIP2A) plays a key role in various types of tumors, which may be related to the resistance of gastric cancer (GC) cells to oxaliplatin.

Research motivation

The mechanism of drug resistance in gastric cancer needs to be further studied, and CIP2A expression in GC cells and the mechanism of oxaliplatin resistance may be a breakthrough.

Research objectives

To explore the expression of the CIP2A in human GC cells and its correlation with oxaliplatin resistance.

Research methods

Immunohistochemistry was used to examine CIP2A expression in GC tissues and adjacent normal tissues. *CIP2A* gene expression in GC cell lines was reduced using small interfering RNA. After confirming the silencing efficiency, 3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide tetrazolium and flow cytometry assays were used to evaluate cell proliferation and apoptosis, respectively, caused by oxaliplatin treatment. Further, the key genes and protein changes were verified using real-time quantitative reverse transcription PCR and Western blotting, respectively, before and after intervention. For bioinformatics analysis, we used the R software and Bioconductor project. For statistical analysis, we used GraphPad Prism 6.0 and the Statistical Package for the Social Sciences software version 20.0.

Research results

High CIP2A expression was associated with tumor size, T stage, lymph node metastasis, Tumor Node Metastasis stage, and poor prognosis. CIP2A knockdown inhibited cell proliferation and significantly increased the susceptibility of GC cells to oxaliplatin. CIP2A regulated the phosphorylation of protein

kinase B, and chemical inhibition of the protein kinase B signaling pathway was significantly associated with increased sensitivity to oxaliplatin.

Research conclusions

CIP2A expression was closely related to chemotherapy resistance of GC cells. The protein kinase B signaling pathway was correlated with CIP2A-enhanced chemoresistance of human GC cells to oxaliplatin.

Research perspectives

Regulation of CIP2A expression may be one of the key points in the treatment of GC chemotherapy resistance.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors would like to express their gratitude to Doctor Lei Jiang (The Sixth Department of General Surgery, The First Hospital of Lanzhou University, Gansu, China) for the critical revision of this manuscript. The authors also greatly appreciate the experimental assistance provided by Doctor Yu-Ping Wang (The Department of Gastroenterology, The First Hospital of Lanzhou University, Gansu, China).

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Zhao YX, Yang Z, Dang JY, and Wang F performed the experiments and image acquisition; Zhao YX, Ze Yang, Ma LB, and Wang HY designed the study and wrote the manuscript; Zhao YX, Yang Z, and Ma LB edited the manuscript.

Supported by This work was supported by the Natural Science Foundation of Gansu Province, China, No. 17JR5RA272 and No. 22JR5RA923; and the Research Fund Project of The First Hospital of Lanzhou University, No. ldyyyn2021-120, No. ldyyyn2020-98 and No. ldyyyn2021-30.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Lanzhou University No.1 Hospital Institutional Review Board (Approval No. LDYYLL-2022-376).

Informed consent statement: All study participants, or their legal guardian, provided informed written consent prior to study enrollment.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that they have no competing interests.

Data sharing statement: The datasets used and/or analyzed during this study are available from the corresponding author upon reasonable request.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Yong-Xun Zhao 0000-0002-7728-1248; Ze Yang 0000-0003-4546-9753.

S-Editor: Liu GL
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Cai YX

REFERENCES

1 **Siegel RL**, Miller KD, Fuchs HE, Jemal A. Cancer Statistics, 2021. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2021; **71**: 7-33 [PMID: 33433946 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21654]
2 **Lin L**, Yan L, Liu Y, Yuan F, Li H, Ni J. Incidence and death in 29 cancer groups in 2017 and trend analysis from 1990 to 2017 from the Global Burden of Disease Study. *J Hematol Oncol* 2019; **12**: 96 [PMID: 31511035 DOI: 10.1186/s13045-019-0783-9]

3 **Carlson RW**, Anderson BO, Burstein HJ, Carter WB, Edge SB, Farrar WB, Goldstein LJ, Gradishar WJ, Hayes DF, Hudis CA, Jahanzeb M, Ljung BM, Kiel K, Marks LB, McCormick B, Nabell LM, Pierce LJ, Reed EC, Silver SM, Smith ML, Somlo G, Theriault RL, Ward JH, Winer EP, Wolff AC. Invasive breast cancer. *J Natl Compr Canc Netw* 2007; **5**: 246-312 [PMID: 17439758 DOI: 10.6004/jnccn.2007.0025]

4 **Maacha S**, Bhat AA, Jimenez L, Raza A, Haris M, Uddin S, Grivel JC. Extracellular vesicles-mediated intercellular communication: roles in the tumor microenvironment and anti-cancer drug resistance. *Mol Cancer* 2019; **18**: 55 [PMID: 30925923 DOI: 10.1186/s12943-019-0965-7]

5 **Xiao C**, Qian J, Zheng Y, Song F, Wang Q, Jiang H, Mao C, Xu N. A phase II study of biweekly oxaliplatin plus S-1 combination chemotherapy as a first-line treatment for patients with metastatic or advanced gastric cancer in China. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2019; **98**: e15696 [PMID: 31096513 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000015696]

6 **Peng J**, Tan C, Zeng X, Liu S. Cost-effectiveness analysis of capecitabine monotherapy *vs* capecitabine plus oxaliplatin in elderly patients with advanced gastric cancer. *PloS One* 2018; **13**: e0199553 [PMID: 29953476 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0199553]

7 **Al-Batran SE**, Homann N, Pauligk C, Goetze TO, Meiler J, Kasper S, Kopp HG, Mayer F, Haag GM, Luley K, Lindig U, Schmiegel W, Pohl M, Stoehlmacher J, Folprecht G, Probst S, Prasnikar N, Fischbach W, Mahlberg R, Trojan J, Koenigsmann M, Martens UM, Thuss-Patience P, Egger M, Block A, Heinemann V, Illerhaus G, Moehler M, Schenk M, Kullmann F, Behringer DM, Heike M, Pink D, Teschendorf C, Löhr C, Bernhard H, Schuch G, Rethwisch V, von Weikersthal LF, Hartmann JT, Kneba M, Daum S, Schulmann K, Weniger J, Belle S, Gaiser T, Oduncu FS, Güntner M, Hozaeel W, Reichart A, Jäger E, Kraus T, Mönig S, Bechstein WO, Schuler M, Schmalenberg H, Hofheinz RD; FLOT4-AIO Investigators. Perioperative chemotherapy with fluorouracil plus leucovorin, oxaliplatin, and docetaxel *vs* fluorouracil or capecitabine plus cisplatin and epirubicin for locally advanced, resectable gastric or gastro-oesophageal junction adenocarcinoma (FLOT4): a randomised, phase 2/3 trial. *Lancet* 2019; **393**: 1948-1957 [PMID: 30982686 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(18)32557-1]

8 **Jiang Y**, Liu W, Li T, Hu Y, Chen S, Xi S, Wen Y, Huang L, Zhao L, Xiao C, Huang X, Han Z, Liu H, Qi X, Yang Y, Yu J, Cai S, Li G. Prognostic and Predictive Value of p21-activated Kinase 6 Associated Support Vector Machine Classifier in Gastric Cancer Treated by 5-fluorouracil/Oxaliplatin Chemotherapy. *EbioMedicine* 2017; **22**: 78-88 [PMID: 28687498 DOI: 10.1016/j.ebiom.2017.06.028]

9 **Yudushkin I**. Getting the Akt Together: Guiding Intracellular Akt Activity by PI3K. *Biomolecules* 2019; **9** [PMID: 30781447 DOI: 10.3390/biom9020067]

10 **Wang S**, Liu F, Zhu J, Chen P, Liu H, Liu Q, Han J. DNA Repair Genes ERCC1 and BRCA1 Expression in Non-Small Cell Lung Cancer Chemotherapy Drug Resistance. *Med Sci Monit* 2016; **22**: 1999-2005 [PMID: 27289442 DOI: 10.12659/msm.896606]

11 **Lu ZN**, Shi ZY, Dang YF, Cheng YN, Guan YH, Hao ZJ, Tian B, He HW, Guo XL. Pantoprazole pretreatment elevates sensitivity to vincristine in drug-resistant oral epidermoid carcinoma *in vitro* and in vivo. *Biomed Pharmacother* 2019; **120**: 109478 [PMID: 31568987 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopha.2019.109478]

12 **Qiu N**, He YF, Zhang SM, Zhan YT, Han GD, Jiang M, He WX, Zhou J, Liang HL, Ao X, Xia HM, Li J, Yang YY, He ZM, Zou ZZ, Li HS. Cullin7 enhances resistance to trastuzumab therapy in Her2 positive breast cancer *via* degrading IRS-1 and downregulating IGFBP-3 to activate the PI3K/AKT pathway. *Cancer Lett* 2019; **464**: 25-36 [PMID: 31461670 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2019.08.008]

13 **Hudis C**, Swanton C, Janjigian YY, Lee R, Sutherland S, Lehman R, Chandarlapaty S, Hamilton N, Gajria D, Knowles J, Shah J, Shannon K, Tetteh E, Sullivan DM, Moreno C, Yan L, Han HS. A phase 1 study evaluating the combination of an allosteric AKT inhibitor (MK-2206) and trastuzumab in patients with HER2-positive solid tumors. *Breast Cancer Res* 2013; **15**: R110 [PMID: 24252402 DOI: 10.1186/bcr3577]

14 **Xu J**, Liu D, Niu H, Zhu G, Xu Y, Ye D, Li J, Zhang Q. Resveratrol reverses Doxorubicin resistance by inhibiting epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT) through modulating PTEN/Akt signaling pathway in gastric cancer. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 2017; **36**: 19 [PMID: 28126034 DOI: 10.1186/s13046-016-0487-8]

15 **Kuai WX**, Wang Q, Yang XZ, Zhao Y, Yu R, Tang XJ. Interleukin-8 associates with adhesion, migration, invasion and chemosensitivity of human gastric cancer cells. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 979-985 [PMID: 22408359 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i9.979]

16 **Luo HY**, Wei W, Shi YX, Chen XQ, Li YH, Wang F, Qiu MZ, Li FH, Yan SL, Zeng MS, Huang P, Xu RH. Cetuximab enhances the effect of oxaliplatin on hypoxic gastric cancer cell lines. *Oncol Rep* 2010; **23**: 1735-1745 [PMID: 20428833 DOI: 10.3892/or_00000819]

17 **Guo Q**, Jing FJ, Qu HJ, Xu W, Han B, Xing XM, Ji HY, Jing FB. Ubenimex Reverses MDR in Gastric Cancer Cells by Activating Caspase-3-Mediated Apoptosis and Suppressing the Expression of Membrane Transport Proteins. *Biomed Res Int* 2019; **2019**: 4390839 [PMID: 30915355 DOI: 10.1155/2019/4390839]

18 **Junttila MR**, Puustinen P, Niemelä M, Ahola R, Arnold H, Böttzauw T, Ala-aho R, Nielsen C, Ivaska J, Taya Y, Lu SL, Lin S, Chan EK, Wang XJ, Grènman R, Kast J, Kallunki T, Sears R, Kähäri VM, Westermarck J. CIP2A inhibits PP2A in human malignancies. *Cell* 2007; **130**: 51-62 [PMID: 17632056 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2007.04.044]

19 **Khanna A**, Pimanda JE. Clinical significance of cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A in human cancers. *Int J Cancer* 2016; **138**: 525-532 [PMID: 25628223 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.29431]

20 **De P**, Carlson J, Leyland-Jones B, Dey N. Oncogenic nexus of cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A (CIP2A): an oncoprotein with many hands. *Oncotarget* 2014; **5**: 4581-4602 [PMID: 25015035 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.2127]

21 **Li W**, Ge Z, Liu C, Liu Z, Björkholm M, Jia J, Xu D. CIP2A is overexpressed in gastric cancer and its depletion leads to impaired clonogenicity, senescence, or differentiation of tumor cells. *Clin Cancer Res* 2008; **14**: 3722-3728 [PMID: 18559589 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-07-4137]

22 **Khanna A**, Böckelman C, Hemmes A, Junttila MR, Wiksten JP, Lundin M, Junnila S, Murphy DJ, Evan GI, Haglund C, Westermarck J, Ristimäki A. MYC-dependent regulation and prognostic role of CIP2A in gastric cancer. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2009; **101**: 793-805 [PMID: 19470954 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djp103]

23 **Li Y**, Wang M, Zhu X, Cao X, Wu Y, Fang F. Prognostic Significance of CIP2A in Esophagogastric Junction

Adenocarcinoma: A Study of 65 Patients and a Meta-Analysis. *Dis Markers* 2019; **2019**: 2312439 [PMID: 31534561 DOI: 10.1155/2019/2312439]

24 **Choi YA**, Park JS, Park MY, Oh KS, Lee MS, Lim JS, Kim KI, Kim KY, Kwon J, Yoon DY, Moon EY, Yang Y. Increase in CIP2A expression is associated with doxorubicin resistance. *FEBS Lett* 2011; **585**: 755-760 [PMID: 21241697 DOI: 10.1016/j.febslet.2011.01.018]

25 **Wei L**, Qu W, Sun J, Wang X, Lv L, Xie L, Song X. Knockdown of cancerous inhibitor of protein phosphatase 2A may sensitize NSCLC cells to cisplatin. *Cancer Gene Ther* 2014; **21**: 194-199 [PMID: 24874844 DOI: 10.1038/cgt.2014.18]

26 **He X**, Wu W, Lin Z, Ding Y, Si J, Sun LM. Validation of the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) 8th edition stage system for gastric cancer patients: a population-based analysis. *Gastric Cancer* 2018; **21**: 391-400 [PMID: 29052053 DOI: 10.1007/s10120-017-0770-1]

27 **Reiner A**, Spona J, Reiner G, Schemper M, Kolb R, Kwasny W, Függer R, Jakesz R, Holzner JH. Estrogen receptor analysis on biopsies and fine-needle aspirates from human breast carcinoma. Correlation of biochemical and immunohistochemical methods using monoclonal antireceptor antibodies. *Am J Pathol* 1986; **125**: 443-449 [PMID: 3541638 DOI: 10.21276/ijcmr.2020.7.1.34]

28 **Liu L**, Wu N, Wang Y, Zhang X, Xia B, Tang J, Cai J, Zhao Z, Liao Q, Wang J. TRPM7 promotes the epithelial-mesenchymal transition in ovarian cancer through the calcium-related PI3K / AKT oncogenic signaling. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 2019; **38**: 106 [PMID: 30819230 DOI: 10.1186/s13046-019-1061-y]

29 **Waddell T**, Verheij M, Allum W, Cunningham D, Cervantes A, Arnold D. Gastric cancer: ESMO-ESSO-ESTRO clinical practice guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2014; **40**: 584-591 [PMID: 24685156 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2013.09.020]

30 **Seo S**, Ryu MH, Ryoo BY, Park Y, Park YS, Na YS, Lee CW, Lee JK, Kang YK. Clinical significance of MET gene amplification in metastatic or locally advanced gastric cancer treated with first-line fluoropyrimidine and platinum combination chemotherapy. *Chin J Cancer Res* 2019; **31**: 620-631 [PMID: 31564805 DOI: 10.21147/j.issn.1000-9604.2019.04.06]

31 **Cunningham D**, Okines AF, Ashley S. Capecitabine and oxaliplatin for advanced esophagogastric cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 858-859 [PMID: 20200397 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc0911925]

32 **Waddell T**, Chau I, Cunningham D, Gonzalez D, Okines AF, Okines C, Wotherspoon A, Saffery C, Middleton G, Wadsley J, Ferry D, Mansoor W, Crosby T, Coxon F, Smith D, Waters J, Iveson T, Falk S, Slater S, Peckitt C, Barbachano Y. Epirubicin, oxaliplatin, and capecitabine with or without panitumumab for patients with previously untreated advanced oesophagogastric cancer (REAL3): a randomised, open-label phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2013; **14**: 481-489 [PMID: 23594787 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(13)70096-2]

33 **Noh SH**, Park SR, Yang HK, Chung HC, Chung IJ, Kim SW, Kim HH, Choi JH, Kim HK, Yu W, Lee JI, Shin DB, Ji J, Chen JS, Lim Y, Ha S, Bang YJ; CLASSIC trial investigators. Adjuvant capecitabine plus oxaliplatin for gastric cancer after D2 gastrectomy (CLASSIC): 5-year follow-up of an open-label, randomised phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2014; **15**: 1389-1396 [PMID: 25439693 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(14)70473-5]

34 **Peinert S**, Grothe W, Stein A, Müller LP, Ruessel J, Voigt W, Schmoll HJ, Arnold D. Safety and efficacy of weekly 5-fluorouracil/folinic acid/oxaliplatin/irinotecan in the first-line treatment of gastrointestinal cancer. *Ther Adv Med Oncol* 2010; **2**: 161-174 [PMID: 21789132 DOI: 10.1177/1758834010365061]

35 **Bang YJ**, Kang YK, Ng M, Chung HC, Wainberg ZA, Gendreau S, Chan WY, Xu N, Maslyar D, Meng R, Chau I, Ajani JA. A phase II, randomised study of mFOLFOX6 with or without the Akt inhibitor ipatasertib in patients with locally advanced or metastatic gastric or gastroesophageal junction cancer. *Eur J Cancer* 2019; **108**: 17-24 [PMID: 30592991 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2018.11.017]

36 **Lin L**, Li X, Pan C, Lin W, Shao R, Liu Y, Zhang J, Luo Y, Qian K, Shi M, Bin J, Liao Y, Liao W. ATXN2L upregulated by epidermal growth factor promotes gastric cancer cell invasiveness and oxaliplatin resistance. *Cell Death Dis* 2019; **10**: 173 [PMID: 30787271 DOI: 10.1038/s41419-019-1362-2]

37 **Qu W**, Li W, Wei L, Xing L, Wang X, Yu J. CIP2A is overexpressed in esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. *Med Oncol* 2012; **29**: 113-118 [PMID: 21140243 DOI: 10.1007/s12032-010-9768-9]

38 **Zhang Y**, Huang P, Liu X, Xiang Y, Zhang T, Wu Y, Xu J, Sun Z, Zhen W, Zhang L, Si Y, Liu Y. Polyphyllin I inhibits growth and invasion of cisplatin-resistant gastric cancer cells by partially inhibiting CIP2A/PP2A/Akt signaling axis. *J Pharmacol Sci* 2018; **137**: 305-312 [PMID: 30119963 DOI: 10.1016/j.jphs.2018.07.008]

39 **Zhao D**, Liu Z, Ding J, Li W, Sun Y, Yu H, Zhou Y, Zeng J, Chen C, Jia J. Helicobacter pylori CagA upregulation of CIP2A is dependent on the Src and MEK/ERK pathways. *J Med Microbiol* 2010; **59**: 259-265 [PMID: 19959630 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.014704-0]

40 **Zhao Y**, Li Y, Han J, Liu T, Guan Q, Zhao P, Guo L, Liu K, He D. Helicobacter pylori enhances CIP2A expression and cell proliferation *via* JNK2/ATF2 signaling in human gastric cancer cells. *Int J Mol Med* 2014; **33**: 703-710 [PMID: 24398514 DOI: 10.3892/ijmm.2014.1615]

41 **Li X**, Yuan J, Cao Q, Xie A, Chen J. MicroRNA3835p inhibits the proliferation and promotes the apoptosis of gastric cancer cells by targeting cancerous inhibitor of PP2A. *Int J Mol Med* 2020; **46**: 397-405 [PMID: 32626915 DOI: 10.3892/ijmm.2020.4603]

42 **Liu Y**, Mu R, Gao YP, Dong J, Zhu L, Ma Y, Li YH, Zhang HQ, Han D, Zhang Y, McInnes IB, Zhang J, Shen B, Yang G, Li ZG. A Cytomegalovirus Peptide-Specific Antibody Alters Natural Killer Cell Homeostasis and Is Shared in Several Autoimmune Diseases. *Cell Host Microbe* 2016; **19**: 400-408 [PMID: 26962948 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2016.02.005]

43 **Liu CY**, Hsu CC, Huang TT, Lee CH, Chen JL, Yang SH, Jiang JK, Chen WS, Lee KD, Teng HW. ER stress-related ATF6 upregulates CIP2A and contributes to poor prognosis of colon cancer. *Mol Oncol* 2018; **12**: 1706-1717 [PMID: 30063110 DOI: 10.1002/1878-0261.12365]

44 **Teng HW**, Yang SH, Lin JK, Chen WS, Lin TC, Jiang JK, Yen CC, Li AF, Chen PC, Lan YT, Lin CC, Hsu YN, Wang HW, Chen KF. CIP2A is a predictor of poor prognosis in colon cancer. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2012; **16**: 1037-1047 [PMID: 22328001 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-012-1828-3]

45 **Li Q**, Ren L, Zhang Y, Gu Z, Tan Q, Zhang T, Qin M, Chen S. P38 Signal Transduction Pathway Has More Cofactors on

Apoptosis of SGC-7901 Gastric Cancer Cells Induced by Combination of Rutin and Oxaliplatin. *Biomed Res Int* 2019; **2019**: 6407210 [PMID: 31781632 DOI: 10.1155/2019/6407210]

46 **Zhang P**, Shi L, Zhang T, Hong L, He W, Cao P, Shen X, Zheng P, Xia Y, Zou P. Piperlongumine potentiates the antitumor efficacy of oxaliplatin through ROS induction in gastric cancer cells. *Cell Oncol (Dordr)* 2019; **42**: 847-860 [PMID: 31493144 DOI: 10.1007/s13402-019-00471-x]

47 **Feng FF**, Cheng P, Sun C, Wang H, Wang W. Inhibitory effects of polyphyllins I and VII on human cisplatin-resistant NSCLC *via* p53 upregulation and CIP2A/AKT/mTOR signaling axis inhibition. *Chin J Nat Med* 2019; **17**: 768-777 [PMID: 31703757 DOI: 10.1016/S1875-5364(19)30093-7]

48 **Zhou L**, Wu Y, Guo Y, Li Y, Li N, Yang Y, Qin X. Calycosin Enhances Some Chemotherapeutic Drugs Inhibition of Akt Signaling Pathway in Gastric Cells. *Cancer Invest* 2017; **35**: 289-300 [PMID: 28368679 DOI: 10.1080/07357907.2016.1278226]

49 **Wang C**, Lin C, Tao Q, Zhao S, Liu H, Li L. Evaluation of calcium-binding protein A11 promotes the carcinogenesis of hypopharygeal squamous cell carcinoma *via* the PI3K/AKT signaling pathway. *Am J Transl Res* 2019; **11**: 3472-3480 [PMID: 31312359 DOI: 10.21037/tcr-21-2087]

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2023 February 15; 15(2): 303-317

DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.303

ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

Increased CD4/CD8 Lymphocyte ratio predicts favourable neoadjuvant treatment response in gastric cancer: A prospective pilot study

Daniel Skubleny, Andrea Lin, Saurabh Garg, Ross McLean, Michael McCall, Sunita Ghosh, Jennifer L Spratlin, Daniel Schiller, Gina Rayat

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Jiang X, China; Lin L, China; Mijailović NR, Serbia; Tanabe S, Japan

Received: October 3, 2022
Peer-review started: October 3, 2022
First decision: October 24, 2022
Revised: November 25, 2022
Accepted: January 12, 2023
Article in press: January 12, 2023
Published online: February 15, 2023

Daniel Skubleny, Department of Surgery, University of Alberta, Edmonton T6G 2R3, AB, Canada

Andrea Lin, Saurabh Garg, Michael McCall, Daniel Schiller, Gina Rayat, Department of Surgery, University of Alberta, Edmonton T6G 2R3, Alberta, Canada

Ross McLean, Department of Laboratory Medicine and Pathology, University of Alberta, Edmonton T6G 2R3, Alberta, Canada

Sunita Ghosh, Department of Oncology, University of Alberta, Edmonton T6G 2R3, Alberta, Canada

Jennifer L Spratlin, Department of Oncology, Cross Cancer Institute, University of Alberta, Edmonton T5G 1Z2, AB, Canada

Corresponding author: Daniel Skubleny, MD, PhD, Doctor, Department of Surgery, University of Alberta, 116 St & 85 Ave, Edmonton T6G 2R3, AB, Canada. skubleny@ualberta.ca

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Despite optimal neoadjuvant chemotherapy only 40% of gastric cancer tumours achieve complete or partial treatment response. In the absence of treatment response, neoadjuvant chemotherapy in gastric cancer contributes to adverse events without additional survival benefit compared to adjuvant treatment or surgery alone. Additional strategies and methods are required to optimize the allocation of existing treatment regimens such as FLOT chemotherapy (5-Fluorouracil, Leucovorin, Oxaliplatin and Docetaxel). Predictive biomarkers detected using immunohistochemistry (IHC) methods may provide useful data regarding treatment response.

AIM

To investigate the utility of CD4, CD8, Galectin-3 and E-cadherin in predicting neoadjuvant FLOT chemotherapy tumour response in gastric adenocarcinoma.

METHODS

Forty-three adult patients with gastric adenocarcinoma, of which 18 underwent neoadjuvant chemotherapy, were included in a prospective clinical cohort. Endoscopic biopsies were obtained from gastric cancer and normal adjacent gastric mucosa. Differences in expression of Galectin-3, E-cadherin, $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ molecules between tumours with and without treatment response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy were assessed with IHC. Treatment response was graded by clinical pathologists using the Tumour Regression Score according to the College of American Pathologists criteria. Treatment response was defined as complete or near complete tumour response, whereas partial or poor/no response was defined as incomplete. Digital IHC images were annotated and quantitatively assessed using QuPath 0.3.1. Biomarker expression between responsive and incomplete response tumours was assessed using a two-sided Wilcoxon test. Biomarker expression was also compared between normal and cancer tissue and between 15 paired tumour samples before and after chemotherapy. We performed a preliminary multivariate analysis and power analysis to guide future study. Statistical analyses were completed using R 4.1.2.

RESULTS

The ratio between $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ lymphocytes was significantly greater in treatment responsive tumours (Wilcoxon, $P = 0.03$). In univariate models, $CD4^+/CD8^+$ ratio was the only biomarker that significantly predicted favourable treatment response (Accuracy 86%, $P < 0.001$). Using a glmnet multivariate model, high $CD4^+/CD8^+$ ratio and low Galectin-3 expression were the most influential variables in predicting a favourable treatment response. Analyses of paired samples found that FLOT chemotherapy also results in increased expression of $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ tumour infiltrating lymphocytes (Paired Wilcoxon, $P = 0.002$ and $P = 0.008$, respectively). Our power analysis suggests future study requires at least 35 patients in each treatment response group for CD8 and Galectin-3 molecules, whereas 80 patients in each treatment response group are required to assess CD4 and E-cadherin biomarkers.

CONCLUSION

We demonstrate that an elevated $CD4^+/CD8^+$ Ratio is a promising IHC-based biomarker to predict favourable treatment response to FLOT neoadjuvant chemotherapy in locally advanced gastric cancer.

Key Words: CD4; CD8; Galectin-3; Neoadjuvant chemotherapy; Treatment response; Gastric cancer

©The Author(s) 2023. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: In the absence of treatment response, neoadjuvant chemotherapy for gastric cancer may contribute to adverse events without additional survival benefit compared to adjuvant treatment or surgery alone. Identifying patients that are likely to achieve favourable tumour response following neoadjuvant chemotherapy is of critical importance. In this pilot study, we investigate the utility of CD4, CD8, Galectin-3 and E-cadherin molecules in predicting which patients will benefit from neoadjuvant therapy using immunohistochemistry in pre-treatment biopsies. We demonstrate that an elevated ratio between $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ lymphocytes is a promising biomarker to predict treatment response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy in locally advanced gastric cancer.

Citation: Skubleny D, Lin A, Garg S, McLean R, McCall M, Ghosh S, Spratlin JL, Schiller D, Rayat G. Increased CD4/CD8 Lymphocyte ratio predicts favourable neoadjuvant treatment response in gastric cancer: A prospective pilot study. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2023; 15(2): 303-317
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v15/i2/303.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.303

INTRODUCTION

Gastric cancer is the fifth most common cancer and the third most common cause of cancer death worldwide[1-3]. The poor prognosis associated with gastric cancer is in part related to significant tumour molecular heterogeneity[4-6]. Despite insight gained from extensive genomic and transcriptomic profiling, molecular classification systems such as those proposed by The Cancer Genome Atlas and Asian Cancer Research Group have yet to manifest improvement in the clinical management of gastric cancer.

In North America, the standard of care for locally advanced gastric cancer is neoadjuvant chemotherapy with 5-fluorouracil, leucovorin, oxaliplatin and docetaxel (FLOT4)[7]. Advantages of neoadjuvant chemotherapy include improved survival compared to surgery alone, greater R0 resection and reduction in nodal stage[8-11]. Previous research has demonstrated that pathologic complete response (pCR) or treatment response defined as Tumour Regression Grade 1-3 is significantly associated with improved prognosis[12,13]. However, pCR occurs in only 3-15% of cases and complete or partial response in approximately 40% of patients[9,12,14]. Irrespective of efficacy, cytotoxicity of chemotherapy is associated with adverse events including peripheral neuropathy, neutropenia, infection or death[7]. Prior evidence suggests that, in the absence of treatment response, neoadjuvant chemotherapy in gastric cancer contributes to adverse events without additional benefit compared to adjuvant treatment or surgery alone[9,15]. Specific treatment response may be related to underlying tumour biology as exposure to neoadjuvant chemotherapy in microsatellite instability in gastric cancer has been demonstrated to relate to worse survival outcomes[16-18]. Thus, in order to improve outcomes, it is of paramount importance to identify clinicopathologic or molecular biomarkers to identify treatment responders.

Immunohistochemistry (IHC) is a proven molecular pathology technique with a record of providing prognostic and therapeutic biomarkers in oncology. In gastric cancer, prominent IHC-based biomarkers may be prognostic or therapeutic as in the case of E-cadherin and human epidermal growth factor receptor 2, respectively[19,20]. However, there is a lack of predictive biomarkers to inform treatment response to more common regimens such as neoadjuvant chemotherapy.

Here we investigate a panel of biomarkers that we hypothesize may provide value in predicting tumour response. Galectin-3 is a lectin protein that facilitates cancer tumorigenesis and prognosis[21-24]. Pre-clinical models suggest that increased Galectin-3 expression is associated with chemotherapy resistance[25,26]. Recent work has implicated cell-surface expression of Galectin-3 with chemoresistance in gastrointestinal cancer stem cells[27]. E-cadherin is a cell-cell adhesion molecule that plays an important role in gastric cancer development, classification and prognosis[4,5,28]. In-vitro study has previously suggested that germline mutations in E-cadherin related to Hereditary Diffuse Gastric Cancer increases chemoresistance to taxol based agents[29]. However, study of breast cancer cell lines have identified heterogenous effects of E-cadherin expression on chemotherapy response[30,31]. We also assess whether $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ tumour infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) and the relative proportion of these cells influence neoadjuvant chemotherapy response. The CD4/CD8 ratio is a marker of immune effector function and is associated with multiple disease states. A normal circulating CD4/CD8 ratio ranges from 1.5-2.5, and lower ratios in resident tissues or circulation are related to worse HIV related outcomes, cardiovascular disease and cancer[32]. Both $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells are essential components to the tumour microenvironment and their composition in relationship to other immune cells such as macrophages, antigen presenting cells and natural killer cells influence the effectiveness of the host response to cancer[33]. Increasing evidence recognises the association of greater TILs to favourable cancer prognosis and chemotherapy response in colon and gastric cancer[34-39]. To date, no studies have investigated the role $CD4^+$ or $CD8^+$ TILs in neoadjuvant chemotherapy response for gastric cancer.

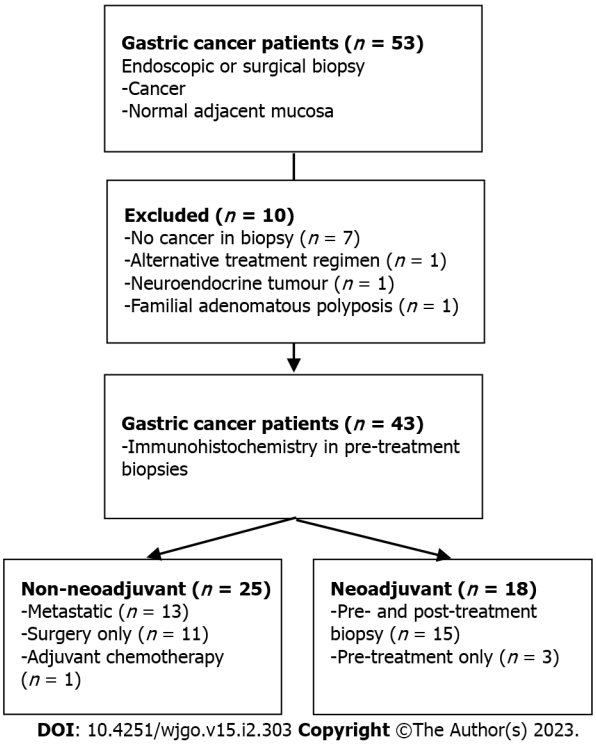
To guide future studies, we performed a prospective pilot study to evaluate if these selected biomarkers provide predictive value in evaluating treatment response following neoadjuvant FLOT chemotherapy.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study design

We performed this single-center, prospective pilot study at the University of Alberta in Edmonton, Alberta, Canada from January 2018 to January 2022. All human clinical participants consented according to the approved ethics protocol granted by the Health Research Ethics Board of Alberta (Study ID: HREBA.CC-17-0228_REN5). Treatment naïve Stage I-IV sporadic gastric adenocarcinoma patients aged greater than 18 years were included. A subset of patients enrolled was allocated to a second cohort on the basis of receiving curative intent neoadjuvant FLOT chemotherapy (Figure 1). Patients with a known inherited oncogenic germline mutation or hereditary syndrome (*i.e.*, Familial Adenomatous Polyposis) were excluded.

Specimens were retrieved *via* endoscopic biopsy at the time of diagnosis, screening laparoscopy or at the time of surgical resection at the Walter C Mackenzie Health Sciences Centre or Royal Alexandra Hospital. Normal biopsies were obtained from gastric mucosa greater than 5 cm away from the cancerous lesion or associated gastritis. The initial study protocol retrieved two tissue biopsies for permanent pathology, however, following interim review four biopsies were retrieved thereafter. The presence of cancer in specimens was confirmed by a gastrointestinal pathologist. In the absence of cancer, clinical formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded pathology blocks were retrieved when available. In clinical samples with treatment effect, residual cancer cells were detected using anti-pan cytokeratin (Abcam, clone C-11, ab7753) IHC staining followed by the manual assembly of tissue microarray (TMA) blocks with 4mm cores of regions containing residual tumour.



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.303 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 1 Study overview. Flow chart outlining study design and patient allocation.

Our primary outcome for all patients was the difference in expression of selected biomarkers between normal and cancer tissue. In the subgroup of patients receiving neoadjuvant chemotherapy, our primary outcome was the difference in expression between tumour treatment response and incomplete treatment response. We also evaluated the difference in expression of biomarkers in paired samples before and after chemotherapy treatment.

Treatment response was retrieved from clinical pathology reports. The Tumour Regression Score was graded according to the College of American Pathologists and National Comprehensive Cancer Network protocol on a 4-point scale (0 = Complete response, 1 = near complete response, 2 = partial response, 3 = poor or no response)[40]. In accordance with prior studies, treatment response was expressed as a binary variable consisting of response and incomplete response categories[12]. Responsive tumours included complete and near-complete responses, whereas incomplete responses included partial, and poor no response. Patients who progressed to metastasis while receiving neoadjuvant treatment were classified as an incomplete response.

IHC

Tissue specimens of normal and cancer tissue were fixed in zinc-formalin (Z-Fixx, Sigma-Aldrich) for 24 h, washed three times and stored in 70% ethanol prior to preservation in paraffin. Briefly, 4 μm tissue sections were deparaffinized in Histoclear (National Diagnostics) and rehydrated. Endogenous peroxidases were quenched using 3% hydrogen peroxide in methanol for 5 min. Microwave heat induced epitope retrieval was performed using Sodium Citrate (pH 6, heated to 94 degrees Celsius in 1-min intervals followed by 9 min continuous heat) for E-cadherin and Tris-ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (pH 9, heated to 94 degrees Celsius in 1-min intervals followed by 8 min 30 s continuous heat) for CD4 and CD8. Non-specific staining was blocked using 20% normal goat serum (Jackson Laboratories) for E-cadherin, CD4 and CD8 or 2% Fetal Bovine Serum (Gibco) in 1X phosphate buffered saline for Galectin-3 for 20 min followed by avidin and biotin blocking (Vector Laboratory, SP-2001) *per* manufacturer's protocol. Tissue sections were stained with primary antibodies anti-E-cadherin (1:25, 1.5 h room temperature, ThermoFisher Scientific, clone 4A2C7, 33-4000), anti-Galectin-3 (1:200, 30 min room temperature, Cedarlane, clone M3/38, CL8942AP), anti-CD4 (1:200, overnight at 4 degrees, Abcam, clone EPR6855, ab133616) or anti-CD8 alpha (1:200, overnight at 4 degrees Celsius, Abcam, ab4055). All biotinylated immunoglobulin G secondary antibodies were incubated at 1:200 for 30 min at room temperature, including rabbit anti-rat for Galectin-3 (Vector Laboratories, BA-4001), goat-anti-rabbit for CD4 (Vector Laboratories, BA-1000) and goat-anti-mouse for E-cadherin and CD8 (Jackson ImmunoResearch, 115-065-003). Antibody detection was performed using avidin-biotin complex/horseradish peroxidase (Vector Laboratories) and 3,3-diaminobenzidine tetrahydrochloride (DAB, Abcam, ab64238) *per* manufacturer's protocol. Stained tissue sections for E-Cadherin, CD4 and CD8 were counterstained with Harris' hematoxylin (Fisher Scientific) and Harris' hematoxylin and eosin (Fisher Scientific) for

Galectin-3.

Histology imaging and quantification

Histology images were captured at 20 times magnification using a Leica Aperio CS2 digital slide scanner. Digital pathology quantification of antibody expression was performed using QuPath version 0.3.1 (Figure 2A)[41]. Briefly, digital images were uploaded and the tumour and immediate tumour-host interface were annotated as a single region of interest. Stain vectors were estimated using default settings for each sample. For CD4, CD8 and Galectin-3, positive cells were detected using default nucleus DAB optical density settings. The CD4/CD8 ratio was calculated as the proportion of positively stained CD4 cells divided by the proportion of positively stained CD8 cells. For E-cadherin, both the proportion of positive cells and H-score was calculated. Annotated cell regions were assessed for accuracy and in the event of background or non-specific staining positive cell threshold values were adjusted to reflect true positive staining. The H-score provides a consensus scoring method for evaluating immunostaining across a gradient of intensity (Equation 1). As defined in McClelland *et al* [42], H, M and L denotes high, medium and low intensity staining. Cells without staining are denoted N for negative staining.

Statistical analysis

Statistical analyses were completed using R version 4.1.2[43]. The statistical methods of this study were reviewed by Dr. Ghosh and Dr. Skubleny from the University of Alberta. Differences between groups were assessed with a Wilcoxon two-sample test for independent samples and two-tailed paired Wilcoxon test for paired samples. Statistical significance was defined at alpha = 0.05. Multiple comparisons corrections were not made for our main outcomes given our prespecified analyses, but the possibility of false positive results is noted. Summary of continuous variables is expressed as median with interquartile range. Categorical variables are expressed as absolute number of cases and percent proportions.

The ability of biomarkers to predict treatment response was assessed using the caret package in R [44]. Briefly, out-of-sample resampling accuracy was estimated for each biomarker as well as the combination of all biomarkers using 1000 bootstraps with replacement. Continuous variables were centered and scaled. Logistic regression models were used for single biomarker estimates and a regularized ElasticNet model implemented in glmnet was used for estimates containing all biomarkers [45]. Model significance was tested using a one-sided binomial test comparing the estimated model accuracy to the No Information Rate (NIR). The NIR is defined as the largest proportion of observed classes, or the maximum accuracy of a classifier if it predicted the majority class every time.

Sample size calculations were performed using the MKpower package in R. Two-sample Wilcoxon distributions were generated using the mean and standard deviation from our pilot study sample. The normality of the distribution for each biomarker's expression levels were confirmed with a Shapiro-Wilk test. Random sampling from a truncated normal distribution constrained between 0 and 100 was performed for a series of samples sizes ranging from 10 to 120, in intervals of 10. The empirical power (beta) for each sample size was calculated using Monte-Carlo simulations with 1000 iterations for a specified type-I error rate (alpha = 0.05).

RESULTS

Patient demographics

Fifty-three patients were consented for this pilot study. Ten patients were excluded: One patient was diagnosed with Familial Adenomatous Polyposis, one was found to have neuroendocrine tumour pathology, one gastroesophageal junction tumour received alternative neoadjuvant therapy and seven patients were excluded due to inadequate tissue biopsies. Of note, an interim analysis of our protocol after enrolling the first 20 patients determined a biopsy accuracy rate of 60% for treatment naïve specimens and 25% for biopsy following neoadjuvant treatment. This prompted a change in study protocol to retrieve 4-8 tissue biopsies *per* sample.

A total of 43 patients were available for analysis, of which 18 (42%) underwent neoadjuvant chemotherapy during our study period. Baseline demographics are included in Table 1. Median age was 65 (60, 75) and the majority of patients were male (70%). Tumour pathology was represented by all TNM stages but a preponderance of high grade (72%), proximal stomach (60%) and diffuse type (63%) tumours were present. *H. pylori* status was available for 32 patients, of which the majority were negative (69%) and one was previously treated. Total gastrectomy was performed in nearly half of all patients and comprised 59% of all surgical resections.

Expression of biomarkers in normal and cancer tissues

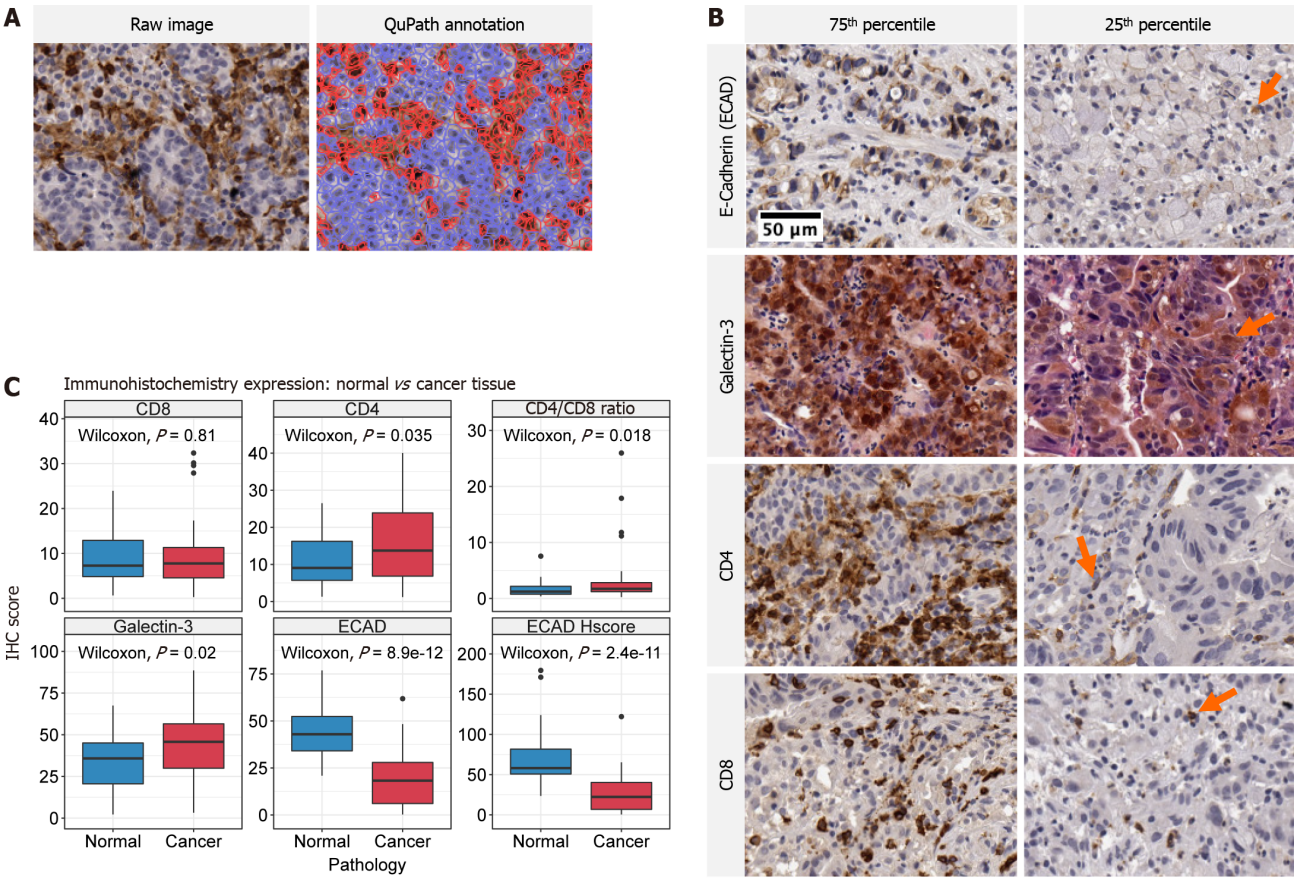
Representative images of each IHC stain within the 75th and 25th percentile of expression is presented in Figure 2B. Staining for E-cadherin was only identified on cell membranes of gastric epithelium.

Table 1 Baseline demographics

Characteristic	*N* = 43[1]	*n*/*N* (missing %)
Age (yr)	65 (60, 75)	43 / 43 (0%)
Sex		43 / 43 (0%)
Female	13 (30%)	
Male	30 (70%)	
Stage		43 / 43 (0%)
I	11 (26%)	
II	10 (23%)	
III	8 (19%)	
IV	14 (33%)	
Grade		43 / 43 (0%)
G1	1 (2.3%)	
G2	10 (23%)	
G3	31 (72%)	
Gx	1 (2.3%)	
Tumour location		43 / 43 (0%)
Distal	14 (33%)	
Proximal	26 (60%)	
Whole stomach	3 (7.0%)	
Lauren classification		41 / 43 (4.7%)
Diffuse	26 (63%)	
Intestinal	13 (32%)	
Mixed	2 (4.9%)	
Signet ring cell (present)	26 (63%)	41 / 43 (4.7%)
H. pylori history		32 / 43 (26%)
Negative	22 (69%)	
Positive	9 (28%)	
Treated	1 (3.1%)	
Smoker		40 / 43 (7.0%)
Yes	9 (22%)	
No	14 (35%)	
Ex	17 (42%)	
Smoker (pack years)	7 (0, 32)	39 / 43 (9.3%)
Surgery		43 / 43 (0%)
Total gastrectomy	20 (47%)	
Distal gastrectomy	14 (33%)	
No resection	9 (21%)	
Neoadjuvant chemotherapy	18 (42%)	43 / 43 (0%)
CD4/CD8 ratio (% positive)	1.7 (1.2, 2.8)	42 / 43 (2.3%)
CD4 (% positive)	14 (7, 24)	43 / 43 (0%)
CD8 (% positive)	8 (5, 11)	42 / 43 (2.3%)
Galectin-3 (% positive)	46 (30, 57)	43 / 43 (0%)

E-cadherin (% positive)	18 (6, 28)	43 / 43 (0%)
E-cadherin H-score	22 (7, 40)	43 / 43 (0%)

[1]Median (IQR); *n* (%).



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.303 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 2 Immunohistochemistry stains and expression of biomarkers in treatment naïve normal and cancer tissue. A: Representative images of QuPath digital pathology annotation using CD4 immunohistochemistry (IHC) at 10X magnification. Raw images (left) are processed and regions of interest are identified according to our methods. The annotated image (right) demonstrates the calculation of positive stained cells (red) and negative cells (blue); B: Representative IHC images taken at 10X magnification for each respective biomarker identified on the y-axis. Images of expression values within the 75th and 25th percentile are presented in the left and right columns, respectively. Arrows demonstrate positive staining in low expression specimens; C: Boxplot comparison of expression for each respective biomarker in treatment naive normal and cancer tissue. The IHC biomarker is labeled on the heading of each graph. The y-axis represents IHC score, which is the percent of positive stained cells for Galectin-3, CD4, CD8 and E-cadherin and the H-score for E-cadherin H-score plot. The x-axis labels the distribution corresponding to normal (blue) and cancer (red) tissue. The raw *P* value for Wilcoxon tests is annotated in each panel.

Galectin-3 exhibited heterogeneous staining and was identified in nuclei, cytoplasm, and surrounding tumour stroma. The presence of Galectin-3 was often sporadic with distinct regions representing intense positive stain followed by fairly abrupt transition to moderate positivity. CD4 and CD8 positive staining was identified on the cell membrane of lymphocytes.

Galectin-3 was the most abundant molecule with a median expression of 46% (30, 57), followed by E-cadherin, CD4 and CD8 (Table 1). The E-cadherin H-score (median 22 (7, 40)) closely approximated the proportion of E-cadherin positive cells (median 18 (6, 28)). Greater H-score values in the upper quartile reflected the presence of high staining intensity in positive cells.

Significantly increased expression of CD4, Galectin-3 and CD4/CD8 Ratio was identified in cancer tissue relative to normal adjacent tissue controls (Wilcoxon, $P = 0.035$, $P = 0.020$ and $P = 0.018$ respectively) (Figure 2C). The distribution of IHC scores between normal and cancer tissue for CD4 and Galectin-3 was relatively uniform, whereas differences in CD4/CD8 Ratios were dominated by sample outliers with large cancer IHC scores. In agreement with historical study, E-cadherin positivity and H-score was significant decreased in cancer tissue relative to normal. (Wilcoxon, $P < 0.0001$ and $P < 0.001$, respectively).

There were no statistically significant associations between relevant clinicopathologic factors and the expression of any biomarker for stage, lymphovascular invasion, perineural invasion, carcinomatosis, tumour grade or location (Supplementary material). The proportion of E-cadherin positive cells was significantly different according to Lauren Class, with relatively fewer positive cells present in diffuse and mixed type cancers (Kruskal-Wallis, $P = 0.043$).

Association of biomarker expression with exposure to neoadjuvant chemotherapy

We compared the expression of biomarkers in 15 paired tumour samples from the same patient before and after neoadjuvant FLOT to evaluate the effect of treatment on biomarker expression. All pre-treatment specimens were obtained by endoscopic biopsy and thus were restricted mainly to the mucosa and lamina propria. The majority of post-treatment samples were analyzed as TMA cores from surgical resection specimens (TMA cores = 87% *vs* biopsy = 13%) in which residual tumour was present in mucosa, submucosa and muscularis.

We found significantly increased association of tumour cells with $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ TILs following neoadjuvant chemotherapy (Paired Wilcoxon, $P = 0.002$ and $P = 0.008$, respectively) (Figure 3A). In contrast, E-cadherin positivity and H-score significantly decreased in post-treatment samples (Paired Wilcoxon, $P = 0.035$ and $P = 0.04$, respectively). This was likely in part due to differences in tumour cell depth of invasion between pre-treatment biopsy and post-treatment TMA cores. CD4/CD8 Ratio expression remained relatively stable within samples except for one patient (Figure 3A).

High CD4/CD8 ratio is associated with treatment response

Figure 3B outlines the relationship of biomarker expression to treatment response between pre- and post-treatment cancer specimens. For all analyses, we observed incomplete response in 14 patients (Partial = 9, Poor or No = 4, Progression to metastasis = 1) and response in 4 patients (Complete = 1, Near Complete = 3). Statistically greater CD4/CD8 Ratios were observed in pre-treatment cancer biopsies compared to incomplete responders (Wilcoxon, $P = 0.025$). Clinicopathologic characteristics were similar between treatment response groups (Table 2).

Next, we explored the utility of individual biomarkers (Models 1-6) and the combination of all biomarkers (Model 7) in predicting treatment response scores (Figure 3C). Given the small sample size and events *per* variable, we used out-of-sample estimates from 1000 bootstraps to limit bias by favouring pessimistic estimates of model accuracy. In this dataset, all biomarkers were effective at predicting incomplete tumour response (Sensitivity range 88-98%) but suffered from poor specificity (range 0-44%). CD4/CD8 Ratio was the only variable that provided significant model performance (Accuracy > NIR, one-sided binomial, $P < 0.001$). The ElasticNet model using CD4/CD8 Ratio, CD4, CD8, Galectin-3 and ECAD H-score as independent variables provided a mean accuracy greater than the NIR but failed to achieve statistical significance ($P = 0.26$).

The optimal glmnet model provided coefficients for all variables despite tuning parameters allowing for L2 regularization (alpha = 0). To guide future studies, we evaluated the contribution of all biomarker variables to the predictive model using the final regularized ElasticNet coefficients (Figure 3D). The absolute value of coefficients found CD4 /CD8 Ratio and Galectin-3 to provide the greatest influence in predicting favourable tumour response. Specifically, tumour response was associated with increasing CD4/CD8 Ratio and decreasing Galectin-3, respectively.

Sample size calculations

To inform future studies we performed sample size calculations using our pilot study sample distributions. In particular, we were interested in identifying the sample sizes required to evaluate the utility of biomarkers in explaining tumour response using a two-sample Wilcoxon test. In Figure 3E, we observe that CD8 and Galectin-3 require similar sample sizes of 30 and ~35 in each treatment response group to achieve adequate power. The relationship between sample size and empirical power was nearly identical for CD4 and E-cadherin, which were calculated to require ~70 and 80 samples in each group, respectively.

DISCUSSION

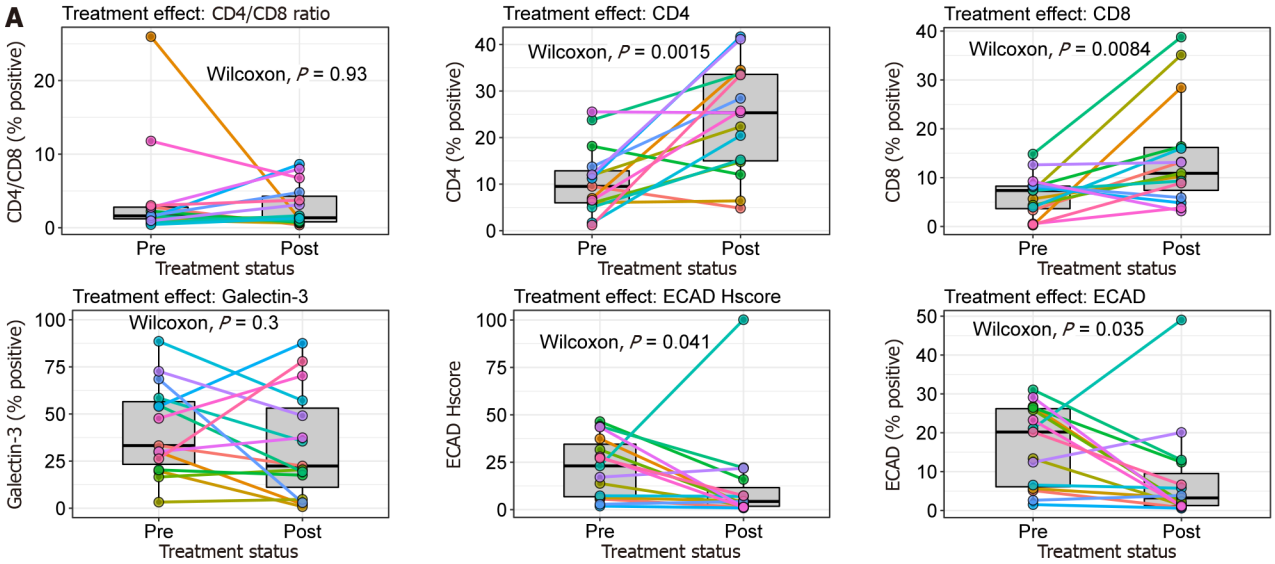
In this pilot study, we present the utility of IHC-based expression of Galectin-3, E-cadherin, CD4 and CD8 in predicting treatment response to the neoadjuvant chemotherapy regimen FLOT4. First, we establish that Galectin-3, CD4, E-cadherin and the CD4/CD8 Ratio expression are significantly different between cancer and normal adjacent tissue. These findings suggest that these markers are intrinsic to the tumour or tumour microenvironment and thus may provide prognostic or predictive yield. Next, we establish that the CD4/CD8 Ratio is significantly greater in tumours with complete or partial response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy. In preliminary univariate and multivariate machine learning models, the CD4/CD8 Ratio was the only significant predictive marker of treatment response with an accuracy of 86%. Finally, we demonstrate that the tumour-specific expression of CD4, CD8 and E-cadherin is significantly modified in paired tumour samples before and after chemotherapy.

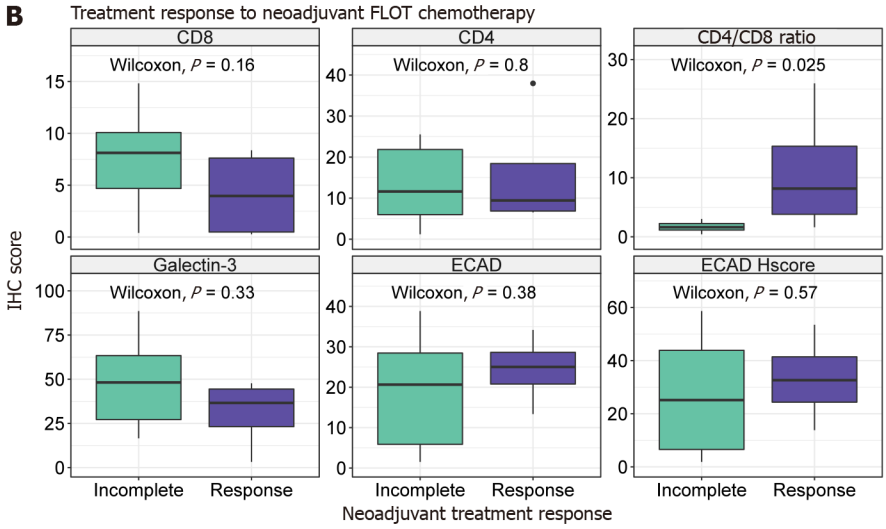
Table 2 Clinicopathologic factors according to treatment response

Characteristic	Incomplete response, *N* = 14[1]	Response, *N* = 4[1]	*P* value[2]
Age (yr)	60 (57, 63)	60 (52, 67)	> 0.9
Sex			0.3
F	5 (36%)	0 (0%)	
M	9 (64%)	4 (100%)	
Stage			0.6
I	2 (14%)	2 (50%)	
II	5 (36%)	1 (25%)	
III	6 (43%)	1 (25%)	
IV	1 (7.1%)	0 (0%)	
Grade			0.6
G1	1 (7.1%)	0 (0%)	
G2	2 (14%)	2 (50%)	
G3	10 (71%)	2 (50%)	
Gx	1 (7.1%)	0 (0%)	
Tumour location			> 0.9
Distal	3 (21%)	1 (25%)	
Proximal	10 (71%)	3 (75%)	
Whole stomach	1 (7.1%)	0 (0%)	
Lauren classification			0.5
Diffuse	10 (71%)	1 (33%)	
Intestinal	4 (29%)	2 (67%)	
Signet ring cell (present)	9 (64%)	1 (33%)	0.5
H. pylori history			> 0.9
Negative	8 (57%)	2 (50%)	
Positive	3 (21%)	1 (25%)	
Unknown	3 (21%)	1 (25%)	
Smoker			> 0.9
Yes	4 (33%)	2 (50%)	
No	4 (33%)	1 (25%)	
Ex	4 (33%)	1 (25%)	
Smoker (pack years)	13 (0, 40)	36 (25, 42)	0.5
Surgery			> 0.9
Total gastrectomy	10 (71%)	3 (75%)	
Distal gastrectomy	3 (21%)	1 (25%)	
No resection	1 (7.1%)	0 (0%)	

[1]Median (IQR); *n* (%).
[2]Wilcoxon rank sum test; Fisher's exact test.

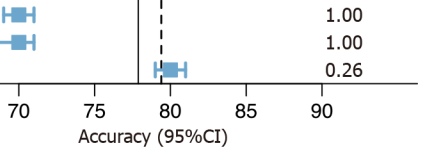
Several potentially useful approaches for determining treatment response have previously been recognized. Clinical or pathologic factors including age, tumour grade, signet cell pathology, serum carcinoembryonic antigen, various circulating lymphocyte populations and tumour size are significant predictors of tumour response[46-48]. The majority of predictive tumour biomarker research in gastric cancer has focused on identifying molecules associated with adjuvant chemotherapy response. For

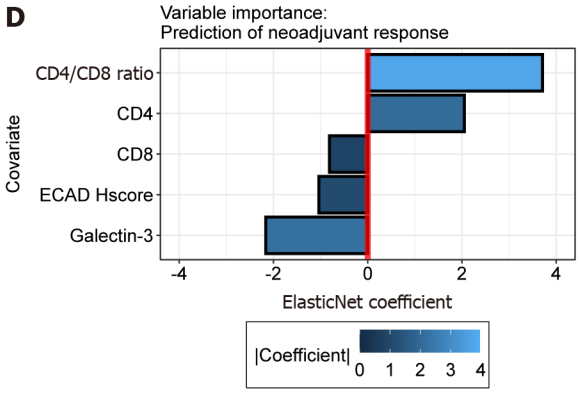


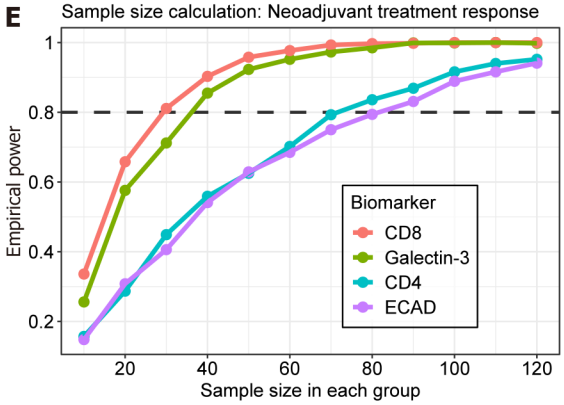


C

Model	Variables	Sensitivity (%)	Specificity (%)	Accuracy (95%CI)	*P* value
1	~ CD4/CD8 ratio	98	44	86 (85,87)	< 0.001***
2	~ CD4	94	0	73 (72,74)	1.00
3	~ CD8	90	16	74 (73,75)	1.00
4	~ Galectin-3	91	6	72 (71,73)	1.00
5	~ ECAD Hscore	89	1	70 (69,71)	1.00
6	~ ECAD	88	3	70 (68,71)	1.00
7	~ All IHC markers	92	31	80 (79,81)	0.26







DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.303 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 3 Association between biomarker expression and neoadjuvant 5-fluorouracil, leucovorin, oxaliplatin and docetaxel chemotherapy.

A: Paired boxplots for biomarker expression pre- and post-neoadjuvant chemotherapy. Each coloured point and line correspond to a single patient. Boxplots in grey

represent the distribution of expression for all patients before and after chemotherapy. Paired Wilcoxon *P* value is present in each plot; B: Boxplot comparison of expression for each respective biomarker between treatment response (purple) and incomplete response (green). The immunohistochemistry (IHC) biomarker is labeled on the heading of each graph. The y-axis represents IHC score, which is the percent of positive stained cells for Galectin-3, CD4, CD8 and E-cadherin and the H-score for ECAD H-score plot; C: Forest plot for metrics of ElasticNet models. Models were constructed using the treatment response as the dependent variable and the corresponding independent variable(s) identified in the variable column. The plot represents the out-of-sample accuracy (blue square) and 95% confidence intervals (whiskers) for models estimated from 1000 bootstraps with replacement. The no information rate, defined as the maximum accuracy of a classifier if it predicted the majority class every time, is shown by the solid and dotted vertical lines for univariable and multivariable models, respectively; D: Barplot of model coefficients from multivariable glmnet model. The y-axis represents model covariates and the x-axis the coefficient value. Treatment response is related to increasing covariate values or decreasing covariate values for positive and negative coefficients, respectively. The absolute importance of the coefficient is shown in blue according to the scale legend; E: Lineplot illustrating monte-carlo simulations for two-sample Wilcoxon sample size calculations. The y-axis is the empirical power and the x-axis is the sample size in each group. Each coloured line corresponds to a biomarker labelled according to the legend.

example, a multivariable model utilizing the measurement of several TIL populations in 879 patients provided 3-year survival prediction accuracies of 79 and 84% for surgery alone and adjuvant chemotherapy populations, respectively[34]. In the neoadjuvant setting, a post-hoc analysis of 83 patients in the COMPASS trial identified several candidate gene expression based-biomarkers such as *TIMP1* and *DSG2* using quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction[49]. Other studies to identify treatment response have used microRNAs, exosomes, inflammatory markers or medical imaging data [50]. Although predictive and prognostic factors identified in these studies show promise, there is limited external validity of these studies and clinical implementation is yet to be achieved.

This is the first study to evaluate the role of tumour-associated CD4/CD8 Ratio in gastric cancer neoadjuvant chemotherapy response. Increasing evidence has demonstrated the coordinated role of $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cells in mediating tumour immune surveillance, immunotherapy response and cancer prognosis[51]. Sustained and effective tumour immune response requires $CD4^+$ T-cells, which potentiate effector $CD8^+$ response *via* secretion of cytokines such as interleukin-2, participate in direct anti-tumour effects *via* interferon-gamma and tumour necrosis factor, or facilitate antibody mediated humoral response from B-cells *via* CD40 Ligand binding[52]. Indeed, research evaluating chimeric antigen receptor (CAR) T-cell immune populations demonstrate increased anti-tumour activity with increasing CD4/CD8 ratio[53]. Yang *et al*[54] also demonstrated that $CD4^+$ CAR T cells are more effective at maintaining anti-tumour activity *in vivo* compared to CD8+ CAR T cells that are prone to exhaustion and apoptosis. Furthermore, in native tumour microenvironments increasing CD4/CD8 Ratio of the tumour-host interface in triple negative breast cancer is associated with improved overall and recurrence-free survival[51].

The dynamic increase in TIL expression following neoadjuvant chemotherapy in our pilot study also replicates previous findings. Significant work in breast cancer has implicated the pattern of TIL changes following chemotherapy to treatment response. In particular, greater $CD4^+$ T-cell expression is associated with pathologic complete response[55]. Also, decreased immune infiltration is a notable characteristic of residual tumours following neoadjuvant chemotherapy relative to pre-treatment biopsy [55]. Continued evaluation of the relationship of dynamic changes in CD4 and CD8 populations in gastric cancer are required to fully leverage these biomarkers.

Our study design is intended to provide a reproducible and externally valid method of biomarker analysis. Using IHC allows for easier clinical implementation given that common pathology workflows already include IHC analysis. Our use of open-source digital pathology software such as QuPath also provides a standardized basis to internally and externally validate our method in future studies. Digital pathology allows annotation and measurement of regions of interest within the software and thus eliminates the need for complex physical microdissection utilized in other biomarker studies.

The main limitation of this study is the low enrollment of curative intent patients. This is likely due to low disease incidence in our population but also may be related to the severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 pandemic. Given our rate of patient enrollment, future study should prioritize increasing sample size by using a retrospective design in order to provide more accurate estimates for future multi-centre prospective study. Our sample size calculation suggests that a limited retrospective study with approximately eighty-five patients in each group will provide adequate power to assess these relationships.

CONCLUSION

The CD4/CD8 Ratio is a promising IHC-based biomarker with therapeutic implications for response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy in locally advanced gastric cancer. Future inquiry should focus on evaluating the prognostic value of these markers and the generation of a sufficient sample size to establish a predictive model for potential future clinical use.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Neoadjuvant chemotherapy for gastric cancer is standard of care in western nations. Despite optimal therapy, only 40% of patients achieve complete or near complete treatment response. Treatment response following neoadjuvant chemotherapy is associated with overall survival. Thus, it is of critical importance to identify biomarkers capable of predicting which patients will achieve a favourable response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy in order to optimize survival outcomes.

Research motivation

Personalized medicine is predicated on providing the right treatment for the right patient at the right time. To achieve optimal outcomes treatment regimens now include complex decision-making processes surrounding the timing of chemotherapy and surgery. Recent research has demonstrated that some gastric cancer patients, such as those with tumours harbouring microsatellite instability, may be harmed by neoadjuvant chemotherapy. However, patients that achieve a good treatment response achieve superior clinical outcomes compared to adjuvant chemotherapy. Identifying specific subpopulations using tumour-based biomarkers is of critical importance to maximize outcomes.

Research objectives

We sought to characterize the expression of tumour immunohistochemistry (IHC)-based biomarkers CD4, CD8, Galectin-3 and E-cadherin in our Canadian population. Specifically, we evaluated these markers in comparison to their expression in normal gastric mucosa, as well as their relationship to neoadjuvant chemotherapy tumour response scores and expression in tumour biopsies before and after treatment. We successfully identified a biomarker, namely the CD4/CD8 T-cell ratio, with the potential to predict favourable treatment response. This pilot study serves as a foundation for future study to validate our preliminary findings.

Research methods

In this study, we evaluated IHC -based biomarkers in human gastric cancer specimens. Informed consent according to an approved ethics protocol was obtained for all patients. Samples were retrieved from endoscopic biopsy prior to treatment with neoadjuvant, adjuvant or palliative chemotherapy, as well as from pathology specimens following surgical resection. Using IHC, we quantified the expression of CD4, CD8, Galectin-3 and E-cadherin in gastric cancer tumours and adjacent normal mucosa. Quantification was performed on digitally scanned images using QuPath, which is an open-source and artificial intelligence-based digital pathology program. Statistical analysis was completed using R. Sample size calculations were performed using the MKpower package in R.

Research results

We demonstrate that an elevated CD4/CD8 ratio in gastric cancer tumours is significantly associated with complete or near complete response following FLOT chemotherapy. We identify that neoadjuvant chemotherapy is associated with increased infiltration of CD4 and CD8 T-cells in 15 paired samples assessed before and after exposure to chemotherapy. However, the dynamic increase in these lymphocyte populations does not associate with an increased CD4/CD8 ratio. To expand on the findings of this study, we performed a sample size calculation and identified that CD4, CD8, Galectin-3 and E-cadherin expression may be adequately evaluated with a future study population of 85 patients.

Research conclusions

For the first time, we identify that a high CD4/CD8 ratio within gastric cancer tumours is a promising biomarker that predicts favourable tumour response scores following neoadjuvant FLOT chemotherapy. To achieve this result, we use digital pathology technology and artificial intelligence-based quantification of biomarker staining.

Research perspectives

This study serves as a foundation for future research in validating the CD4/CD8 ratio as a reliable biomarker that is capable of predicting neoadjuvant treatment response. Our sample size calculations provide a framework for future study design.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Skubleny D, McCall M, Ghosh S, Spratlin JL, Schiller D and Rayat G designed and coordinated the study; Skubleny D, Lin A, Garg S, McLean R performed experiments, generated and analyzed data; McLean R evaluated biopsy pathology and presence of cancer; Skubleny D, Ghosh S, Schiller D and Rayat G interpreted the data; Skubleny D wrote the manuscript with editorial assistance from Ghosh S, Spratlin JL, Schiller D and Rayat G.

Institutional review board statement: All human clinical participants consented according to the approved ethics protocol granted by the Health Research Ethics Board of Alberta (Study ID: HREBA.CC-17-0228_REN5).

Informed consent statement: Informed consent according to an approved ethics protocol from the Health Research Ethics Board of Alberta (HREBA.CC-17-0228) was obtained for all patients.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All authors have no conflicts of interest to disclose.

Data sharing statement: Raw data and code are available from the corresponding author at skubleny@ualberta.ca.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: Canada

ORCID number: Daniel Skubleny 0000-0001-8243-6139.

S-Editor: Liu GL
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Yuan YY

REFERENCES

1 **Torre LA**, Bray F, Siegel RL, Ferlay J, Lortet-Tieulent J, Jemal A. Global cancer statistics, 2012. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2015; **65**: 87-108 [PMID: 25651787 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21262]
2 **Todua F**, Gagua R, Maglakelidze M, Maglakelidze D. Cancer incidence and mortality - Major patterns in GLOBOCAN 2012, worldwide and Georgia. *Bulletin of the Georgian National Academy of Sciences* 2015; **9**: 168-173 [DOI: 10.1016/s0923-7534(20)33966-1]
3 **McGuire S**. Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization, International Agency for Research on Cancer, WHO Press, 2015. *World Cancer Report* 2016; **2**: 418-419 [DOI: 10.3945/an.116.012211]
4 **Cancer Genome Atlas Research Network**. Comprehensive molecular characterization of gastric adenocarcinoma. *Nature* 2014; **513**: 202-209 [PMID: 25079317 DOI: 10.1038/nature13480]
5 **Cristescu R**, Lee J, Nebozhyn M, Kim KM, Ting JC, Wong SS, Liu J, Yue YG, Wang J, Yu K, Ye XS, Do IG, Liu S, Gong L, Fu J, Jin JG, Choi MG, Sohn TS, Lee JH, Bae JM, Kim ST, Park SH, Sohn I, Jung SH, Tan P, Chen R, Hardwick J, Kang WK, Ayers M, Hongyue D, Reinhard C, Loboda A, Kim S, Aggarwal A. Molecular analysis of gastric cancer identifies subtypes associated with distinct clinical outcomes. *Nat Med* 2015; **21**: 449-456 [PMID: 25894828 DOI: 10.1038/nm.3850]
6 **Wang R**, Dang M, Harada K, Han G, Wang F, Pool Pizzi M, Zhao M, Tatlonghari G, Zhang S, Hao D, Lu Y, Zhao S, Badgwell BD, Blum Murphy M, Shanbhag N, Estrella JS, Roy-Chowdhuri S, Abdelhakeem AAF, Wang Y, Peng G, Hanash S, Calin GA, Song X, Chu Y, Zhang J, Li M, Chen K, Lazar AJ, Futreal A, Song S, Ajani JA, Wang L. Single-cell dissection of intratumoral heterogeneity and lineage diversity in metastatic gastric adenocarcinoma. *Nat Med* 2021; **27**: 141-151 [PMID: 33398161 DOI: 10.1038/s41591-020-1125-8]
7 **Al-Batran SE**, Homann N, Pauligk C, Goetze TO, Meiler J, Kasper S, Kopp HG, Mayer F, Haag GM, Luley K, Lindig U, Schmiegel W, Pohl M, Stoehlmacher J, Folprecht G, Probst S, Prasnikar N, Fischbach W, Mahlberg R, Trojan J, Koenigsmann M, Martens UM, Thuss-Patience P, Egger M, Block A, Heinemann V, Illerhaus G, Moehler M, Schenk M, Kullmann F, Behringer DM, Heike M, Pink D, Teschendorf C, Löhr C, Bernhard H, Schuch G, Rethwisch V, von Weikersthal LF, Hartmann JT, Kneba M, Daum S, Schulmann K, Weniger J, Belle S, Gaiser T, Oduncu FS, Güntner M, Hozaeel W, Reichart A, Jäger E, Kraus T, Mönig S, Bechstein WO, Schuler M, Schmalenberg H, Hofheinz RD; FLOT4-AIO Investigators. Perioperative chemotherapy with fluorouracil plus leucovorin, oxaliplatin, and docetaxel versus fluorouracil or capecitabine plus cisplatin and epirubicin for locally advanced, resectable gastric or gastro-oesophageal junction adenocarcinoma (FLOT4): a randomised, phase 2/3 trial. *Lancet* 2019; **393**: 1948-1957 [PMID: 30982686 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(18)32557-1]
8 **Cunningham D**, Allum WH, Stenning SP, Thompson JN, Van de Velde CJ, Nicolson M, Scarffe JH, Lofts FJ, Falk SJ, Iveson TJ, Smith DB, Langley RE, Verma M, Weeden S, Chua YJ, MAGIC Trial Participants. Perioperative chemotherapy *vs* surgery alone for resectable gastroesophageal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2006; **355**: 11-20 [PMID: 16822992 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa055531]
9 **Xu AM**, Huang L, Liu W, Gao S, Han WX, Wei ZJ. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy followed by surgery *vs* surgery alone for gastric carcinoma: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e86941 [PMID: 24497999 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0086941]
10 **Ychou M**, Boige V, Pignon JP, Conroy T, Bouché O, Lebreton G, Ducourtieux M, Bedenne L, Fabre JM, Saint-Aubert B, Genève J, Lasser P, Rougier P. Perioperative chemotherapy compared with surgery alone for resectable gastroesophageal adenocarcinoma: an FNCLCC and FFCD multicenter phase III trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 1715-1721 [PMID: 21444866 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2010.33.0597]

11 **Schuhmacher C**, Gretschel S, Lordick F, Reichardt P, Hohenberger W, Eisenberger CF, Haag C, Mauer ME, Hasan B, Welch J, Ott K, Hoelscher A, Schneider PM, Bechstein W, Wilke H, Lutz MP, Nordlinger B, Van Cutsem E, Siewert JR, Schlag PM. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy compared with surgery alone for locally advanced cancer of the stomach and cardia: European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer randomized trial 40954. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 5210-5218 [PMID: 21060024 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2009.26.6114]

12 **Derieux S**, Svrcek M, Manela S, Lagorce-Pages C, Berger A, André T, Taieb J, Paye F, Voron T. Evaluation of the prognostic impact of pathologic response to preoperative chemotherapy using Mandard's Tumor Regression Grade (TRG) in gastric adenocarcinoma. *Dig Liver Dis* 2020; **52**: 107-114 [PMID: 31427088 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2019.07.010]

13 **Kaltenmeier C**, Althans A, Mascara M, Nassour I, Khan S, Hoehn R, Zureikat A, Tohme S. Pathologic Complete Response Following Neoadjuvant Therapy for Gastric Adenocarcinoma: A National Cancer Database Analysis on Incidence, Predictors, and Outcomes. *Am Surg* 2021; **87**: 1145-1154 [PMID: 33342268 DOI: 10.1177/0003134820972083]

14 **Li Z**, Shan F, Wang Y, Zhang Y, Zhang L, Li S, Jia Y, Xue K, Miao R, Li Z, Ji J. Correlation of pathological complete response with survival after neoadjuvant chemotherapy in gastric or gastroesophageal junction cancer treated with radical surgery: A meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2018; **13**: e0189294 [PMID: 29370182 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0189294]

15 **Misra S**, Pedroso FE, DiPasco PJ, Solomon NL, Gennis E, Franceschi D, Ardalan B, Koniaris LG. Does neoadjuvant chemotherapy improve outcomes for patients with gastric cancer? *J Surg Res* 2012; **178**: 623-631 [PMID: 22682528 DOI: 10.1016/j.jss.2012.04.062]

16 **Smyth EC**. Chemotherapy for resectable microsatellite instability-high gastric cancer? *Lancet Oncol* 2020; **21**: 204 [PMID: 32007194 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(20)30025-5]

17 **Smyth EC**, Wotherspoon A, Peckitt C, Gonzalez D, Hulkki-Wilson S, Eltahir Z, Fassan M, Rugge M, Valeri N, Okines A, Hewish M, Allum W, Stenning S, Nankivell M, Langley R, Cunningham D. Mismatch Repair Deficiency, Microsatellite Instability, and Survival: An Exploratory Analysis of the Medical Research Council Adjuvant Gastric Infusional Chemotherapy (MAGIC) Trial. *JAMA Oncol* 2017; **3**: 1197-1203 [PMID: 28241187 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2016.6762]

18 **Pietrantonio F**, Miceli R, Raimondi A, Kim YW, Kang WK, Langley RE, Choi YY, Kim KM, Nankivell MG, Morano F, Wotherspoon A, Valeri N, Kook MC, An JY, Grabsch HI, Fucà G, Noh SH, Sohn TS, Kim S, Di Bartolomeo M, Cunningham D, Lee J, Cheong JH, Smyth EC. Individual Patient Data Meta-Analysis of the Value of Microsatellite Instability As a Biomarker in Gastric Cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2019; **37**: 3392-3400 [PMID: 31513484 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.19.01124]

19 **Gabbert HE**, Mueller W, Schneiders A, Meier S, Moll R, Birchmeier W, Hommel G. Prognostic value of E-cadherin expression in 413 gastric carcinomas. *Int J Cancer* 1996; **69**: 184-189 [PMID: 8682585 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1097-0215(19960621)69:3<184::AID-IJC6>3.0.CO;2-W]

20 **Bang YJ**, Van Cutsem E, Feyereislova A, Chung HC, Shen L, Sawaki A, Lordick F, Ohtsu A, Omuro Y, Satoh T, Aprile G, Kulikov E, Hill J, Lehle M, Rüschoff J, Kang YK; ToGA Trial Investigators. Trastuzumab in combination with chemotherapy *vs* chemotherapy alone for treatment of HER2-positive advanced gastric or gastro-oesophageal junction cancer (ToGA): a phase 3, open-label, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2010; **376**: 687-697 [PMID: 20728210 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(10)61121-X]

21 **Sciacchitano S**, Lavra L, Morgante A, Ulivieri A, Magi F, De Francesco GP, Bellotti C, Salehi LB, Ricci A. Galectin-3: One Molecule for an Alphabet of Diseases, from A to Z. *Int J Mol Sci* 2018; **19** [PMID: 29373564 DOI: 10.3390/ijms19020379]

22 **Yang RY**, Rabinovich GA, Liu FT. Galectins: structure, function and therapeutic potential. *Expert Rev Mol Med* 2008; **10**: e17 [PMID: 18549522 DOI: 10.1017/S1462399408000719]

23 **Tas F**, Bilgin E, Tastekin D, Erturk K, Duranyildiz D. Clinical Significance of Serum Galectin-3 Levels in Gastric Cancer Patients. *J Gastrointest Cancer* 2016; **47**: 182-186 [PMID: 27038444 DOI: 10.1007/s12029-016-9817-5]

24 **Okada K**, Shimura T, Suehiro T, Mochiki E, Kuwano H. Reduced galectin-3 expression is an indicator of unfavorable prognosis in gastric cancer. *Anticancer Res* 2006; **26**: 1369-1376 [PMID: 16619546]

25 **Ruvolo PP**. Galectin 3 as a guardian of the tumor microenvironment. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2016; **1863**: 427-437 [PMID: 26264495 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbamcr.2015.08.008]

26 **Fukumori T**, Kanayama HO, Raz A. The role of galectin-3 in cancer drug resistance. *Drug Resist Updat* 2007; **10**: 101-108 [PMID: 17544840 DOI: 10.1016/j.drup.2007.04.001]

27 **Ilmer M**, Mazurek N, Byrd JC, Ramirez K, Hafley M, Alt E, Vykoukal J, Bresalier RS. Cell surface galectin-3 defines a subset of chemoresistant gastrointestinal tumor-initiating cancer cells with heightened stem cell characteristics. *Cell Death Dis* 2016; **7**: e2337 [PMID: 27512958 DOI: 10.1038/cddis.2016.239]

28 **Chen YC**, Fang WL, Wang RF, Liu CA, Yang MH, Lo SS, Wu CW, Li AF, Shyr YM, Huang KH. Clinicopathological Variation of Lauren Classification in Gastric Cancer. *Pathol Oncol Res* 2016; **22**: 197-202 [PMID: 26502923 DOI: 10.1007/s12253-015-9996-6]

29 **Ferreira P**, Oliveira MJ, Beraldi E, Mateus AR, Nakajima T, Gleave M, Yokota J, Carneiro F, Huntsman D, Seruca R, Suriano G. Loss of functional E-cadherin renders cells more resistant to the apoptotic agent taxol in vitro. *Exp Cell Res* 2005; **310**: 99-104 [PMID: 16112667 DOI: 10.1016/j.yexcr.2005.07.010]

30 **Wang L**, Li Z, Wang C, Yang Y, Sun L, Yao W, Cai X, Wu G, Zhou F, Zha X. E-cadherin decreased human breast cancer cells sensitivity to staurosporine by up-regulating Bcl-2 expression. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 2009; **481**: 116-122 [PMID: 18983973 DOI: 10.1016/j.abb.2008.10.021]

31 **Berezhnaya NM**, Belova OB, Vinnichuk YD, Tarutinov VI. Expression of E-cadherin in drug resistant human breast cancer cells and their sensitivity to lymphokine-activated lymphocytes action. *Exp Oncol* 2009; **31**: 242-245 [PMID: 20010527]

32 **McBride JA**, Striker R. Imbalance in the game of T cells: What can the CD4/CD8 T-cell ratio tell us about HIV and health? *PLoS Pathog* 2017; **13**: e1006624 [PMID: 29095912 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1006624]

33 **Zeng D**, Li M, Zhou R, Zhang J, Sun H, Shi M, Bin J, Liao Y, Rao J, Liao W. Tumor Microenvironment Characterization in Gastric Cancer Identifies Prognostic and Immunotherapeutically Relevant Gene Signatures. *Cancer Immunol Res* 2019; **7**: 737-750 [PMID: 30842092 DOI: 10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-18-0436]

34 **Jiang Y**, Zhang Q, Hu Y, Li T, Yu J, Zhao L, Ye G, Deng H, Mou T, Cai S, Zhou Z, Liu H, Chen G, Li G, Qi X. ImmunoScore Signature: A Prognostic and Predictive Tool in Gastric Cancer. *Ann Surg* 2018; **267**: 504-513 [PMID: 28002059 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0000000000002116]

35 **Galon J**, Costes A, Sanchez-Cabo F, Kirilovsky A, Mlecnik B, Lagorce-Pagès C, Tosolini M, Camus M, Berger A, Wind P, Zinzindohoué F, Bruneval P, Cugnenc PH, Trajanoski Z, Fridman WH, Pagès F. Type, density, and location of immune cells within human colorectal tumors predict clinical outcome. *Science* 2006; **313**: 1960-1964 [PMID: 17008531 DOI: 10.1126/science.1129139]

36 **Mlecnik B**, Bindea G, Angell HK, Maby P, Angelova M, Tougeron D, Church SE, Lafontaine L, Fischer M, Fredriksen T, Sasso M, Bilocq AM, Kirilovsky A, Obenauf AC, Hamieh M, Berger A, Bruneval P, Tuech JJ, Sabourin JC, Le Pessot F, Mauillon J, Rafii A, Laurent-Puig P, Speicher MR, Trajanoski Z, Michel P, Sesboüe R, Frebourg T, Pagès F, Valge-Archer V, Latouche JB, Galon J. Integrative Analyses of Colorectal Cancer Show Immunoscore Is a Stronger Predictor of Patient Survival Than Microsatellite Instability. *Immunity* 2016; **44**: 698-711 [PMID: 26982367 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2016.02.025]

37 **Zou W**, Zhou ML, Zhang LY, Yang JN, Yang W, Wang YQ, Yi YX, Li GC, Zhang Z. Immune Score Predicts Outcomes of Gastric Cancer Patients Treated with Adjuvant Chemoradiotherapy. *J Oncol* 2021; **2021**: 9344124 [PMID: 34987582 DOI: 10.1155/2021/9344124]

38 **Lee HE**, Chae SW, Lee YJ, Kim MA, Lee HS, Lee BL, Kim WH. Prognostic implications of type and density of tumour-infiltrating lymphocytes in gastric cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2008; **99**: 1704-1711 [PMID: 18941457 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6604738]

39 **Liu K**, Yang K, Wu B, Chen H, Chen X, Jiang L, Ye F, He D, Lu Z, Xue L, Zhang W, Li Q, Zhou Z, Mo X, Hu J. Tumor-Infiltrating Immune Cells Are Associated With Prognosis of Gastric Cancer. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2015; **94**: e1631 [PMID: 26426650 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000001631]

40 **Chen HY**, Feng LL, Li M, Ju HQ, Ding Y, Lan M, Song SM, Han WD, Yu L, Wei MB, Pang XL, He F, Liu S, Zheng J, Ma Y, Lin CY, Lan P, Huang MJ, Zou YF, Yang ZL, Wang T, Lang JY, Orangio GR, Poylin V, Ajani JA, Wang WH, Wan XB. College of American Pathologists Tumor Regression Grading System for Long-Term Outcome in Patients with Locally Advanced Rectal Cancer. *Oncologist* 2021; **26**: e780-e793. [PMID: 33543577 DOI: 10.1002/onco.13707]

41 **Bankhead P**, Loughrey MB, Fernández JA, Dombrowski Y, McArt DG, Dunne PD, McQuaid S, Gray RT, Murray LJ, Coleman HG, James JA, Salto-Tellez M, Hamilton PW. QuPath: Open source software for digital pathology image analysis. *Sci Rep* 2017; **7**: 16878 [PMID: 29203879 DOI: 10.1038/s41598-017-17204-5]

42 **McClelland RA**, Finlay P, Walker KJ, Nicholson D, Robertson JF, Blamey RW, Nicholson RI. Automated quantitation of immunocytochemically localized estrogen receptors in human breast cancer. *Cancer Res* 1990; **50**: 3545-3550 [PMID: 2187598]

43 **R Core Team**. R: A language and environment for statistical computing. R Foundation for Statistical Computing, Vienna, Austria 2020 [DOI: 10.31274/rtd-180813-10057]

44 **Kuhn M**. Building predictive models in R using the caret package. *J Stat Softw* 2008; **28**: 1-26 [DOI: 10.18637/jss.v028.i05]

45 **Friedman J**, Hastie T, Tibshirani R. Regularization Paths for Generalized Linear Models *via* Coordinate Descent. *J Stat Softw* 2010; **33**: 1-22 [PMID: 20808728]

46 **Jiang L**, Ma Z, Ye X, Kang W, Yu J. Clinicopathological factors affecting the effect of neoadjuvant chemotherapy in patients with gastric cancer. *World J Surg Oncol* 2021; **19**: 44 [PMID: 33563277 DOI: 10.1186/s12957-021-02157-x]

47 **Wang LB**, Teng RY, Jiang ZN, Hu WX, Dong MJ, Yuan XM, Chen WJ, Jin M, Shen JG. Clinicopathologic variables predicting tumor response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy in patients with locally advanced gastric cancer. *J Surg Oncol* 2012; **105**: 293-296 [PMID: 21882201 DOI: 10.1002/jso.22085]

48 **Chen YH**, Xiao J, Chen XJ, Wang HS, Liu D, Xiang J, Peng JS. Nomogram for predicting pathological complete response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy in patients with advanced gastric cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 2427-2439 [PMID: 32476803 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i19.2427]

49 **Oshima T**, Yoshikawa T, Miyagi Y, Morita S, Yamamoto M, Tanabe K, Nishikawa K, Ito Y, Matsui T, Kimura Y, Yokose T, Hiroshima Y, Aoyama T, Hayashi T, Ogata T, Cho H, Rino Y, Masuda M, Tsuburaya A, Sakamoto J. Biomarker analysis to predict the pathological response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy in locally advanced gastric cancer: An exploratory biomarker study of COMPASS, a randomized phase II trial. *Oncotarget* 2020; **11**: 2906-2918 [PMID: 32774771 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.27658]

50 **Sun J**, Wang X, Zhang Z, Zeng Z, Ouyang S, Kang W. The Sensitivity Prediction of Neoadjuvant Chemotherapy for Gastric Cancer. *Front Oncol* 2021; **11**: 641304 [PMID: 33937042 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2021.641304]

51 **Long B**, Yu Z, Zhou H, Ma Z, Ren Y, Zhan H, Li L, Cao H, Jiao Z. Clinical characteristics and prognostic significance of galectins for patients with gastric cancer: A meta-analysis. *Int J Surg* 2018; **56**: 242-249 [PMID: 29940258 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijsu.2018.06.033]

52 **Tay RE**, Richardson EK, Toh HC. Revisiting the role of $CD4^+$ T cells in cancer immunotherapy-new insights into old paradigms. *Cancer Gene Ther* 2021; **28**: 5-17 [PMID: 32457487 DOI: 10.1038/s41417-020-0183-x]

53 **Garfall AL**, Dancy EK, Cohen AD, Hwang WT, Fraietta JA, Davis MM, Levine BL, Siegel DL, Stadtmauer EA, Vogl DT, Waxman A, Rapoport AP, Milone MC, June CH, Melenhorst JJ. T-cell phenotypes associated with effective CAR T-cell therapy in postinduction *vs* relapsed multiple myeloma. *Blood Adv* 2019; **3**: 2812-2815 [PMID: 31575532 DOI: 10.1182/bloodadvances.2019000600]

54 **Yang Y**, Kohler ME, Chien CD, Sauter CT, Jacoby E, Yan C, Hu Y, Wanhainen K, Qin H, Fry TJ. TCR engagement negatively affects CD8 but not CD4 CAR T cell expansion and leukemic clearance. *Sci Transl Med* 2017; **9** [PMID: 29167392 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.aag1209]

55 **Wang K**, Shen T, Siegal GP, Wei S. The CD4/CD8 ratio of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes at the tumor-host interface has prognostic value in triple-negative breast cancer. *Hum Pathol* 2017; **69**: 110-117 [PMID: 28993275 DOI: 10.1016/j.humpath.2017.09.012]

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2023 February 15; 15(2): 318-331

DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.318

ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

microRNA-627-5p inhibits colorectal cancer cell proliferation, migration and invasion by targeting Wnt2

Dong-Yan Zhao, Teng-Fei Yin, Xi-Zhen Sun, Yuan-Chen Zhou, Qian-Qian Wang, Ge-Yujia Zhou, Shu-Kun Yao

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Shamseldeen AA, Egypt; Toyoshima O, Japan

Received: September 22, 2022
Peer-review started: September 22, 2022
First decision: October 21, 2022
Revised: November 4, 2022
Accepted: December 30, 2022
Article in press: December 30, 2022
Published online: February 15, 2023

Dong-Yan Zhao, School of Biology & Basic Medical Sciences, Soochow University, Soochow 215213, Jiangsu Province, China

Teng-Fei Yin, Department of Gastroenterology, Qilu Hospital of Shandong University, Jinan 250012, Shandong Province, China

Xi-Zhen Sun, Department of Gastroenterology, Beijing Jishuitan Hospital, Beijing 100035, China

Yuan-Chen Zhou, Qian-Qian Wang, Ge-Yujia Zhou, Shu-Kun Yao, Department of Gastroenterology, China-Japan Friendship Hospital, Beijing 100029, China

Yuan-Chen Zhou, Qian-Qian Wang, Graduate School, Peking University China-Japan Friendship School of Clinical Medicine, Beijing 100029, China

Ge-Yujia Zhou, Graduate School, Chinese Academy of Medical Sciences and Peking Union Medical College, Beijing 100029, China

Corresponding author: Shu-Kun Yao, Doctor, MD, PhD, Chief Physician, Professor, Department of Gastroenterology, China-Japan Friendship Hospital, No. 2 Yinghua East Road, Chaoyang District, Beijing 100029, China. shukunyao@126.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

microRNA-627-5p (miR-627-5p) dysregulation has been observed in several cancer types, such as hepatocellular carcinoma, oral squamous cell carcinoma, glioblastoma multiforme, and gastric cancer. The biological function of miR-627-5p in colorectal cancer (CRC) growth and metastasis is yet unclear.

AIM

To investigate the effects of miR-627-5p on the malignant biological properties of colorectal malignant tumour cells by targeting Wnt2.

METHODS

The levels of miR-627-5p in colorectal tumour tissues were assessed in Gene Expression Omnibus datasets. In order to identify Wnt2 transcript expression in CRC tissues, quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction (qRT-PCR) analysis was used. Luciferase reporter tests were used to explore whether miR-627-5p might potentially target Wnt2. Wnt2 transcript and protein levels were detected in

CRC cells with high miR-627-5p expression. To learn more about how miR-627-5p affects CRC development, migration, apoptosis, and invasion, functional experiments were conducted. Cotransfection with the overexpression vector of Wnt2 and miR-627-5p mimics was utilized to verify whether overexpression of Wnt2 could cancel the impact of miR-627-5p in CRC. Western blot and qRT-PCR were conducted to investigate the effects of miR-627-5p on the Wnt/β-catenin signalling pathway.

RESULTS

miR-627-5p was notably decreased in colorectal tumour tissues, while the gene level of Wnt2 was notably upregulated. A dual luciferase reporter assay revealed that miR-627-5p specifically targets the 3′-untranslated regions of Wnt2 and miR-627-5p upregulation markedly reduced the protein and gene expression of Wnt2 in CRC cells. *In vitro* gain-of-function assays displayed that miR-627-5p overexpression decreased CRC cells' capabilities to invade, move, and remain viable while increasing apoptosis. Wnt2 overexpression could reverse the suppressive functions of miR-627-5p. Moreover, upregulation of miR-627-5p suppressed the transcript and protein levels of the downstream target factors in the canonical Wnt/β-catenin signalling, such as c-myc, CD44, β-catenin, and cyclinD1.

CONCLUSION

miR-627-5p acts as a critical inhibitory factor in CRC, possibly by directly targeting Wnt2 and negatively modulating the Wnt/β-catenin signalling, revealing that miR-627-5p could be a possible treatment target for CRC.

Key Words: miR-627-5p; Wnt2; Colorectal cancer; β-catenin; Progression

©The Author(s) 2023. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: It has been well established that miRNAs play vital roles in modulating cancer-related pathways, thereby regulating colorectal cancer (CRC) growth and metastasis. The study comprehensively explored the function of microRNA-627-5p (miR-627-5p), a rarely reported miRNA in CRC. miR-627-5p mimics restrained CRC cells invasion, migration, proliferation, and promoted cell apoptosis, indicated its suppressive effects on CRC development. A dual luciferase reporter test showed miR-627-5p directly binds with the 3'-untranslated region of Wnt2. Furthermore, miR-627-5p prevented the aggressive behaviours of cancer cells *via* inhibiting the activation of the canonical Wnt signalling. Strategies targeting the miR-627-5p/Wnt2/β-catenin signalling might be a new treatment option for CRC.

Citation: Zhao DY, Yin TF, Sun XZ, Zhou YC, Wang QQ, Zhou GY, Yao SK. microRNA-627-5p inhibits colorectal cancer cell proliferation, migration and invasion by targeting Wnt2. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2023; 15(2): 318-331

URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v15/i2/318.htm

DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.318

INTRODUCTION

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is one of the most prevalent malignant tumours and has high incidence and mortality rates globally, posing a great threat to the health of human beings[1]. Despite great advances in the diagnosis and treatment of CRC over the span of a few decades, CRC is still incurable and often has a poor prognosis, especially in patients with advanced tumours, which necessities clarification of the underlying mechanisms of CRC[2,3]. Generally, a vast number of genetic and molecular changes, such as epigenetic aberrations, genetic alterations, microsatellite instability, and chromosomal instability, have been shown to be correlated with colorectal carcinogenesis and tumour metastasis[4,5]. All of these genomic events can contribute to the activation of important signalling pathways (Wnt/β-catenin, MAPK/PI3K, and SMAD/TGF-β) and the initiation of colorectal tumorigenesis[6]. Since the human genome has been extensively characterized, miRNAs have become a hot spot and have offered fresh understanding of the molecular mechanisms underpinning CRC progression[7].

microRNA (miRNA) is an endogenously derived non-coding RNA sequence composed of 19-25 nucleotides that can modulate the levels of downstream genes through direct binding to their 3′-untranslated regions (3′-UTRs) *via* cleavage or translational arrest[8]. Many published papers have implicated the role of microRNA-627-5p (miR-627-5p) in controlling the emergence and development of

a number of tumours[9-12]. For instance, Wang *et al*[9] reported that miR-627-5p acted as a inhibitory factor by reducing the expression of Bcl3 in hepatocellular carcinoma. miR-627-5p was also identified to be involved in suppressing the malignant behaviors of glioma cells by binding to the 3'-UTR of NR2C2 and downregulating its expression in glioblastoma multiforme[10]. These studies indicated the tumour inhibitory function of miR-627-5p. Furthermore, Shin *et al*[11] found miR-627-5p was observably upregulated in gastric cancer tissues than in normal controls, suggesting that miR-627-5p might stimulate gastric cancer progression. In other words, miR-627-5p may play different roles in different cancer types. A growing body of evidence has emphasized that abnormally expressed miRNAs play vital roles in promoting or suppressing the progression from normal to hyperproliferative epithelium, then to precancerous advanced adenoma (AA), and later invasive adenocarcinoma[13-15]. Nevertheless, the functions of miR-627-5p are largely unknown in colorectal carcinogen.

In the present study, TargetScan website speculated that miR-627-5p could be complementary with the 3'-UTR of Wnt2. Wnt2, an evolutionarily conserved secreted-type glycoprotein secreted by the Wnt signalling, performs a crucial role in promoting the malignant progression of gastrointestinal cancers through activation of the Wnt/β-catenin signalling[16-18]. Consequently, the current study's goal was to investigate how miR-627-5p and Wnt2 contribute to the emergence of CRC, and to assess the relationship between them.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Bioinformation analysis

From the Gene Expression Omnibus (GEO) database, the original series matrix files of the miRNAs of patients with colorectal tumours and healthy controls (HCs) were gathered. GSE41655 and GSE18392 were employed to analyze the differential expression of miR-627 between CRC tissues and control tissues. GSE41655 contained 33 tumour tissues and 15 normal control tissues while GSE18392 included 116 tumour tissues and 29 control tissues.

Human tissue collection

A total of 30 patients with colorectal tumours, 33 AA and 20 HCs aged between 18 and 80 years were employed to explore the tissue levels of Wnt2 in the study. All patients diagnosed by histology as AA and colorectal adenocarcinoma were enrolled as case group. All healthy participants were recruited through advertisements and screened by careful history taking, physical examinations, essential laboratory examinations and colonoscopy. Individuals with negative colonoscopy results were selected as HC group. During the endoscopies, biopsy samples were taken from the rectosigmoid colon in the HCs. The excluding protocol for all subjects were indicated below: (1) Subjects with a history of other major organic diseases, malignant tumours in other organs, and psychiatric disorders; (2) pregnant or lactating female subjects; (3) patients with hereditary CRC or hereditary intestinal polyposis syndromes; (4) participants with a history of radiotherapy, chemotherapy, and major abdominal surgery; and (5) patients who presented with inflammatory or infective diseases. The clinicopathological characteristics of HCs and colorectal neoplasm patients are described in Supplementary Table 1. China-Japan Friendship Hospital's ethics committee gave the study's protocol approval under the number 2018-116-K85-1, and all participants gave their written informed permission.

Cell culture

The American Type Culture Collection was used to obtain a colonic epithelial cell line (FHC), human colonic malignant tumor cell lines (HCT116, RKO, and SW480), and a human embryonic kidney cell line (HEK-293T). For the purpose of investigating Wnt2 mRNA expression, FHC and three CRC cell lines were used. Gain of function tests were carried out using HCT116 and SW480 cells. Dual luciferase reporter tests were performed using HEK-293T cells because of their high transfection efficiency[19]. Incubation conditions included 5% CO_2 in the air and a minimum relative humidity of 95%, for the RPMI 1640 medium or Dulbecco's Modified Eagle's Medium in which cells were placed.

Cell transfection

miR-627-5p mimics, mimics negative control oligonucleotides (NC mimics), Wnt2 overexpressing plasmids (pcDNA-Wnt2) and matched negative controls (pcDNA-NC) were designed by GenePharma (Shanghai Province, China). In 6-well culture plates, SW480 and HCT116 cells were plated for 24 h. Following the manufacturer's instructions, LipofectamineTM 3000 Transfection Reagent (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA, United States) was used to transfect a mixture of miR-627-5p mimics or NC mimics (150pmol) with pcDNA-Wnt2 or pcDNA-NC (3 g). In Supplementary Table 2, the oligonucleotide sequences are displayed.

Quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction

Total RNA that included miRNA from tissues or cells was isolated by the RNAprep Pure Cell Kit

(Solarbio, Beijing, China). cDNA was obtained using the Hifair®II 1st Strand cDNA Synthesis Kit (YESEN, Shanghai, China). PCR amplification was conducted in a LineGene 9600 Plus Real-Time PCR system (Bioer Technology, Hangzhou, China) by using Hieff® qPCR SYBR® Green Master Mix (No Rox) (YESEN, Shanghai, China). The comparative threshold method was used to quantify the relative expression of miRNAs and mRNAs. In Supplementary Table 3, the primer sequences used in the study are displayed.

Western blotting

RIPA lysis buffer (Beyotime, Shanghai, China) was used for protein extraction, and the BCA Protein Assay Kit was used to measure the amount of protein (Solarbio, Beijing, China). Total proteins were then subjected to sodium dodecyl sulfate/polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and electrotransferred to PVDF membranes (Bio-Rad, Hercules, CA, United States). Nonspecific binding sites were blocked using 5% nonfat milk for 2 h and the membranes were incubated at 4 °C overnight with rabbit anti-Wnt2 antibody (1:1000; Affinity, Melbourne, United States), rabbit anti-c-myc antibody (1:1000; Bioss, Beijing, China), rabbit anti-CD44 antibody (1:1000; Affinity, Melbourne, United States), rabbit anti-cyclin D1 antibody (1:1000; Abcam, Cambridge, United Kingdom), and rabbit anti-β-tubulin antibody (1:4000; Proteintech, Chicago, United States). The PVDF membranes were then treated for 1 hour with a goat anti-rabbit secondary antibody that was HRP conjugated (1:5000; Bioss, Beijing, China). Enhanced chemiluminescence reagents (Beyotime, Shanghai, China) were used to visualize the bands. Image J was utilized to quantify the chemiluminescent signals of protein bands using β-tubulin as an internal control.

Cholecystokinin octapeptide assay

Cell viability was monitored using cholecystokinin octapeptide (CCK-8) reagents (Solarbio, Beijing, China). After transfection, CRC cells plated in 96-well plates were added to CCK-8 solution and incubated for 1 h. The number of viable cells was determined at a 24 h interval for four consecutive days following the manufacturer's instructions.

Matrigel invasion assay

Corning Transwell insert chambers (Corning Incorporated, New York, NY, United States) with a 6.5-μm pore size were used to assess invasive capability. Cancer cells were planted in the upper chamber, cultured with foetal bovine serum (FBS) free medium, and allowed to invade for 72 h. The lower chamber was added to culture medium comprising 10% FBS to attract the invaded cells. The invading cells that broke through the Matrigel were then fixed in paraformaldehyde, stained in crystal violet, and counted in five randomly selected high-power fields.

Scratch assay

Homogeneous single cell suspensions were plated in 6-well plates until a single layer formed before being wounded by scraping a straight line with a yellow micropipette tip. The plates were incubated with complete medium after 3 PBS solution washes. All lengthy wounds were captured on camera at 0 and 24 h after the wound.

Flow cytometry analysis

An Annexin V-fluorescein isothiocyanate/propidium iodide (PI) apoptosis kit (7seabiotech, Shanghai, China) was utilized to detect the proportion of apoptotic cells after transfection. All processes were performed following the manufacturer's protocols. Flow cytometry (BeckMan, United States) and FlowJo™ (Becton, New York, NY, United States) software were used to determine the cell apoptosis rates. Detailed experimental procedures are described in our previous study[20].

Dual luciferase reporter assay

The human Wnt2 3′-UTR comprising the expected complementary site of miR-627-5p (wild type), and its identical sequence with the mutant sequences of specific complementary sites of miR-627-5p (mutant) were inserted into the pmirGLO luciferase vector. HEK-293T cells were cotransfected with pmirGlo-Wnt2 3′-UTR wild type or pmirGLO-Wnt2 3′-UTR mutant and miR-627-5p mimics. The luciferase activity was measured using the Dual-Luciferase Reporter Assay System (Promega, Madison, WI, United States).

Statistical analysis

All data are shown as mean ± SD or median (interquartile range). The Shapiro-wilk test was used to verify the normal distribution. Student's *t* test or Wilcoxon rank-sum test were employed to decide significant differences between two groups where appropriate. Spearman correlation analysis was used to calculate the relationship between Wnt2 gene expression and miR-627-5p expression in colorectal neoplasm tissues. All calculations were conducted with IBM SPSS (Chicago, IL, United States) and diagrams were described using GraphPad Prism (La Jolla, CA, United States). A *P* value of 0.05 or lower was considered significant.

RESULTS

The expression levels of miR-627 in CRC tissues

The miR-627 levels were contrasted between the CRC subgroup and the normal subgroup in two GEO datasets, GSE41655 (33 CRCs *vs* 15 HCs) and GSE18392 (116 CRCs *vs* 29 HCs), and the findings showed that CRC tissues had noticeably lower levels of miR-627 (Figure 1A and B). The AUCs of miR-627 in the GSE41655 and GSE18392 datasets were 0.90 ($P < 0.001$) and 0.67 ($P = 0.006$), respectively, according to receiver operating characteristic analysis (Figure 1C and D).

Relationship between miR-627-5p and Wnt2 expression in colorectal neoplasm tissues

The mRNA levels of Wnt2 in clinical tissues or in the colonic epithelial cells and cancer cells were determined by quantitative real-time polymerase chain reaction (qRT-PCR). The findings indicated Wnt2 expression were sequentially upregulated from HC tissues and AA tissues to CRC tissues (Figure 2A). This observation was supported by the fact that Wnt2 expression in cancer cells was observably higher than it was in epithelial cell line (FHC) cells (Figure 2B). Our previous study examined miR-627-5p expression in the same clinical tissues[20] and we next analyzed the relationship among the expressions of miR-627-5p and Wnt2 in colorectal neoplasm tissues and found an inverse relationship between miR-627-5p and Wnt2 gene levels ($r = -0.61$, $P < 0.001$, Figure 2C).

Direct binding relationship between miR-627-5p and Wnt2

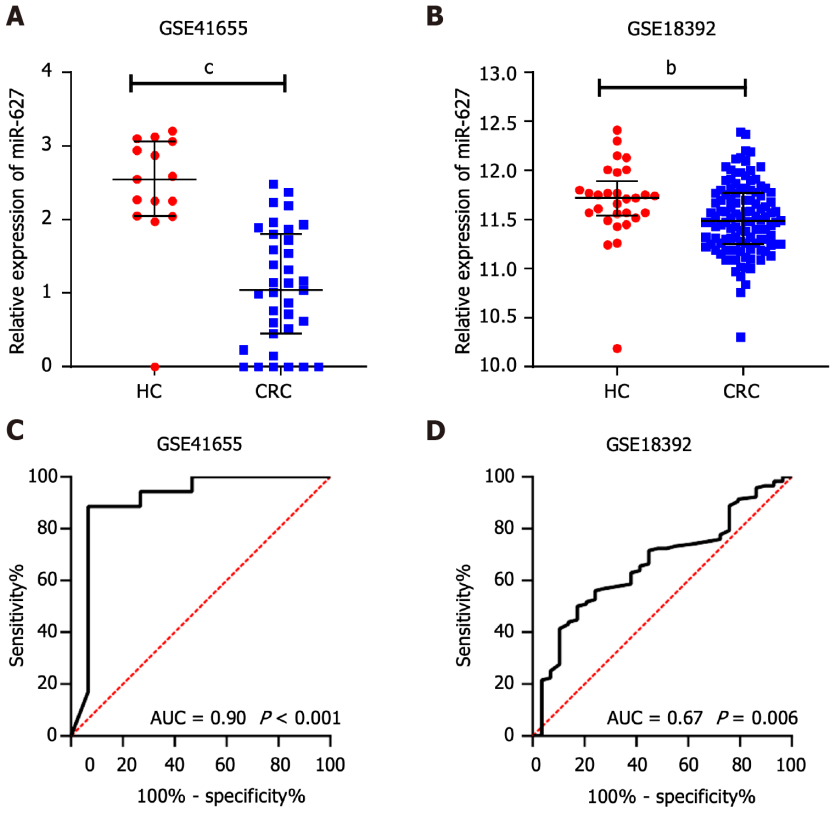
First, the possible miR-627-5p downstream genes were speculatively identified using the TargetScan website. As a result, a sequence located at bases 1287-1293 of the Wnt2 3′-UTR was binding to the seed sequence of miR-627-5p (Figure 3A). To verify that miR-627-5p and Wnt2 have a direct complimentary interaction, we conducted dual luciferase reporter assays. Then, the Wnt2 pmirGLO vector comprising wild type or mutant miR-627-5p target sites was constructed (Figure 3A). Then, the constructed vectors were transfected into 293T cells with the cotransfection of miR-627-5p mimics or scrambled controls. miR-627-5p overexpression reduced the luciferase levels of the reporter vector carrying the wild type sequence of Wnt2 3′-UTR (0.58 ± 0.04 *vs* 1.00 ± 0.05, $P < 0.001$), but not those of the reporter vector comprising the mutant target sequence in 293T cells (1.12 ± 0.09 *vs* 1.03 ± 0.11, $P = 0.35$, Figure 3B). Moreover, gain-of-function experiments were performed by transfection of miR-627-5p mimics in SW480 and HCT116 cells to verify whether miR-627-5p could influence the expression levels of Wnt2 in CRC cells. RT-PCR analysis demonstrated that miR-627-5p mimics markedly increased miR-627-5p level in SW480 (35.90 ± 3.09 *vs* 1.02 ± 0.20, $P < 0.001$) and HCT116 cells (31.30 ± 5.14 *vs* 1.02 ± 0.23, $P < 0.001$, Figure 3C). As depicted in Figure 3D-E, upregulation of miR-627-5p directly reduced the transcript expression (SW480, 0.09 ± 0.03 *vs* 1.01 ± 0.16, $P < 0.001$; HCT116, 0.02 (0.01-0.31) *vs* 0.93 (0.91-1.16), $P < 0.001$) and protein expression (SW480, 0.81 ± 0.01 *vs* 1.17 ± 0.10, $P = 0.004$; HCT116, 1.03 ± 0.01 *vs* 1.26 ± 0.03, $P < 0.001$) of Wnt2 in SW480 and HCT116 cells. In summary, miR-627-5p functions as a specific complement to Wnt2.

Role of miR-627-5p in CRC cells

Then, we investigated the biological function of miR-627-5p through gain-of-function tests in SW480 and HCT116 cells. As depicted in Figure 4A and D, wound healing assays showed that miR-627-5p overexpression contributed to a weakened ability of migrating cells (SW480, 23.63% ± 9.62% *vs* 139.11% ± 29.36%, $P < 0.001$; HCT116, 36.03% ± 15.15% *vs* 168.69% ± 31.75%, $P < 0.001$). Matrigel invasion assays demonstrated that exogenetic upregulation of miR-627-5p markedly blocked cancer cells' ability to invade (SW480, 112.00 ± 39.77 *vs* 236.20 ± 33.10, $P = 0.001$; HCT116, 144.60 ± 35.78 *vs* 335.20 ± 14.02, $P < 0.001$; Figure 4B and E). Next, we used flow cytometry analysis to verify whether miR-627-5p overexpression could influence cell apoptosis and the findings showed that miR-627-5p upregulation accelerated cell apoptosis (SW480, 33.91% ± 5.61% *vs* 17.08% ± 1.40%, $P = 0.007$; HCT116, 42.15% ± 1.00% *vs* 21.35% ± 0.61%, $P < 0.001$, Figure 4C and F). Furthermore, according to CCK-8 experiments, miR-627-5p overexpression attenuated cell growth (Figure 4G). Collectively, miR-627-5p inhibits CRC cells migration, invasion, and proliferation but promotes cell apoptosis.

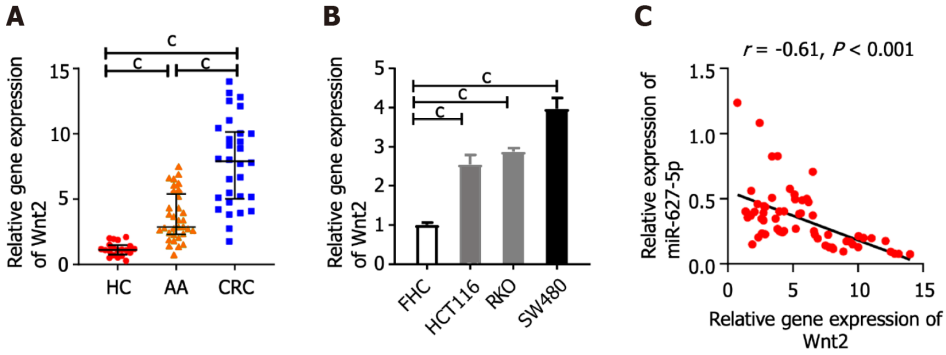
Impact of the miR-627-5p/Wnt2 axis on the malignant behaviours of CRC cells

To explore the functional effects of the miR-627-5p/Wnt2 axis in CRC cells, we generated a Wnt2 overexpression vector (pcDNA-Wnt2) and designed rescue assays. As presented in Figure 5, pcDNA-Wnt2 effectively increased the gene [SW480, 44.84 ± 5.98 *vs* 1.00 ± 0.08, $P < 0.001$; HCT116, 51.39 (45.06-56.67) *vs* 1.15 (0.63-1.39), $P < 0.001$] and protein (SW480, 3.73 ± 0.16 *vs* 2.70 ± 0.10, $P = 0.001$; HCT116, 1.32 ± 0.01 *vs* 1.04 ± 0.05, $P = 0.001$) expression of Wnt2 in SW480 and HCT116 cells, proving that the construction of this vector was successful. Then, we used it to transfect CRC cells overexpression miR-627-5p. The results of wound healing and Matrigel invasion assays revealed that upregulation of Wnt partially canceled the suppressive functions of miR-627-5p on cell migration [SW480, 102.95% (96.05%-132.64%) *vs* 22.22% (15.48%-32.49%), $P = 0.008$; HCT116, 116.23% ± 20.46% *vs* 36.03% ± 15.15%, $P < 0.001$] and invasion (SW480, 265.80 ± 36.89 *vs* 112.00 ± 39.77, $P < 0.001$; HCT116, 322.00 ± 28.61 *vs* 144.60 ± 35.78, $P < 0.001$, Figure 4A, B, D, and E). Besides, flow cytometry analysis demonstrated that cell apoptosis



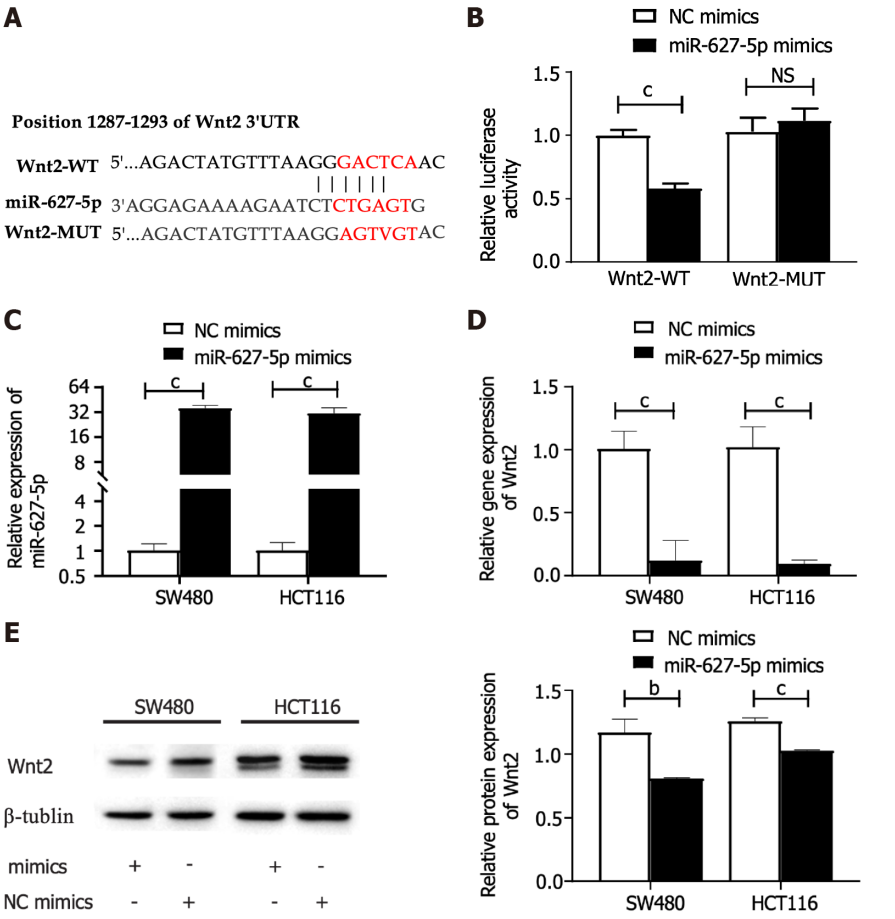
DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.318 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 1 Evaluation of the tissue expression and diagnostic utility of microRNA-627 in the GSE41655 and GSE18392 datasets. A: Tissue expression of microRNA-627 (miR-627) in the healthy controls (HCs) and colorectal cancer (CRC) patients in the GSE41655 dataset; B: Tissue expression of miR-627 in the HCs and CRC patients in the GSE18392 dataset; C: Receiver operating characteristic analysis of miR-627 to distinguish CRC patients from HCs in the GSE41655 dataset; D: Receiver operating characteristic analysis of miR-627 to distinguish CRC patients from HCs in the GSE18392 dataset. HCs: Healthy controls; CRC: Colorectal cancer. $^{b}P < 0.01$; $^{c}P < 0.001$.



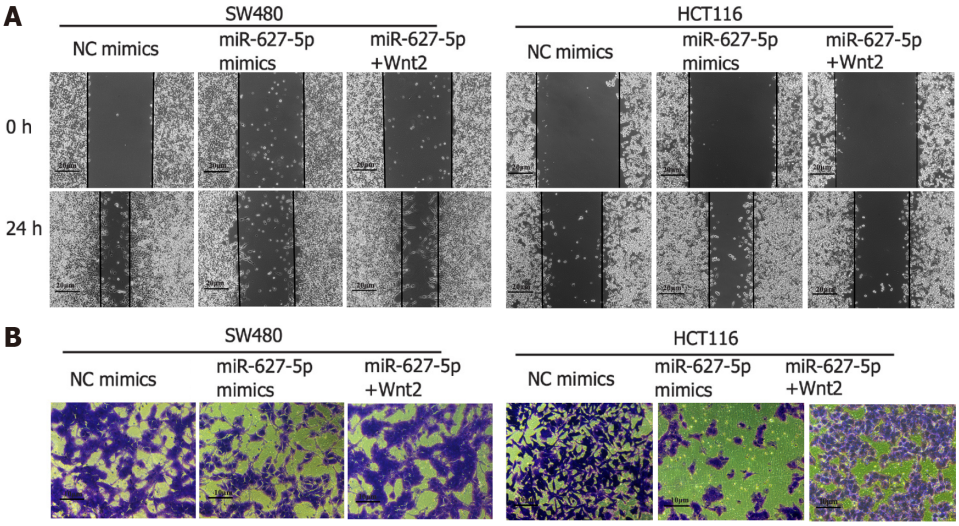
DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.318 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

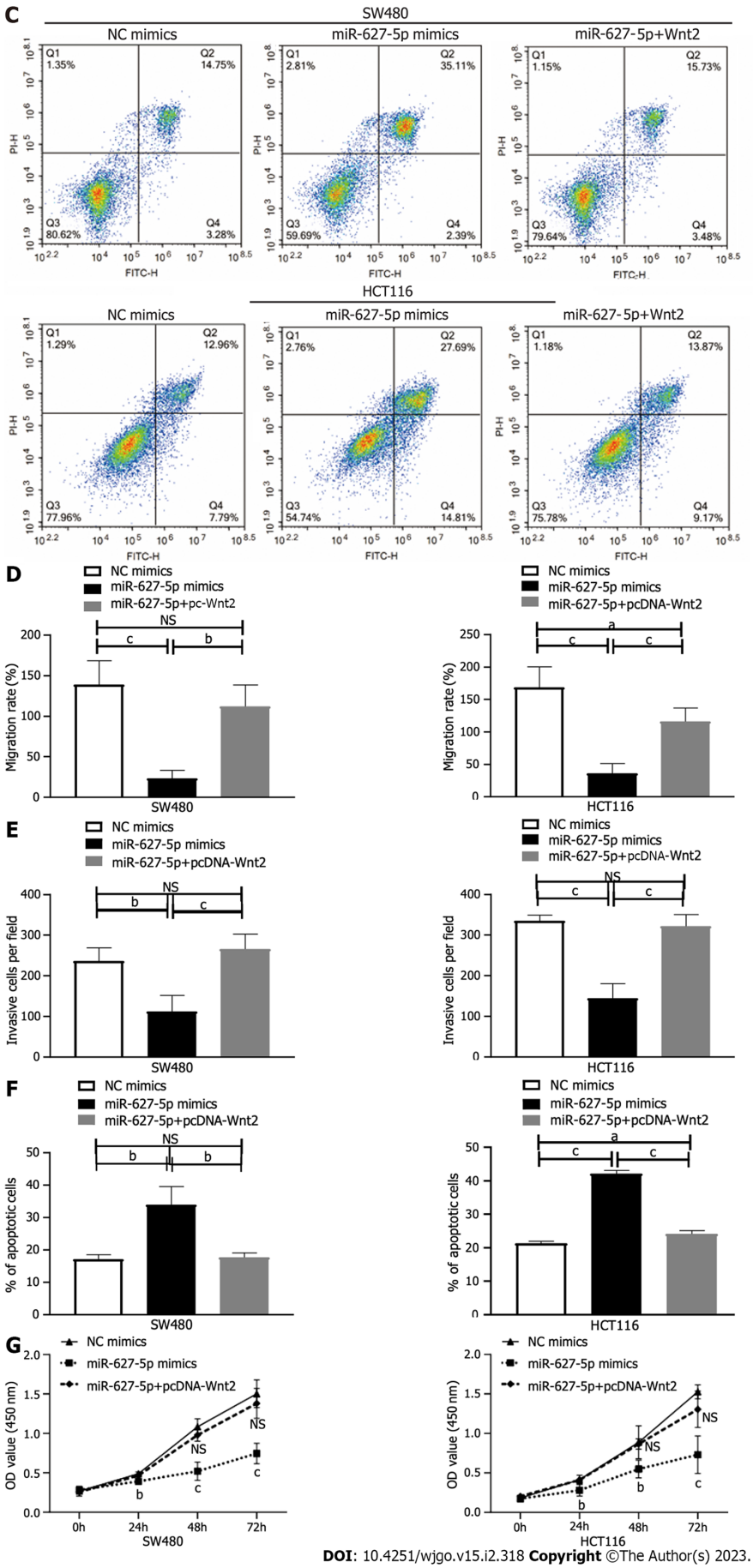
Figure 2 Inverse correlation between Wnt2 and microRNA-627-5p expression in colorectal neoplasm tissues. A: The mRNA expression levels of Wnt2 in healthy control tissues, advanced adenoma tissues and colorectal cancer (CRC) tissues; B: The mRNA expression levels of Wnt2 in CRC cell lines (SW480, HCT116, and RKO cells) and epithelial cell line cell line; C: The relationship between miR-627-5p and Wnt2 mRNA expression in colorectal neoplasm tissues. HCs: Healthy controls; CRC: Colorectal cancer; AA: Advanced adenoma; FHC: Colonic epithelial cell line. $^{c}P < 0.001$.



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.318 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 3 The direct binding relationship between microRNA-627-5p and Wnt2. A: Schematic illustration of the predicted binding sites between microRNA-627-5p (miR-627-5p) and Wnt2 mRNA; B: Dual luciferase reporter assays in HEK-293T cells. Experimental group: NC mimics + pcDNA-Wnt2-WT, miR-627-5p mimics + pcDNA-Wnt2-WT, NC mimics + pcDNA-Wnt2-MUT, miR-627-5p mimics + pcDNA-Wnt2-MUT; C: The transfection efficiency of miR-627-5p mimics in SW480 and HCT116 cells; D: The effects of miR-627-5p overexpression on the transcript expression levels of Wnt2 in SW480 and HCT116 cells; E: The effects of miR-627-5p overexpression on the protein expression levels of Wnt2 in SW480 and HCT116 cells. 3' UTR: 3'-untranslated region; NS: Not significant; $^{b}P < 0.01$; $^{c}P < 0.001$.





DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.318 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 4 Cellular behaviours induced by microRNA-627-5p mimics and Wnt2 overexpression plasmids in SW480 and HCT116 cells.

Experimental group: NC mimics, microRNA-627-5p (miR-627-5p) mimics, miR-627-5p mimics + pcDNA-Wnt2. A and D: Scratch assay was used to detect the migration of colorectal cancer (CRC) cells in each group; B and E: Matrigel invasion assay was used to detect the invasive capability of CRC cells in each group; C and F: Flow cytometry analysis was used to evaluate the apoptosis of CRC cells in each group; G: Cholecystokinin octapeptide (CCK-8) assay was used to detect the viability of CRC cells in each group. NS: Not significant; CRC: Colorectal cancer. $^{a}P < 0.05$; $^{b}P < 0.01$; $^{c}P < 0.001$.

induced by miR-627-5p could be attenuated by Wnt2 overexpression (SW480, 17.69% ± 1.35% *vs* 33.91% ± 5.61%, $P = 0.008$; HCT116, 24.17% ± 1.00% *vs* 42.15% ± 1.00%, $P < 0.001$, Figure 4C and F). CCK-8 assays demonstrated that the decreased in cell viability caused by miR-627-5p could be attenuated by Wnt2 overexpression (Figure 4G).

Function of miR-627-5p in the Wnt/β-catenin signalling pathway

To clarify the signalling pathways influenced by the miR627-5p/Wnt2 axis in CRC cells, we conducted qRT-PCR and western blot analysis to evaluate dysregulated genes in the classical Wnt signalling. In Figures 6 and 7, miR-627-5p overexpression in SW480 and HCT116 cells led to a sharp decline in the transcript and protein levels of β-catenin, c-myc, CD44, and cyclin D1. Next, we monitored the expression of β-catenin, c-myc, CD44, and cyclin D1 by treating miR-627-5p overexpressing CRC cells with pcDNA-Wnt2 or scramble vector. The findings illustrated that the transcript and protein levels of β -catenin, c-myc, CD44, and cyclin D1 were rescued at least partly by the overexpression of Wnt2. Consequently, it was suggested miR-627-5p reduces the gene and protein levels of downstream Wnt/β-catenin signalling components *via* Wnt2.

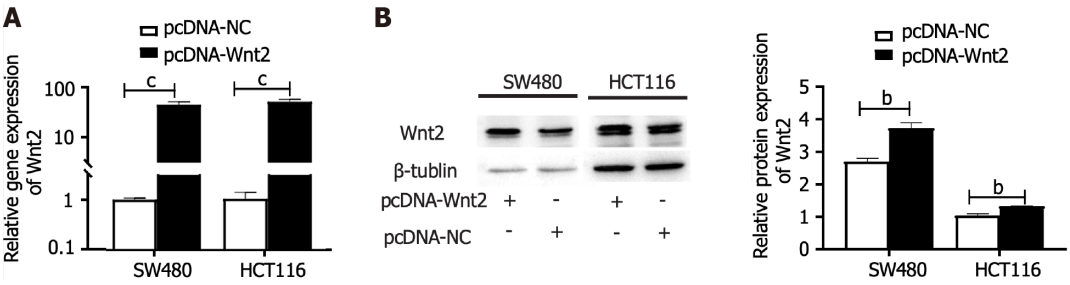
DISCUSSION

In our study, we concentrated on whether miR-627-5p, a rarely reported miRNA in CRC, could exert a suppressive effect on CRC development. First, we selected two GEO datasets to compare the expression of miR-627 in colorectal tumour patients and HCs, and the findings showed the decreased levels of miR-627 in cancer tissues in both GEO datasets. Consistent with our results, a study published in 2013 found the expression of miR-627 were observably downregulated in CRC tissues when compared to those in control tissues[21]. Unfortunately, this study did not distinguish the 5p and 3p forms of miR-627. In our previous study, we collected CRC and AA tissues to assess the expression of miR-627-5p and showed significantly decreased expression in CRC and AA tissues compared to HC tissues. Besides, miR-627-5p was found to be deceased in CRC cell lines in comparison with those in FHC cells[20]. According to these results, miR-627-5p expression was reduced in CRC.

Next, we conducted functional experiments using SW480 and HCT116 cells by transfecting miR-627-5p mimics or NC mimics to clarify the biological function of miR-627-5p in colorectal tumour. According to the findings, miR-627-5p greatly reduced cancer cells' ability to migrate, invade, and proliferate while also accelerating apoptosis, which was in accordance with past researches in other cancer types. For instance, miR-627-5p is markedly reduced in hepatocellular carcinoma and negatively correlated with the prognosis of cancer patients. miR-627-5p silencing promotes cell multiplication and cell cycle progression of hepatocellular carcinoma cells[9]. In oral squamous cell carcinoma, LINC00958 promotes tumour cell growth, delays apoptosis, and accelerates cell migration and epithelial-mesenchymal transition by suppressing the expression of miR-627-5p[12]. Thus, miR-627-5p is regarded as a tumour suppressor and could serve as a target for the treatment of cancer in the future.

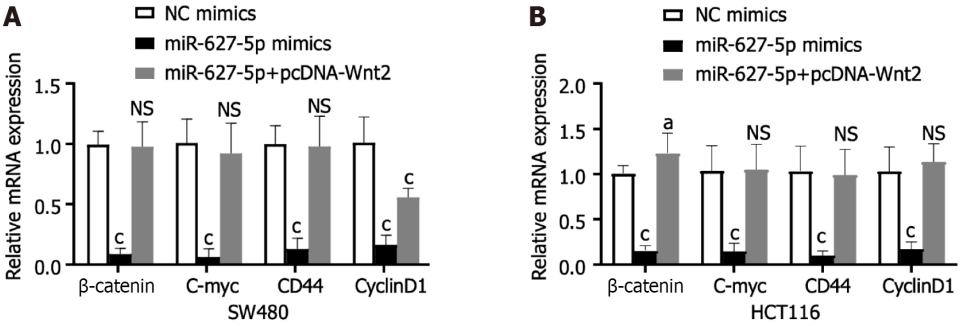
A variety of literature have elucidated that the loss or enhancement of miRNA function is mainly involved in cancer carcinogenesis and progression by targeting the expression of cancer-causing or cancer-suppressing genes[22]. To clarify the key mechanism of miR-627-5p in suppressing CRC growth, we used an online tool to excavate the possible downstream genes of miR-627-5p. We subsequently discovered that miR-627-5p might have a complementary site within the Wnt2 3′-UTR. A series of studies have claimed that Wnt2 contributes to the development of numerous malignant malignancies [17,23-26]. For example, the Wnt2 gene is almost undetectable in the normal gastrointestinal tract but is highly upregulated in precancerous adenomas, primary colorectal tumours and liver metastases[27]. High expression of Wnt2 is implicated as a critical factor in promoting the invasive and metastatic potential of CRC cells[26]. In concordance with past researches, the current study confirmed that Wnt2 mRNA levels were considerably elevated in colorectal neoplasm tissues and inversely related to miR-627-5p levels, suggesting that miR-627-5p might participate in intestinal carcinogenesis by regulating the expression of Wnt2.

To explore whether miR-627-5p is directly complementary to Wnt2, we conducted a series of experiments *in vitro*. According to the results of luciferase reporter tests, miR-627-5p upregulation inhibited the luciferase level of the reporter vector comprising the wild type sequence of Wnt2 3′-UTR, but no obvious change on the reporter vector comprising the mutation sequence. In addition, ectopic expression of miR-627-5p significantly reduced the gene and protein expression of Wnt2 in CRC cell lines. The above findings suggested that Wnt2 is a specific target of miR-627-5p. However, whether



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.318 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 5 Identification of the transfected efficiency of Wnt2 overexpression plasmids. A: The mRNA expressions of Wnt2 in SW480 and HCT116 cells after the transfection of Wnt2 overexpression plasmids; B: The protein expressions of Wnt2 in SW480 and HCT116 cells after the transfection of Wnt2 overexpression plasmids. $^{b}P < 0.01$; $^{c}P < 0.001$.



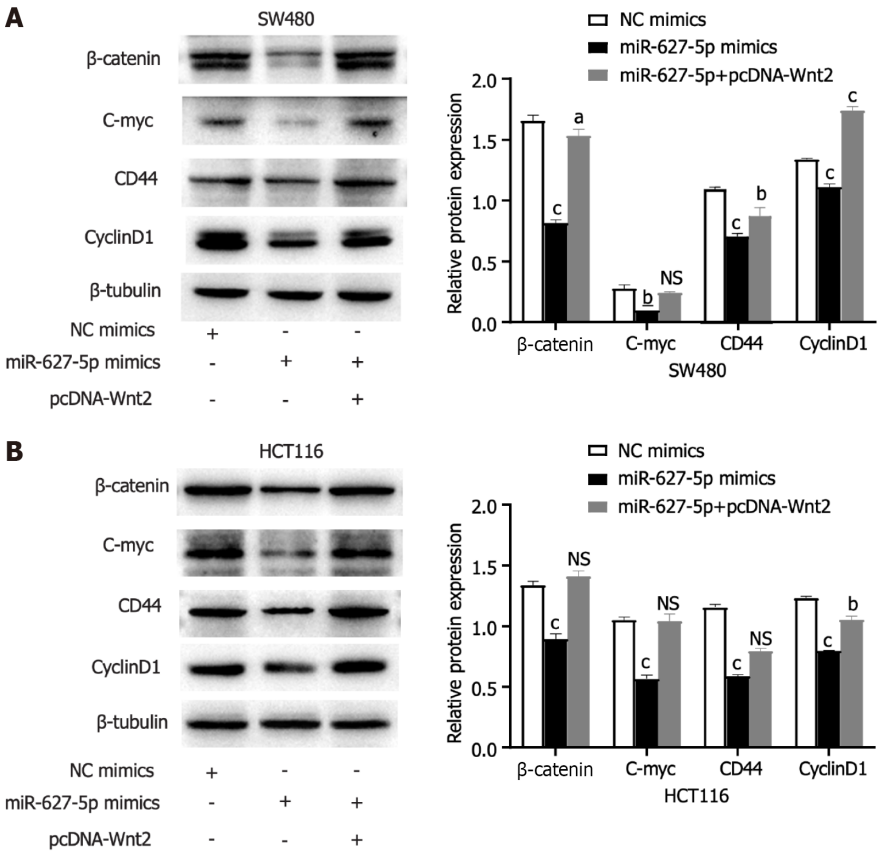
DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.318 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 6 The mRNA expression alterations of downstream target genes in the Wnt/β-catenin signalling induced by miR-627-5p mimics and Wnt2 overexpression plasmids in SW480 and HCT116 cells. A: SW480 cells; B: HCT116 cells. Experimental group: NC mimics, miR-627-5p mimics, miR-627-5p mimics + pcDNA-Wnt2. NS: Not significant; $^{b}P < 0.01$; $^{c}P < 0.001$.

miR-627-5p exerts its tumour inhibitory effect through directly regulating the expression of Wnt2 remains unknown. To answer this question, we conducted rescue experiments and cotransfected miR-672-5p mimics and Wnt2 overexpression plasmids into CRC cells. Rescue experiments showed that the cells' survival, motility, and invasion were enhanced and the proportion of apoptotic cells were decreased when compared to transfection of miR-627-5p mimics alone. Thus, miR-627-5p decreased CRC cell proliferation, motility, and invasion while promoting death *via* Wnt2.

As is well-known, Wnt2 is one of the critical ligands that regulates the activity of the Wnt/β-catenin signalling, while aberrant activation of the classical Wnt signalling is a major driver of colorectal carcinogenesis[28,29]. Herein, we hypothesized that miR-627-5p might regulate Wnt2 expression, thereby modulating the Wnt/β-catenin signalling, and exerting its tumour suppressive function on CRC *in vitro*. Normally, β-catenin, the essential element of the canonical Wnt pathway, is continually eliminated by the destruction complex (AXIN, GSK3β, CK1, and APC) without canonical Wnt ligands. The constant degradation of β-catenin leads to low level of free β-catenin in the cytoplasm and the repression of Wnt target genes. Conversely, the Wnt pathway is activated when canonical Wnt ligands bind to their receptors on the cell surface and subsequently cause the aggregation of the degradation complex, resulting in the accumulation of β-catenin in the cytoplasm. Then, β-catenin gradually migrates to the nucleus, where it serves as a co-activator for T-cell specific factor/lymphoid enhancer-binding factor to activate Wnt target genes such as cyclinD1[30], CD44[31], and c-myc[32], which are identified to be involved in the malignant tendency of cancer cells, including stemness, tumorigenicity, metastasis, and chemoresistance[33-35]. To verify this hypothesis, we investigated how miR-627-5p affected the expression of the Wnt/β-catenin signalling like β-catenin, cyclinD1, c-myc, and CD44. Our current study revealed that upregulation of miR-627-5p could effectively decrease the mRNA and protein expression of β-catenin, cyclinD1, c-myc and CD44, whereas the suppressive effects of miR-627-5p could be partially canceled by Wnt2 overexpression. These results suggested that miR-627-5p/Wnt2 regulates the canonical Wnt pathway in CRC cells.

There are some limitations in the study. First, we performed transient transfection to increase the levels of miRNAs in CRC cell lines. Since miRNAs do not integrate into the cellular genome, the typical effects can only last for several days, and we could not assess the long-term effects of miRNAs. Stable transfection of miRNAs is required to achieve the long-term effects of miR-627-5p on tumour progression. Second, the translocation of cytoplasmic β-catenin to the nucleus is a crucial step in the activation of Wnt signaling. However, the current study only detected alterations in β-catenin in whole



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.318 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 7 The protein expression alterations of downstream target genes in the Wnt/β-catenin signalling induced by microRNA-627-5p mimics and Wnt2 overexpression plasmids in SW480 and HCT116 cells. A: SW480 cells; B: HCT116 cells. Experimental group: NC mimics, miR-627-5p mimics, miR-627-5p mimics + pcDNA-Wnt2. NS: Not significant. [a]*P* < 0.05; [b]*P* < 0.01; [c]*P* < 0.001.

cells, not nuclear alterations. Finally, to learn more about the impact of miR-627-5p on the development of tumors in vivo, nude mouse carcinogenesis tests are necessary.

CONCLUSION

In summary, miR-627-5p could inhibit the malignant tendencies of CRC cells by directly inhibiting Wnt2 expression. The tumour suppressive effects were mainly achieved by inhibiting the activation of the classical Wnt/β-catenin signalling and the levels of its downstream target factors. These findings not only advance our understanding of the pathogenesis of CRC, but also provide evidence for an exploitable therapeutic target for CRC patients.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Population aging has given rise to the incidence rate of colorectal cancer (CRC) worldwide. Better elucidation of the mechanisms underlying the formation and growth of CRC is very helpful for the development of new therapy.

Research motivation

Latest studies have shown that miRNAs generally regulate the expression of oncogenes or tumour suppressor genes and exert integral roles in modulating cancer-related pathways and mediating the formation and progression of CRC. However, whether miR-627-5p is involved in the tumorigenesis of colorectal tumours or not is largely unexplored.

Research objectives
This current study is designed to verify the function of miR-627-5p in colorectal tumorigenesis by targeting Wnt2/β-catenin signalling pathway.

Research methods
The levels of miR-627-5p and Wnt2 were detected in CRC tissues. Functional experiments, including CCK-8, flow cytometry, Matrigel invasion, and scratch assays, were conducted to elucidate the function of miR-627-5p and wnt2 in colorectal tumour cells. Dual luciferase reporter tests were carried out to investigate how miR-627-5p and Wnt2 interact. The critical signalling pathway modulated by miR-627-5p was further identified.

Research results
Wnt2 transcript expression was markedly increased in colorectal tumour tissues and negatively correlated with miR-627-5p level. Upregualtion of miR-627-5p inhibited cancer cells' abilities to invade growth and migrate by directly restraining Wnt2 expressions. Furthermore, miR-627-5p exerted the suppressive role in CRC *via* inactivating the Wnt2/β-catenin signalling.

Research conclusions
miR-627-5p restrained the malignant biological properties of CRC cells *via* directly inhibiting Wnt2 expression to modulate the classical Wnt/β-catenin signalling.

Research perspectives
miRNA-627-5p/Wnt2/β-catenin may have potential therapeutic application for CRC.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Zhao DY designed and performed the study, analyzed the data, and drafted the manuscript; Yin TF and Sun XZ collected colorectal samples from subjects, and provided guidance on experimental procedures; Zhou YC, Wang QQ, and Zhou GYJ collected the clinical data and colorectal samples from the subjects; Yao SK designed the study, supervised the study performance, revised the manuscript, and obtained the funding; all authors read and approved the final manuscript.

Supported by the National Key Development Plan for Precision Medicine Research, No. 2017YFC0910002.

Institutional review board statement: This study was reviewed and approved by the Ethics Committee of China-Japan Friendship Hospital (Approval No. 2018-116-K85).

Informed consent statement: All study participants, or their legal guardian, provided informed written consent prior to study enrollment.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There are no conflicts of interest to report.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Dong-Yan Zhao 0000-0002-7026-068X; Teng-Fei Yin 0000-0003-1140-8637; Xi-Zhen Sun 0000-0001-9967-5726; Yuan-Chen Zhou 0000-0001-6024-6246; Qian-Qian Wang 0000-0002-7709-2121; Ge-Yu-Jia Zhou 0000-0002-4196-1436; Shu-Kun Yao 0000-0002-8512-2589.

S-Editor: Chen YL
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Zhang XD

REFERENCES

1 **Bray F**, Ferlay J, Soerjomataram I, Siegel RL, Torre LA, Jemal A. Global cancer statistics 2018: GLOBOCAN estimates of

incidence and mortality worldwide for 36 cancers in 185 countries. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2018; **68**: 394-424 [PMID: 30207593 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21492]
2 **O'Connell JB**, Maggard MA, Ko CY. Colon cancer survival rates with the new American Joint Committee on Cancer sixth edition staging. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2004; **96**: 1420-1425 [PMID: 15467030 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djh275]
3 **Gellad ZF**, Provenzale D. Colorectal cancer: national and international perspective on the burden of disease and public health impact. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: 2177-2190 [PMID: 20420954 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2010.01.056]
4 **Dekker E**, Tanis PJ, Vleugels JLA, Kasi PM, Wallace MB. Colorectal cancer. *Lancet* 2019; **394**: 1467-1480 [PMID: 31631858 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(19)32319-0]
5 **Guinney J**, Dienstmann R, Wang X, de Reyniès A, Schlicker A, Soneson C, Marisa L, Roepman P, Nyamundanda G, Angelino P, Bot BM, Morris JS, Simon IM, Gerster S, Fessler E, De Sousa E Melo F, Missiaglia E, Ramay H, Barras D, Homicsko K, Maru D, Manyam GC, Broom B, Boige V, Perez-Villamil B, Laderas T, Salazar R, Gray JW, Hanahan D, Tabernero J, Bernards R, Friend SH, Laurent-Puig P, Medema JP, Sadanandam A, Wessels L, Delorenzi M, Kopetz S, Vermeulen L, Tejpar S. The consensus molecular subtypes of colorectal cancer. *Nat Med* 2015; **21**: 1350-1356 [PMID: 26457759 DOI: 10.1038/nm.3967]
6 **Nguyen LH**, Goel A, Chung DC. Pathways of Colorectal Carcinogenesis. *Gastroenterology* 2020; **158**: 291-302 [PMID: 31622622 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.08.059]
7 **Mármol I**, Sánchez-de-Diego C, Pradilla Dieste A, Cerrada E, Rodriguez Yoldi MJ. Colorectal Carcinoma: A General Overview and Future Perspectives in Colorectal Cancer. *Int J Mol Sci* 2017; **18** [PMID: 28106826 DOI: 10.3390/ijms18010197]
8 **Lau NC**, Lim LP, Weinstein EG, Bartel DP. An abundant class of tiny RNAs with probable regulatory roles in Caenorhabditis elegans. *Science* 2001; **294**: 858-862 [PMID: 11679671 DOI: 10.1126/science.1065062]
9 **Wang J**, Chen T, Wang L, Yao B, Sun L, Chen S, Liu Q. MicroRNA-627-5p inhibits the proliferation of hepatocellular carcinoma cells by targeting BCL3 transcription coactivator. *Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol* 2020; **47**: 485-494 [PMID: 31793036 DOI: 10.1111/1440-1681.13218]
10 **Fan Z**, Zheng J, Xue Y, Liu X, Wang D, Yang C, Ma J, Liu L, Ruan X, Wang Z, Liu Y. NR2C2-uORF targeting UCA1-miR-627-5p-NR2C2 feedback loop to regulate the malignant behaviors of glioma cells. *Cell Death Dis* 2018; **9**: 1165 [PMID: 30518750 DOI: 10.1038/s41419-018-1149-x]
11 **Shin VY**, Ng EK, Chan VW, Kwong A, Chu KM. A three-miRNA signature as promising non-invasive diagnostic marker for gastric cancer. *Mol Cancer* 2015; **14**: 202 [PMID: 26607322 DOI: 10.1186/s12943-015-0473-3]
12 **Chen F**, Liu M, Yu Y, Sun Y, Li J, Hu W, Wang X, Tong D. LINC00958 regulated miR-627-5p/YBX2 axis to facilitate cell proliferation and migration in oral squamous cell carcinoma. *Cancer Biol Ther* 2019; **20**: 1270-1280 [PMID: 31161900 DOI: 10.1080/15384047.2019.1617571]
13 **To KK**, Tong CW, Wu M, Cho WC. MicroRNAs in the prognosis and therapy of colorectal cancer: From bench to bedside. *World J Gastroenterol* 2018; **24**: 2949-2973 [PMID: 30038463 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v24.i27.2949]
14 **Hur K**, Toiyama Y, Takahashi M, Balaguer F, Nagasaka T, Koike J, Hemmi H, Koi M, Boland CR, Goel A. MicroRNA-200c modulates epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition (EMT) in human colorectal cancer metastasis. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 1315-1326 [PMID: 22735571 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2011-301846]
15 **Yu Y**, Kanwar SS, Patel BB, Oh PS, Nautiyal J, Sarkar FH, Majumdar AP. MicroRNA-21 induces stemness by downregulating transforming growth factor beta receptor 2 (TGFβR2) in colon cancer cells. *Carcinogenesis* 2012; **33**: 68-76 [PMID: 22072622 DOI: 10.1093/carcin/bgr246]
16 **Kramer N**, Schmöllerl J, Unger C, Nivarthi H, Rudisch A, Unterleuthner D, Scherzer M, Riedl A, Artaker M, Crncec I, Lenhardt D, Schwarz T, Prieler B, Han X, Hengstschläger M, Schüler J, Eferl R, Moriggl R, Sommergruber W, Dolznig H. Autocrine WNT2 signaling in fibroblasts promotes colorectal cancer progression. *Oncogene* 2017; **36**: 5460-5472 [PMID: 28553956 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2017.144]
17 **Fu L**, Zhang C, Zhang LY, Dong SS, Lu LH, Chen J, Dai Y, Li Y, Kong KL, Kwong DL, Guan XY. Wnt2 secreted by tumour fibroblasts promotes tumour progression in oesophageal cancer by activation of the Wnt/β-catenin signalling pathway. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 1635-1643 [PMID: 21672941 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2011.241638]
18 **Katoh M**. WNT2 and human gastrointestinal cancer (review). *Int J Mol Med* 2003; **12**: 811-816 [PMID: 14533014]
19 **Backliwal G**, Hildinger M, Hasija V, Wurm FM. High-density transfection with HEK-293 cells allows doubling of transient titers and removes need for a priori DNA complex formation with PEI. *Biotechnol Bioeng* 2008; **99**: 721-727 [PMID: 17680657 DOI: 10.1002/bit.21596]
20 **Zhao DY**, Zhou L, Yin TF, Zhou YC, Zhou GY, Wang QQ, Yao SK. Circulating miR-627-5p and miR-199a-5p are promising diagnostic biomarkers of colorectal neoplasia. *World J Clin Cases* 2022; **10**: 5165-5184 [PMID: 35812667 DOI: 10.12998/wjcc.v10.i16.5165]
21 **Padi SK**, Zhang Q, Rustum YM, Morrison C, Guo B. MicroRNA-627 mediates the epigenetic mechanisms of vitamin D to suppress proliferation of human colorectal cancer cells and growth of xenograft tumors in mice. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **145**: 437-446 [PMID: 23619147 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.04.012]
22 **Friedman RC**, Farh KK, Burge CB, Bartel DP. Most mammalian mRNAs are conserved targets of microRNAs. *Genome Res* 2009; **19**: 92-105 [PMID: 18955434 DOI: 10.1101/gr.082701.108]
23 **Yu M**, Ting DT, Stott SL, Wittner BS, Ozsolak F, Paul S, Ciciliano JC, Smas ME, Winokur D, Gilman AJ, Ulman MJ, Xega K, Contino G, Alagesan B, Brannigan BW, Milos PM, Ryan DP, Sequist LV, Bardeesy N, Ramaswamy S, Toner M, Maheswaran S, Haber DA. RNA sequencing of pancreatic circulating tumour cells implicates WNT signalling in metastasis. *Nature* 2012; **487**: 510-513 [PMID: 22763454 DOI: 10.1038/nature11217]
24 **Ricken A**, Lochhead P, Kontogiannea M, Farookhi R. Wnt signaling in the ovary: identification and compartmentalized expression of wnt-2, wnt-2b, and frizzled-4 mRNAs. *Endocrinology* 2002; **143**: 2741-2749 [PMID: 12072409 DOI: 10.1210/endo.143.7.8908]
25 **Bravo DT**, Yang YL, Kuchenbecker K, Hung MS, Xu Z, Jablons DM, You L. Frizzled-8 receptor is activated by the Wnt-2 ligand in non-small cell lung cancer. *BMC Cancer* 2013; **13**: 316 [PMID: 23815780 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-13-316]

26 **Unterleuthner D**, Neuhold P, Schwarz K, Janker L, Neuditschko B, Nivarthi H, Crncec I, Kramer N, Unger C, Hengstschläger M, Eferl R, Moriggl R, Sommergruber W, Gerner C, Dolznig H. Cancer-associated fibroblast-derived WNT2 increases tumor angiogenesis in colon cancer. *Angiogenesis* 2020; **23**: 159-177 [PMID: 31667643 DOI: 10.1007/s10456-019-09688-8]

27 **Vider BZ**, Zimber A, Chastre E, Prevot S, Gespach C, Estlein D, Wolloch Y, Tronick SR, Gazit A, Yaniv A. Evidence for the involvement of the Wnt 2 gene in human colorectal cancer. *Oncogene* 1996; **12**: 153-158 [PMID: 8552386]

28 **Jung YS**, Jun S, Lee SH, Sharma A, Park JI. Wnt2 complements Wnt/β-catenin signaling in colorectal cancer. *Oncotarget* 2015; **6**: 37257-37268 [PMID: 26484565 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.6133]

29 **Bian J**, Dannappel M, Wan C, Firestein R. Transcriptional Regulation of Wnt/β-Catenin Pathway in Colorectal Cancer. *Cells* 2020; **9** [PMID: 32961708 DOI: 10.3390/cells9092125]

30 **Qie S**, Diehl JA. Cyclin D1, cancer progression, and opportunities in cancer treatment. *J Mol Med (Berl)* 2016; **94**: 1313-1326 [PMID: 27695879 DOI: 10.1007/s00109-016-1475-3]

31 **Hassn Mesrati M**, Syafruddin SE, Mohtar MA, Syahir A. CD44: A Multifunctional Mediator of Cancer Progression. *Biomolecules* 2021; **11** [PMID: 34944493 DOI: 10.3390/biom11121850]

32 **Dang CV**, Le A, Gao P. MYC-induced cancer cell energy metabolism and therapeutic opportunities. *Clin Cancer Res* 2009; **15**: 6479-6483 [PMID: 19861459 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-09-0889]

33 **Cselenyi CS**, Jernigan KK, Tahinci E, Thorne CA, Lee LA, Lee E. LRP6 transduces a canonical Wnt signal independently of Axin degradation by inhibiting GSK3's phosphorylation of beta-catenin. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2008; **105**: 8032-8037 [PMID: 18509060 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0803025105]

34 **Li VS**, Ng SS, Boersema PJ, Low TY, Karthaus WR, Gerlach JP, Mohammed S, Heck AJ, Maurice MM, Mahmoudi T, Clevers H. Wnt signaling through inhibition of β-catenin degradation in an intact Axin1 complex. *Cell* 2012; **149**: 1245-1256 [PMID: 22682247 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2012.05.002]

35 **Kim SE**, Huang H, Zhao M, Zhang X, Zhang A, Semonov MV, MacDonald BT, Garcia Abreu J, Peng L, He X. Wnt stabilization of β-catenin reveals principles for morphogen receptor-scaffold assemblies. *Science* 2013; **340**: 867-870 [PMID: 23579495 DOI: 10.1126/science.1232389]

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2023 February 15; 15(2): 332-342

DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.332

ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

Potent bromodomain and extraterminal domain inhibitor JAB-8263 suppresses MYC expression and exerts anti-tumor activity in colorectal cancer models

Xin-Mo Liu, Shao-You Xia, Wei Long, Hai-Jun Li, Gui-Qun Yang, Wen Sun, Song-Yan Li, Xiao-Hui Du

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Kalofonos HP, Greece; Rajagopalan A, Australia

Received: November 20, 2022
Peer-review started: November 20, 2022
First decision: December 14, 2022
Revised: December 21, 2022
Accepted: December 30, 2022
Article in press: December 30, 2022
Published online: February 15, 2023

Xin-Mo Liu, Shao-You Xia, Song-Yan Li, Xiao-Hui Du, Department of General Surgery, Chinese PLA General Hospital, Beijing 100039, China

Xin-Mo Liu, Shao-You Xia, Song-Yan Li, Xiao-Hui Du, Medical School of Chinese PLA, Beijing 100039, China

Wei Long, Hai-Jun Li, Department of Chemistry, Jacobio Pharmaceuticals, Beijing 102600, China

Gui-Qun Yang, Department of Pharmacology, Jacobio Pharmaceuticals, Beijing 102600, China

Wen Sun, Department of Anesthesiology, the Second Affiliated Hospital of Tianjin University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, Tianjin 300250, China

Corresponding author: Xiao-Hui Du, MD, Chief Doctor, Deputy Director, Professor, Department of General Surgery, Chinese PLA General Hospital, No. 28 Fuxing Road, Haidian District, Beijing 100039, China. duxiaohuiplagh@sina.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

The overexpression of the *MYC* gene plays an important role in the occurrence, development and evolution of colorectal cancer (CRC). Bromodomain and extraterminal domain (BET) inhibitors can decrease the function BET by recognizing acetylated lysine residues, thereby downregulating the expression of MYC.

AIM

To investigate the inhibitory effect and mechanism of a BET inhibitor on CRC cells.

METHODS

The effect of the BET inhibitor JAB-8263 on the proliferation of various CRC cell lines was studied by CellTiter-Glo method and colony formation assay. The effect of JAB-8263 on the cell cycle and apoptosis of CRC cells was studied by propidium iodide staining and Annexin V/propidium iodide flow assay, respectively. The effect of JAB-8263 on the expression of c-MYC, p21 and p16 in

CRC cells was detected by western blotting assay. The anti-tumor effect of JAB-8263 on CRC cells *in vivo* and evaluation of the safety of the compound was predicted by constructing a CRC cell animal tumor model.

RESULTS

JAB-8263 dose-dependently suppressed CRC cell proliferation and colony formation *in vitro*. The MYC signaling pathway was dose-dependently inhibited by JAB-8263 in human CRC cell lines. JAB-8263 dose-dependently induced cell cycle arrest and apoptosis in the MC38 cell line. SW837 xenograft model was treated with JAB-8263 (0.3 mg/kg for 29 d), and the average tumor volume was significantly decreased compared to the vehicle control group ($P < 0.001$). The MC38 syngeneic murine model was treated with JAB-8263 (0.2 mg/kg for 29 d), and the average tumor volume was significantly decreased compared to the vehicle control group ($P = 0.003$).

CONCLUSION

BET could be a potential effective drug target for suppressing CRC growth, and the BET inhibitor JAB-8263 can effectively suppress c-MYC expression and exert anti-tumor activity in CRC models.

Key Words: Bromodomain; Bromodomain and extraterminal domain inhibitor; Colorectal cancer; JAB-8263; MYC; p21

©The Author(s) 2023. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: After treating colorectal cancer (CRC) cells with the bromodomain and extraterminal domain (BET) inhibitor JAB-8263, we found that MC38 cells undergo cell cycle arrest and apoptosis. In multiple human CRC cell lines, we found that JAB-8263 downregulated c-MYC expression and upregulated p21 and p16 expression, which is associated with the highly potent antiproliferative effects of JAB-8263. JAB-8263 effectively inhibited CRC growth with acceptable tolerance in tumor mouse models. Our studies suggested that BET can be a potential effective drug target for suppressing CRC growth, and JAB-8263 can effectively suppress c-MYC expression and exert anti-tumor activity in CRC models.

Citation: Liu XM, Xia SY, Long W, Li HJ, Yang GQ, Sun W, Li SY, Du XH. Potent bromodomain and extraterminal domain inhibitor JAB-8263 suppresses MYC expression and exerts anti-tumor activity in colorectal cancer models. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2023; 15(2): 332-342
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v15/i2/332.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.332

INTRODUCTION

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is one of the most common malignant tumors, and its morbidity and mortality ranks third among all tumor patients[1], which seriously threatens human health. Traditional treatment methods include surgery, chemotherapy and radiotherapy. However, these treatments are invasive and are often accompanied by side effects[2]. In recent years, targeted therapy and immunotherapy have also developed rapidly as new treatment methods. With the deepening of tumor research, it has been found that the occurrence and development of colorectal tumors are related to the dysregulation of the epigenome[3], and one of the major areas of interest in epigenetic targets is the bromodomain and extraterminal domain (BET).

BET proteins belong to the acetyl-lysine-binding bromodomain (BRD) protein family and have four members, BRD2, BRD3, BRD4 and BRDT[4,5]. BET proteins have two N-terminal bromodomains (BD1 and BD2) that interact with acetylated lysine residues in histones. Then, it binds to transcription factor P-TEFb and RNA polymerase II and induces transcription[6]. BET protein acts as an epigenetic regulator and transcriptional cofactor, and it is closely associated with gene transcription, cell cycle and apoptosis, invasion and metastasis. BET proteins promote aberrant expression of many oncogenes such as *MYC*, *CCND1* and *BCL2L1*[7,8].

MYC is a proto-oncogene that is activated by amplification and chromosomal translocation rearrangement. The overexpression of MYC plays an important role in the occurrence, development and evolution of CRC[9,10]. Overexpression of MYC and dysregulation of MYC target genes can be found in most CRC cells[11]. BET inhibitors bind to the BET protein, occupying the space where it binds to acetylated lysines, thus inhibiting the transcription of its downstream *MYC* oncogenes and MYC-dependent genes[12,13]. A study showed the small molecule BET inhibitor JQ1 occupies the bromodomain pocket of BRD4, resulting in downregulation of *MYC* mRNA and MYC protein[14]. This

provides a rationale for the idea that BET inhibitors may exert anti-tumor activity in CRC cells.

The BET inhibitor JAB-8263 used in this study is a new type of BET inhibitor, which has a strong affinity with BET proteins and can significantly inhibit BET downstream signals c-MYC and N-MYC at a concentration of less than 1 nmol/L. It can significantly inhibit the proliferation of various tumor cells and induce the expression of cleaved PARP and the activation of caspase3/7, thereby inhibiting the proliferation of tumor cells and inducing apoptosis. Previous *in vivo* studies have shown that JAB-8263 has strong anti-tumor effects in various tumor models such as hematological tumors and small cell lung cancer through the MYC pathway. The pharmacology tests on safety show that JAB-8263 has no adverse effects on the cardiovascular system, respiratory system and central nervous system.

We predicted that JAB-8263 can suppress CRC cells *in vitro* and *in vivo*, and the purpose of this study was to explore the mechanism of its inhibitory effect on CRC cells.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Cell proliferation

All CRC cell lines (HT29, DLD1, Colo205, H716, SW837, H508 and MC38) used in this study were purchased from ATCC and kept in our laboratory. The CellTiter-Glo method was used in this experiment. CRC cells were plated in cell culture plates and cultured in a cell culture incubator at 37 °C, 5% CO_2 or 100% air and 95% humidity. Compounds were added the next day and incubated for 5 d, and cell viability was detected with the CellTiter-Glo kit. The data were analyzed using GraphPad Prism software, and a four-parameter equation was used to fit a concentration-response curve, from which the IC_{50} of the compound concentration corresponding to 50% cell viability on the curve was calculated. Cell viability (%) = ($Lumi_{test\ compound}$-$Lumi_{blank\ control}$)/($Lumi_{solvent\ control}$-$Lumi_{blank\ control}$) × 100%. Compound information: BET inhibitor JAB-8263 (Jacobio Pharmaceuticals, Beijing, China), purity: 99.10%, storage condition: 4 °C.

Colony formation assay

The cell suspension was serially diluted, and 1000 cells were inoculated in each group of cells per dish, cultured in a cell incubator at 37 °C, 5% CO_2 or 100% air and 95% humidity and stained with crystal violet solution after 5 d. Cells exposed to the drug were compared to controls (treated with DMSO) assayed in triplicate.

Cell cycle analysis

Six-well plates were seeded with MC38 cells in logarithmic growth phase, 5 × 10^5 cells per well. Diluted JAB-8263 compound was added to each well, and 0.1% DMSO was added to the control group; the incubation time was 3 d and 5 d, respectively. Cells were then trypsinized, washed with PBS and stained with propidium iodide (PI) solution for 30 min in a dark room. Cell DNA content was analyzed by flow cytometry in triplicate.

Apoptosis assay

Six-well plates were seeded with MC38 cells in logarithmic growth phase, 5 × 10^5 cells per well. Diluted JAB-8263 compound was added to each well, and 0.1% DMSO was added to the control group; the incubation time was 3 d and 5 d, respectively. Cells were then trypsinized and washed with PBS. Cells were stained (Thermo Annexin V Apoptosis Detection Kit, APC) and incubated for 30 min at room temperature in a dark room. Analysis was performed in triplicate using a drain cytometer in triplicate.

Western blotting

Cells were harvested, and cellular protein collection was performed after addition of lysate. The protein concentration was detected according to the BCA instructions. The samples added to loading buffer were electrophoresed by discontinuous SDS-PAGE denaturing gel. The protein was transferred to PVDF membrane and detected by ECL exposure. Antibodies information: Anti-c-MYC antibody (ab32072, Abcam, United Kingdom); p21 Waf1/Cip1 (12D1) Rabbit mAb (#2947, GST, United States); p16 INK4A (E6N8P) Rabbit mAb (#18769, GST, United States); GAPDH (D16H11) XP® Rabbit mAb (#18769, GST, United States).

In vivo studies

All animal care and use-related experimental protocols and changes to the experimental protocols of animals in this experiment were reviewed, approved and guided by the Jacobio Animal Care and Use Management Committee.

SW837 xenograft mouse model: 12 female NOD-SCID mice were subcutaneously inoculated with 1 × 10^7 SW837 cells on the right back. When the tumor grew to an average of 121 mm^3, the mice were randomly divided into two groups according to tumor size and body weight. The experiment was

divided into a vehicle control group and a JAB-8263 0.3 mg/kg treatment group. The JAB-8263 0.3 mg/kg treatment group and vehicle control group were administered by gavage once every 2 d. The anti-tumor activity was evaluated according to the relative tumor growth inhibition (TGI) rate. TGI (%) = $(1-T_{RTV})/C_{RTV} \times 100\%$ (T_{RTV}: mean RTV of the treatment group; C_{RTV}: mean RTV of the vehicle control group; RTV = V_t-V_0, V_0 is the volume of the subcutaneous transplanted tumor of the mouse at the time of grouping, and V_t is the volume of the subcutaneous tumor of the mouse after treatment). The safety was evaluated according to the changes in animal body weight, drug withdrawal and death.

MC38 syngeneic murine model: 16 female C57BL/6 mice were subcutaneously inoculated with 1×10^6 MC38 cells on the right back. When the tumors grew to an average of 103 mm^3, they were randomly divided into two groups according to the tumor size and the weight of the mice. The experiment was divided into a vehicle control group and a JAB-8263 0.2 mg /kg treatment group. JAB-8263 0.2 mg/kg treatment group and vehicle control group were administered by gavage once every 2 d. The anti-tumor activity was evaluated according to the relative TGI rate, and the safety was evaluated according to the changes in animal body weight, drug withdrawal and death.

A single-dose MC38 model: In addition, we used the above method to establish a single-dose MC38 model. Nine female C57BL/6 mice were randomly divided into two groups according to the tumor size and the weight of the mice. The experiment was divided into a vehicle control group, a JAB-8263 0.1 mg/kg treatment group and a JAB-8263 0.2 mg/kg treatment group. One hour after the treatments were administered, the experiment was terminated, all mice were euthanized, and tumor tissues were collected.

Statistical analysis

All experimental results were expressed as mean ± SD. The *t*-test method was used to compare the data of the treatment group and the control group for statistical differences. All data were analyzed with SPSS 22.0, and $P < 0.05$ was considered statistically significant.

RESULTS

JAB-8263 dose-dependently suppressed CRC cell proliferation and colony formation in vitro

We found seven CRC cell lines that were sensitive to JAB-8263 in cell proliferation assays, including human CRC cell lines (HT29, DLD1, Colo205, H716, SW837 and H508, Figure 1A) and murine CRC cell line (MC38, Figure 1B). The IC_{50} values of six human CRC cell lines including HT-29, DLD-1, Colo205, H716, SW837 and H508 were 0.09-1.24 nmol/L, and the IC_{50} of the murine CRC cell line MC38 was 1.25 nmol/L.

In the colony formation assay, five groups of CRC cell lines were sensitive to the JAB-8263 compound. Compared with the control group (DMSO), the colony formation of the cell lines in each group was significantly reduced with increasing drug concentration (Figure 1C). Taken together, these data suggest that JAB-8263 dose-dependently suppressed CRC cell proliferation and colony formation *in vitro*.

JAB-8263 suppressed CRC cell MYC expression and promoted p21 and p16 expression

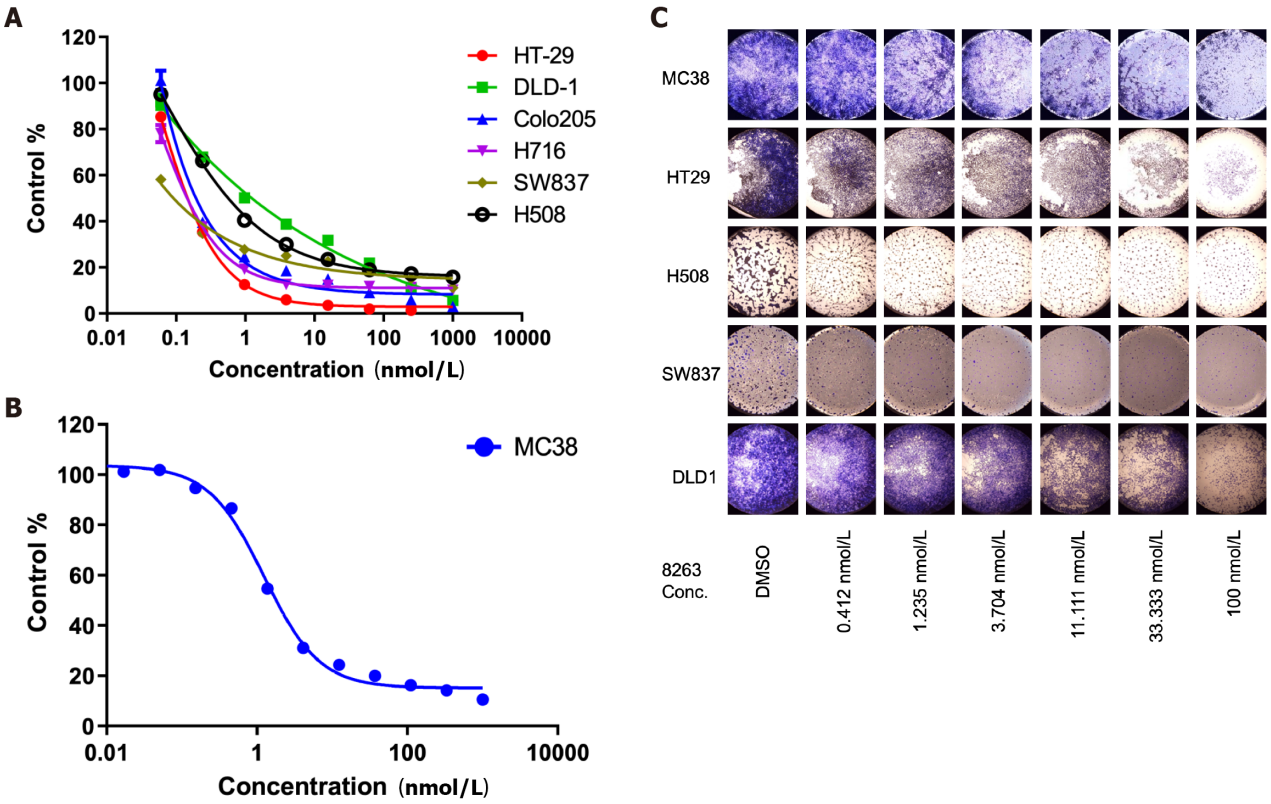
Western blot assays on MYC, p21 and p16 levels were performed in human CRC cell lines with JAB-8263 treatment. Compared with the control group (DMSO), the expression of MYC was downregulated in all cell lines with the treatment of different concentrations of JAB-8263 (1 nmol/L, 10 nmol/L and 100 nmol/L). The p21 expression of MC38, DLD-1, H508, HT29, SW837 and Colo205 was upregulated, and the expression of p16 in H716, HT29 and colo205 was upregulated (Figure 2A-C). This data suggest that JAB-8263 dose-dependently downregulated the expression of c-MYC in CRC cells and upregulated the expression of p21 and p16 in some of the CRC cell lines.

JAB-8263 dose-dependently induced cell cycle arrest and apoptosis in the MC38 cell line

We conducted further cell cycle and apoptosis assays on the murine CRC cell line MC38 to explore the mechanism of JAB-8263 suppressed CRC cell proliferation. In the cell cycle assay, the MC38 cell cycle was arrested in the subG0 phase compared with the control group after 3 d and 5 d of treatment with JAB-8263 in different concentrations. JAB-8263 dose-dependently decreased the G2/M phase ratio and increased the subG0 prophase ratio in MC38 cells, indicating that JAB-8263 induced cell cycle arrest in the G0 phase. (Figure 3A and B). In the apoptosis assay, the apoptotic ratio of MC38 was increased compared with the control group after 3 d and 5 d of treatment with JAB-8263. Furthermore, the apoptotic ratio increased with the compound concentration (Figure 3C and D). This data indicates that JAB-2485 suppressed tumor cell activity in two ways by inducing MC38 cell cycle arrest and apoptosis.

JAB-8263 suppressed in vivo CRC growth

After 29 d of treatment in the SW837 xenograft model, the average tumor volume in the vehicle control



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.332 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 1 JAB-8263 dose-dependently suppressed colorectal cancer cell proliferation and colony formation *in vitro*. A: Human colorectal cancer cell lines including HT29, DLD1, Colo205, H716, SW837 and H508 were treated with JAB-8263 for 6 d, and the proliferation was dose-dependently suppressed; B: The MC38 mouse cell line was treated with JAB-8263 for 6 d, and the proliferation was dose-dependently suppressed; C: The IC_{50} values of HT-29, DLD-1, Colo205, H716, SW837, H508 and MC38 were 0.15, 1.24, 0.19, 0.09, 0.57, 0.14 and 1.25 μmol/L. Colony formation assays for six colorectal cancer cell lines including MC38, HT29, H508, SW837 and DLD1 were treated with various concentrations of JAB-8263 for 5 d. Cell proliferation in all cell lines was dose-dependently suppressed. All experiments were performed in triplicate. Conc.: Concentration.

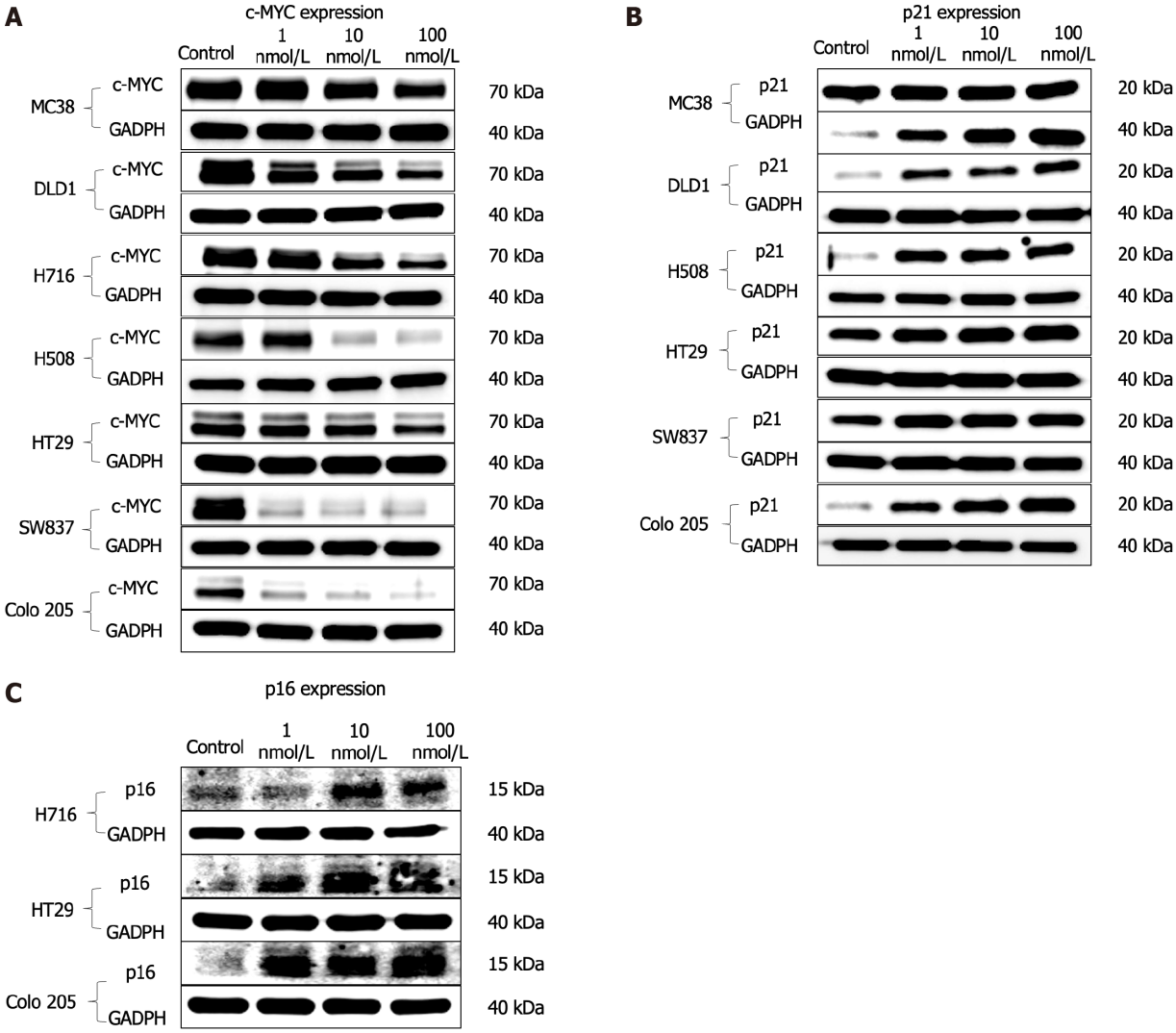
group was 895 mm^3, and the average tumor volume in the JAB-8263 0.3 mg/kg treatment group was 283 mm^3, which was statistically significant compared to the vehicle control group. The relative tumor inhibition rate TGI (%) was 79.0% (Figure 4A). Only one animal in the JAB-8263 treatment group lost 16.6% of body weight at the end of the trial, and animals in the other groups tolerated it well without discontinuation or death (Figure 4B). After 18 d of treatment in the MC38 syngeneic model, the average tumor volume in the vehicle control group was 2580 mm^3, and the average tumor volume in the JAB-8263 0.2 mg/kg treatment group was 686 mm^3. Compared with the vehicle control group, there was a significant statistical difference (P = 0.003) (Figure 4C), and the relative tumor inhibition rate TGI (%) was 76.5%. The body weight change of each treatment group was controlled within 15%, no drug discontinuation or death occurred, and the animals tolerated the treatment well (Figure 4D).

The tumor tissue of the single-dose MC38 model was further subjected to the western blot assay to evaluate the underlying mechanism, and it was found that the expression of c-MYC was significantly decreased by a single dose of JAB-8263 administration (P = 0.013 and P = 0.011) (Figure 4G and H). All data showed that JAB-8263 downregulated the expression of c-MYC in tumor tissue from the single-dose MC38 model.

DISCUSSION

In recent years, BET protein inhibitors have received extensive attention in the application of tumors, and many BET inhibitors have been used in clinical trials, but most are focused on hematological tumors and some solid tumors such as lung cancer and prostate cancer[15-19]. Some previous studies have used JQ1 and other compounds in the study of CRC cells[20,21], but due to the short half-life of most compounds, they are quite challenging for further clinical application. JAB-8263 used in this study has stronger protein affinity, high affinity for BET protein *in vitro*, and the IC_{50} is less than 1 nmol/L.

In the *in vitro* cell proliferation and colony formation experiments, we found that JAB-8263 had an inhibitory effect on CRC cells. To further study its mechanism of action, we performed cell cycle and apoptosis experiments. However, only the mouse CRC cell line MC38 obtained ideal positive results,



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.332 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

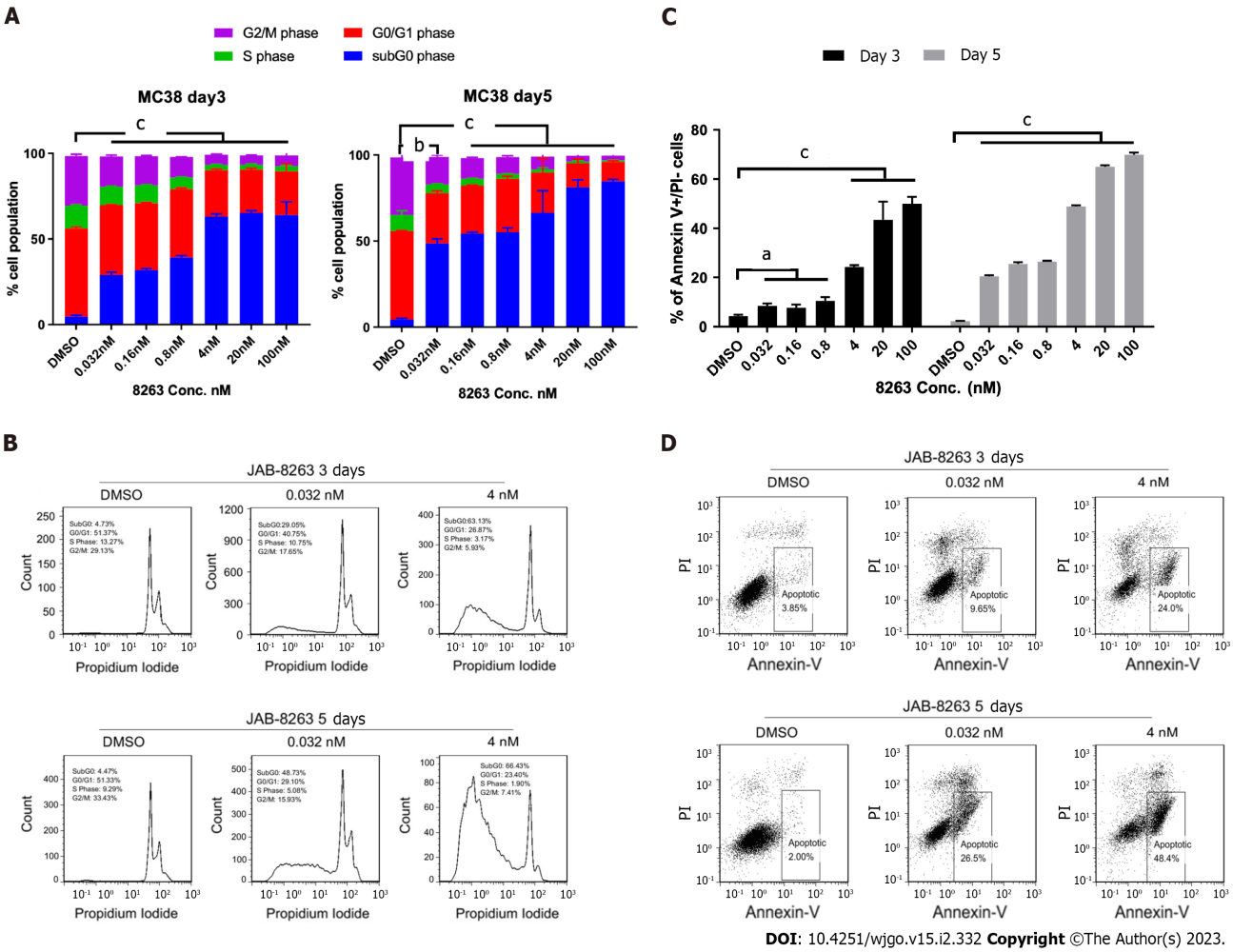
Figure 2 MYC signaling pathway was dose-dependently inhibited by JAB-8263 in human colorectal cancer cell lines. A-C: Multiple colorectal cancer cell lines were treated with different concentrations of JAB-8263 (1 nmol/L, 10 nmol/L and 100 nmol/L) for 16 h. Western blotting assay was performed to detect levels of MYC, p21 and p16. The expression of MYC were downregulated (A), and the expression of p21 (B) and p16 (C) were upregulated in multiple colorectal cancer cell lines.

and the human CRC cell lines did not have a significant difference from the control group. We conducted the western blot experiments to further explore this result.

MYC plays an important role in the cell cycle, cell death, cellular senescence, and tumorigenesis of CRC cells[9]. Myc-related lnc-RNAs such as MYCLo-2 are overexpressed in CRC cells and have oncogenic functions[14]. Through the *in vitro* and *in vivo* studies of this study, we found that JAB-8263 can effectively suppress the expression of c-MYC and finally suppress CRC cells.

The tumor suppressor genes *p21* and *p16* are regulated by the *MYC* gene[14]. Therefore, we further investigated whether the expression of these two genes was affected by BET inhibitors. p21 (CDKN1A) is involved in the regulation of cell cycle and cellular senescence[22]. In 1993, it was reported that p21 can suppress multiple tumors such as CRC by activating wild-type p53[23]. Moreover, studies have shown that p21 can also suppress tumor growth by inhibiting cyclin kinase complexes and proliferating cell nuclear antigen[24]. JAB-8263 achieves an anti-tumor effect by inducing CRC cell cycle arrest by upregulating p21. However, at the same time, some studies have suggested that p21 has an anti-apoptotic effect, and the apoptosis of hCT116 colon cancer cells can be inhibited by inhibiting p21[25, 26]. This might be one reason why JAB-8263 did not have ideal results in the apoptosis experiments, which also requires further study.

p16 (CDKN2A) can inhibit the function of CDK4, and the combination of CDk4 and cyclin D1 plays a key regulatory role in the G1→S phase of the cell cycle, thereby suppressing the malignant proliferation of cells[27]. The inactivation or decreased expression of the *p16* gene can lead to the malignant proliferation of cells and lead to tumorigenesis[28,29]. JAB-8263 inhibits CDK4 function by upregulation of p16, thereby suppressing CRC cells.



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.332 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

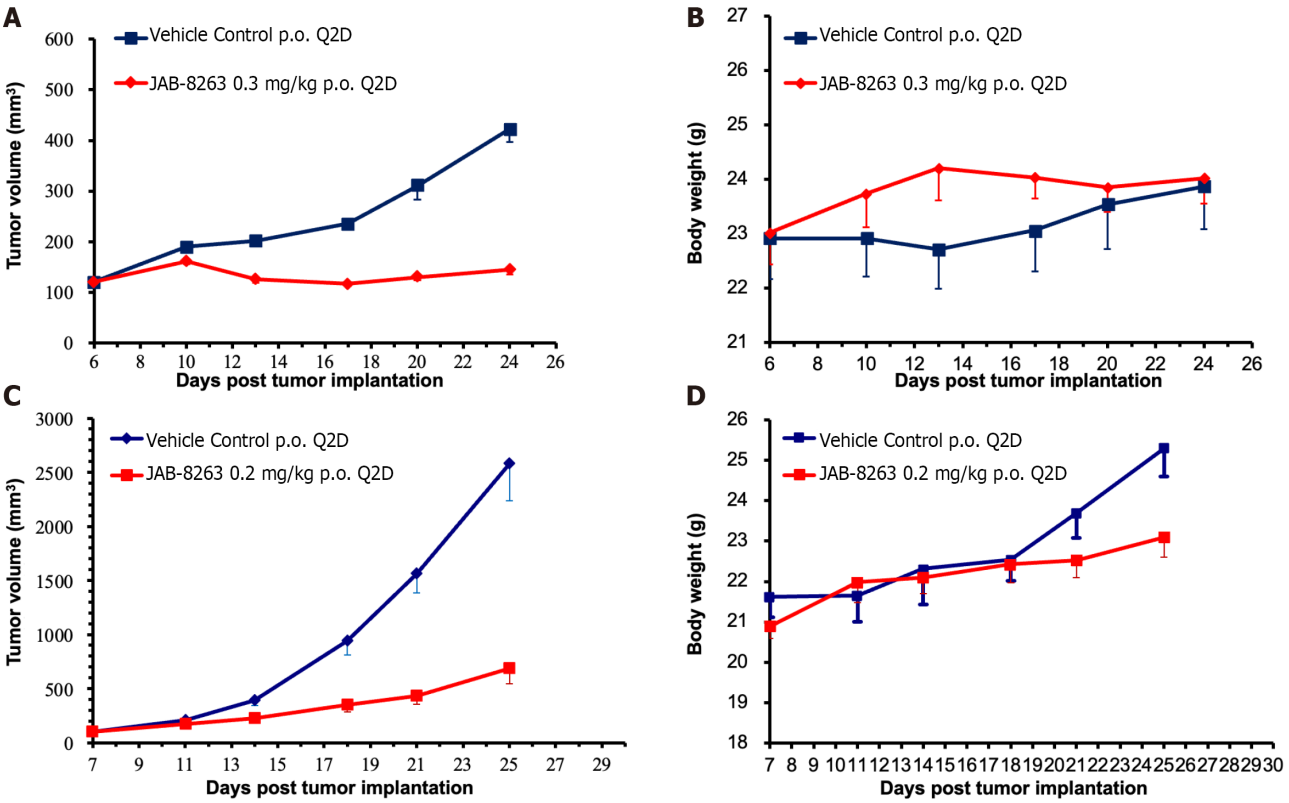
Figure 3 JAB-8263 dose-dependently induced cell cycle arrest and apoptosis in the MC38 cell line. After incubation with different concentrations of JAB-8263 (0, 0.032, 0.16, 0.8, 4, 20 and 100 nmol/L) for 3 d and 5 d, MC38 cells were collected and analyzed for cell cycle and apoptosis assays by flow cytometry. A and B: JAB-8263 dose-dependently decreased the G2/M phase ratio and increased the G0 prophase ratio in MC38 cells, indicating that JAB-8263 induced cells to arrest in the G0 phase; C and D: JAB-8263 dose-dependently induced apoptosis in MC38 after treatment for 3 d and 5 d. All experiments were performed in triplicate. $^{a}P < 0.05$, $^{b}P < 0.01$, $^{c}P < 0.001$ *vs* DMSO control. PI: Propidium iodide.

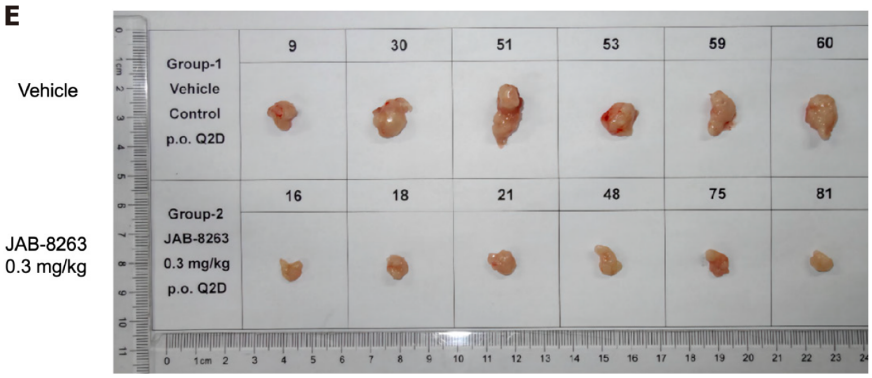
Finally, we verified that JAB-8263 has a significant tumor inhibitory effect compared with the control group in the SW837 and MC38 animal models. The animals in the treatment group tolerated the drug well. Since c-MYC expression is disturbed in long-term dosing models, we established a single-dose model. The detection of tumor tissue in single-dose MC38 model also showed that c-MYC was downregulated. This is consistent with the conclusions we obtained in the *in vitro* studies.

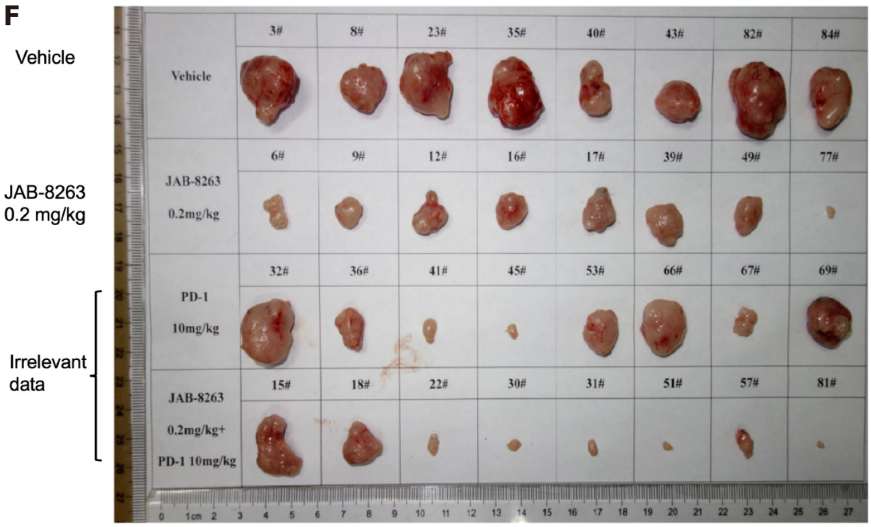
According to the conclusion of this study, the BET inhibitor JAB-8263 can inhibit CRC cells mainly by inhibiting the expression of c-MYC. But at the same time, we found that the inhibition of BET inhibitors on CRC has many mechanisms other than the *MYC* gene. Further directions include whether the BET inhibitors still have an anti-tumor effect in cells that do not overexpress MYC, which will provide a theoretical basis for the indications of CRC treatment in future clinical applications.

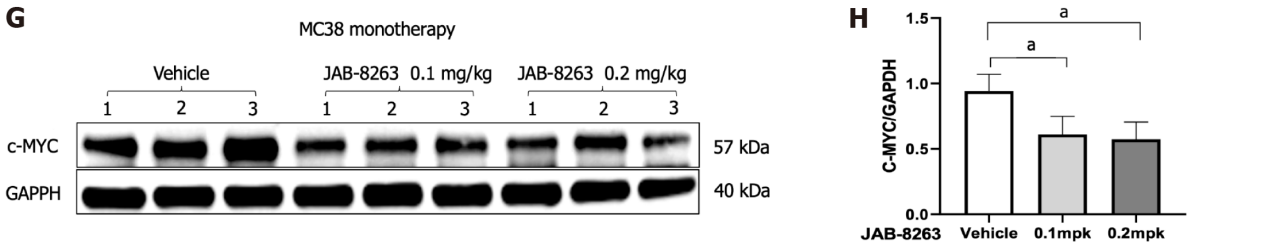
CONCLUSION

The JAB-8263 compound inhibited the BET target. The expression of BET downstream signaling protein MYC was repressed by JAB-8263, resulting in downregulation of c-MYC and upregulation of p21 and p16. It induced cell cycle arrest, promoted apoptosis of CRC cells and displayed anti-tumor activity. *In vivo*, JAB-8263 was effective in CRC models.


A
Vehicle Control p.o. Q2D
JAB-8263 0.3 mg/kg p.o. Q2D
Tumor volume (mm³)
Days post tumor implantation
B
Vehicle Control p.o. Q2D
JAB-8263 0.3 mg/kg p.o. Q2D
Body weight (g)
Days post tumor implantation
C
Vehicle Control p.o. Q2D
JAB-8263 0.2 mg/kg p.o. Q2D
Tumor volume (mm³)
Days post tumor implantation
D
Vehicle Control p.o. Q2D
JAB-8263 0.2 mg/kg p.o. Q2D
Body weight (g)
Days post tumor implantation


E
Vehicle
JAB-8263
0.3 mg/kg
Group-1
Vehicle
Control
p.o. Q2D
9
30
51
53
59
60
Group-2
JAB-8263
0.3 mg/kg
p.o. Q2D
16
18
21
48
75
81


F
Vehicle
JAB-8263
0.2 mg/kg
Irrelevant
data
Vehicle
3#
8#
23#
35#
40#
43#
82#
84#
JAB-8263
0.2mg/kg
6#
9#
12#
16#
17#
39#
49#
77#
PD-1
10mg/kg
32#
36#
41#
45#
53#
66#
67#
69#
JAB-8263
0.2mg/kg+
PD-1 10mg/kg
15#
18#
22#
30#
31#
51#
57#
81#



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.332 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 4 JAB-8263 suppressed tumor growth in colorectal cancer murine xenograft models. A and E: The SW837 xenograft model (6 mice for each group) was treated with JAB-8263 0.3 mg/kg for 29 d. The average tumor volume was significantly decreased compared to the vehicle control group, $P < 0.001$; B: There was no significant difference in body weight change between groups; C and F: The MC38 syngeneic murine model (8 mice for each group) was treated with JAB-8263 0.2 mg/kg for 29 d. The average tumor volume was significantly decreased compared to the vehicle control group, $P = 0.003$; D: There was no significant difference in body weight change between groups; G and H: The tumor tissue of the MC38 syngeneic murine model (3 mice for each group) after a single dose of JAB-8263 treatment was collected for the Western blotting assay. Compared with the control group, the expression of c-MYC in the treatment group was downregulated, $^{a}P < 0.05$.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

The overexpression of the *MYC* gene plays an important role in the occurrence, development and evolution of colorectal cancer (CRC). Bromodomain and extraterminal domain (BET) inhibitors decrease the function of BET, which is the recognition of acetylated lysine residues, thereby downregulating the expression of MYC.

Research motivation

BET proteins are an important target in solid tumors, hematologic tumors and myelofibrosis. The development of BET small-molecule inhibitors has promising therapeutic value.

Research objectives

The study aimed to investigate the inhibitory effect and mechanism of a BET inhibitor on CRC cells.

Research methods

The effect of the BET inhibitor JAB-8263 on the proliferation of various CRC cell lines was studied by the CellTiter-Glo method and colony formation assay. The effect of JAB-8263 on the cell cycle and apoptosis of CRC cells was studied by propidium iodide staining and Annexin V/propidium iodide flow assay, respectively. The effect of JAB-8263 on the expression of c-MYC, p21 and p16 in CRC cells was detected by western blot. To predict the anti-tumor effect of JAB-8263 on CRC cells *in vivo* and to evaluate the safety of the compound, a CRC cell animal tumor model was developed.

Research results

JAB-8263 dose-dependently suppressed CRC cell proliferation and colony formation *in vitro*. The MYC signaling pathway was dose-dependently inhibited by JAB-8263 in human CRC cell lines. JAB-8263 dose-dependently induced cell cycle arrest and apoptosis in the MC38 cell line. The SW837 xenograft model was treated with JAB-8263 0.3 mg/kg for 29 d. The average tumor volume was significantly decreased compared to the vehicle control group, $P < 0.001$. The MC38 syngeneic murine model was treated with JAB-8263 0.2 mg/kg for 29 d. The average tumor volume was significantly decreased compared to the vehicle control group, $P = 0.003$.

Research conclusions

BET can be a potential effective drug target for suppressing CRC growth, and the BET inhibitor JAB-8263 can effectively suppress c-MYC expression and exert anti-tumor activity in CRC models.

Research perspectives

BET proteins are an important target in solid tumors, hematologic tumors and myelofibrosis. The development of BET small-molecule inhibitors has promising therapeutic value. Our study results are encouraging and will motivate further clinical evolution.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Liu XM performed experiments and data analysis and wrote the paper; Xia SY performed experiments; Long W and Li H collected data; Yang GQ and Sun W performed the data analysis; Du XH and Li SY designed and revised the manuscript; All authors contributed to the article and approved the submitted version.

Supported by the National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 81871317.

Institutional animal care and use committee statement: The experimental protocols of animals in this experiment were reviewed, approved and guided by the Jacobio Animal Care and Use Management Committee.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All the authors report having no relevant conflicts of interest for this article.

Data sharing statement: The data used to support the findings of this study are available from the corresponding author upon reasonable request.

ARRIVE guidelines statement: The authors have read the ARRIVE guidelines, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the ARRIVE guidelines.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Xiao-Hui Du 0000-0001-5268-1280.

S-Editor: Gong ZM
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Zhang XD

REFERENCES

1 **Siegel RL**, Miller KD, Fuchs HE, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2022. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2022; **72**: 7-33 [PMID: 35020204 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21708]
2 **Venook A**. Critical evaluation of current treatments in metastatic colorectal cancer. *Oncologist* 2005; **10**: 250-261 [PMID: 15821245 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.10-4-250]
3 **Vogelstein B**, Papadopoulos N, Velculescu VE, Zhou S, Diaz LA Jr, Kinzler KW. Cancer genome landscapes. *Science* 2013; **339**: 1546-1558 [PMID: 23539594 DOI: 10.1126/science.1235122]
4 **Xu Y**, Vakoc CR. Targeting Cancer Cells with BET Bromodomain Inhibitors. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med* 2017; **7** [PMID: 28213432 DOI: 10.1101/cshperspect.a026674]
5 **Lombardi PM**, Cole KE, Dowling DP, Christianson DW. Structure, mechanism, and inhibition of histone deacetylases and related metalloenzymes. *Curr Opin Struct Biol* 2011; **21**: 735-743 [PMID: 21872466 DOI: 10.1016/j.sbi.2011.08.004]
6 **Pervaiz M**, Mishra P, Günther S. Bromodomain Drug Discovery - the Past, the Present, and the Future. *Chem Rec* 2018; **18**: 1808-1817 [PMID: 30289209 DOI: 10.1002/tcr.201800074]
7 **Chen H**, Liu H, Qing G. Targeting oncogenic Myc as a strategy for cancer treatment. *Signal Transduct Target Ther* 2018; **3**: 5 [PMID: 29527331 DOI: 10.1038/s41392-018-0008-7]
8 **Lovén J**, Hoke HA, Lin CY, Lau A, Orlando DA, Vakoc CR, Bradner JE, Lee TI, Young RA. Selective inhibition of tumor oncogenes by disruption of super-enhancers. *Cell* 2013; **153**: 320-334 [PMID: 23582323 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2013.03.036]
9 **Dang CV**. MYC on the path to cancer. *Cell* 2012; **149**: 22-35 [PMID: 22464321 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2012.03.003]
10 **Dow LE**, O'Rourke KP, Simon J, Tschaharganeh DF, van Es JH, Clevers H, Lowe SW. Apc Restoration Promotes Cellular Differentiation and Reestablishes Crypt Homeostasis in Colorectal Cancer. *Cell* 2015; **161**: 1539-1552 [PMID: 26091037 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2015.05.033]
11 **Duan Y**, Guan Y, Qin W, Zhai X, Yu B, Liu H. Targeting Brd4 for cancer therapy: inhibitors and degraders. *Medchemcomm* 2018; **9**: 1779-1802 [PMID: 30542529 DOI: 10.1039/c8md00198g]
12 **Donati B**, Lorenzini E, Ciarrocchi A. BRD4 and Cancer: going beyond transcriptional regulation. *Mol Cancer* 2018; **17**: 164 [PMID: 30466442 DOI: 10.1186/s12943-018-0915-9]
13 **Otto C**, Schmidt S, Kastner C, Denk S, Kettler J, Müller N, Germer CT, Wolf E, Gallant P, Wiegering A. Targeting bromodomain-containing protein 4 (BRD4) inhibits MYC expression in colorectal cancer cells. *Neoplasia* 2019; **21**: 1110-1120 [PMID: 31734632 DOI: 10.1016/j.neo.2019.10.003]
14 **Kim T**, Jeon YJ, Cui R, Lee JH, Peng Y, Kim SH, Tili E, Alder H, Croce CM. Role of MYC-regulated long noncoding RNAs in cell cycle regulation and tumorigenesis. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2015; **107** [PMID: 25663692 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/dju505]
15 **Zhou X**, Sun T, Meng Y, Luo J, Chen J, Xia B, Zhang Z, Cheng Z, Wang X. BET inhibitors combined with chemotherapy

synergistically inhibit the growth of NSCLC cells. *Oncol Rep* 2021; **45** [PMID: 33760217 DOI: 10.3892/or.2021.8021]

16 **Alcitepe İ**, Salcin H, Karatekin İ, Kaymaz BT. HDAC inhibitor Vorinostat and BET inhibitor Plx51107 epigenetic agents' combined treatments exert a therapeutic approach upon acute myeloid leukemia cell model. *Med Oncol* 2022; **39**: 257 [PMID: 36224430 DOI: 10.1007/s12032-022-01858-x]

17 **Roussel MF**, Jonchere B, Williams J, Zindy F, Liu J, Robinson S, Farmer DM, Min J, Yang L, Stripay JL, Wang Y, Freeman BB, Yu J, Shelat AA, Rankovic Z. Combination of ribociclib with BET-bromodomain and PI3K/mTOR inhibitors for medulloblastoma treatment *in vitro* and in vivo. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2022 [PMID: 36318650 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-21-0896]

18 **Dawson MA**, Borthakur G, Huntly B, Karadimitris A, Alegre A, Chaidos A, Vogl DT, Pollyea DA, Davies FE, Morgan GJ, Glass J, Kamdar M, Mateos Manteca MV, Tovar N, Yeh P, García Delgado R, Basheer F, Marando L, Gallipoli P, Wyce A, Krishnatry AS, Barbash O, Bakirtzi E, Ferron-Brady G, Karpinich NO, McCabe MT, Foley SW, Horner T, Dhar A, Kremer BE, Dickinson M. A phase I/II open-label study of molibresib for the treatment of relapsed/refractory hematologic malignancies. *Clin Cancer Res* 2022 [PMID: 36350312 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-22-1284]

19 **Alqahtani A**, Choucair K, Ashraf M, Hammouda DM, Alloghbi A, Khan T, Senzer N, Nemunaitis J. Bromodomain and extra-terminal motif inhibitors: a review of preclinical and clinical advances in cancer therapy. *Future Sci OA* 2019; **5**: FSO372 [PMID: 30906568 DOI: 10.4155/fsoa-2018-0115]

20 **Shi C**, Yang EJ, Liu Y, Mou PK, Ren G, Shim JS. Bromodomain and extra-terminal motif (BET) inhibition is synthetic lethal with loss of SMAD4 in colorectal cancer cells *via* restoring the loss of MYC repression. *Oncogene* 2021; **40**: 937-950 [PMID: 33293694 DOI: 10.1038/s41388-020-01580-w]

21 **Cheng X**, Huang Z, Long D, Jin W. BET inhibitor bromosporine enhances 5-FU effect in colorectal cancer cells. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2020; **521**: 840-845 [PMID: 31708100 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2019.11.009]

22 **Cao N**, Yu Y, Zhu H, Chen M, Chen P, Zhuo M, Mao Y, Li L, Zhao Q, Wu M, Ye M. SETDB1 promotes the progression of colorectal cancer *via* epigenetically silencing p21 expression. *Cell Death Dis* 2020; **11**: 351 [PMID: 32393761 DOI: 10.1038/s41419-020-2561-6]

23 **el-Deiry WS**, Tokino T, Velculescu VE, Levy DB, Parsons R, Trent JM, Lin D, Mercer WE, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B. WAF1, a potential mediator of p53 tumor suppression. *Cell* 1993; **75**: 817-825 [PMID: 8242752 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(93)90500-p]

24 **Abbas T**, Dutta A. p21 in cancer: intricate networks and multiple activities. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2009; **9**: 400-414 [PMID: 19440234 DOI: 10.1038/nrc2657]

25 **Tian H**, Wittmack EK, Jorgensen TJ. p21WAF1/CIP1 antisense therapy radiosensitizes human colon cancer by converting growth arrest to apoptosis. *Cancer Res* 2000; **60**: 679-684 [PMID: 10676653]

26 **Jänicke RU**, Sohn D, Essmann F, Schulze-Osthoff K. The multiple battles fought by anti-apoptotic p21. *Cell Cycle* 2007; **6**: 407-413 [PMID: 17312393 DOI: 10.4161/cc.6.4.3855]

27 **Sherr CJ**. Cancer cell cycles. *Science* 1996; **274**: 1672-1677 [PMID: 8939849 DOI: 10.1126/science.274.5293.1672]

28 **Ye X**, Mo M, Xu S, Yang Q, Wu M, Zhang J, Chen B, Li J, Zhong Y, Huang Q, Cai C. The hypermethylation of p16 gene exon 1 and exon 2: potential biomarkers for colorectal cancer and are associated with cancer pathological staging. *BMC Cancer* 2018; **18**: 1023 [PMID: 30348132 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-018-4921-5]

29 **Bihl MP**, Foerster A, Lugli A, Zlobec I. Characterization of CDKN2A(p16) methylation and impact in colorectal cancer: systematic analysis using pyrosequencing. *J Transl Med* 2012; **10**: 173 [PMID: 22925370 DOI: 10.1186/1479-5876-10-173]

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2023 February 15; 15(2): 343-351

DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.343

ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Cohort Study

Prognostic value of claudin 18.2 expression in gastric adenocarcinoma

Erkan Kayikcioglu, Ramazan Oğuz Yüceer, Bulent Cetin, Kamuran Yüceer, Nermin Karahan

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Obando A, Nicaragua; Vieth M, Germany

Received: October 29, 2022
Peer-review started: October 29, 2022
First decision: December 30, 2022
Revised: January 2, 2023
Accepted: January 23, 2023
Article in press: January 23, 2023
Published online: February 15, 2023

Erkan Kayikcioglu, Department of Medical Oncology, Suleyman Demirel University, Isparta 32260, Turkey

Ramazan Oğuz Yüceer, Department of Pathology, Isparta City Hospital, Isparta 32360, Turkey

Bulent Cetin, Kamuran Yüceer, Department of Internal Medicine, Suleyman Demirel University, Faculty of Medicine, Isparta 32360, Turkey

Nermin Karahan, Department of Pathology, Suleyman Demirel University, Isparta 32360, Turkey

Corresponding author: Erkan Kayikcioglu, MD, Assistant Professor, Department of Medical Oncology, Suleyman Demirel University, Cunur, Suleyman Demirel Caddesi, Isparta 32260, Turkey. drkayikcioglu@yahoo.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Claudin 18.2 (CLDN18.2) is a cell surface protein expressed by gastric cancer cells. The monoclonal antibody zolbetuximab binds CLDN18.2-positive cancer cells and causes cancer cell death. A few studies researched the prognostic effect of CLDN18.2 expression in metastatic gastric adenocarcinoma.

AIM

To identify the prognostic value of CLDN18.2 expression in patients with metastatic gastric adenocarcinoma.

METHODS

This study was conducted with 65 patients over the age of 18 who were diagnosed with metastatic gastric adenocarcinoma. We investigated the effect of CLDN18.2 expression on clinicopathological characteristics (age, sex, histological grade, Lauren classification, family history, metastatic site, HER2 expression) and prognosis for patients with metastatic gastric adenocarcinoma.

RESULTS

CLDN18.2 expression was positive in 73.8% (48) of the patients. During the median 17.7-mo follow-up period, 89.2% (58) of the patients died. Median progression-free survival and overall survival (OS) were 6 mo (95% confidence interval: 1.6-10.4) and 12 mo (95% confidence interval: 7.5-16.5). There was no

statistically significant correlation between CLDN18.2 expression and clinicopathological characteristics of the patients. In univariate and multivariate Cox regression analysis, there was no correlation between clinicopathological characteristics of patients and progression-free survival or OS.

CONCLUSION

CLDN18.2 expression was quite high in patients with gastric adenocarcinoma, identifying the proportion of the patients in whom zolbetuximab would be efficacious. There is no statistically significant correlation with clinicopathological characteristics and OS. CLDN18.2 is not a prognostic marker in patients with gastric adenocarcinoma, although it is predictive.

Key Words: Gastric adenocarcinoma; Claudin 18.2; Overall survival; Clinicopathological characteristics

©The Author(s) 2023. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: Zolbetuximab is a new antibody drug targeting the cell surface protein claudin 18.2 (CLDN18.2) expressed by gastric cancer cells. CLDN18.2 expression, identifying the patient population who are susceptible to zolbetuximab, is discordant in different studies. The present study aimed to research the expression ratio of CLDN18.2 and its prognostic value for overall survival in patients with gastric adenocarcinoma in a single center located in Turkey.

Citation: Kayikcioglu E, Yüceer RO, Cetin B, Yüceer K, Karahan N. Prognostic value of claudin 18.2 expression in gastric adenocarcinoma. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2023; 15(2): 343-351
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v15/i2/343.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.343

INTRODUCTION

Stomach cancer represents the third most common cause of cancer-related mortality globally and caused 768793 deaths in 2020 (7.7% of all cancer deaths)[1]. Most people with stomach cancer in its early stages show no symptoms. The majority of patients (60%) receive diagnosis at the advanced stage following the emergence of symptoms[2]. In light of phase 2 and 3 studies from Europe, perioperative chemotherapy (ChT) has become standard for patients with stage 2 and 3 gastric cancer, but the 5-year overall survival (OS) is still approximately 36%[3,4]. The prognosis for locally advanced, unresectable, or metastatic gastric cancer is poor; in clinical trials evaluating the effectiveness of ChT, the median survival time was typically less than 1 year[5].

Claudin (CLDN) 18, a member of the cell surface protein claudin family, has two isoforms: CLDN18.1 expressed in lung tissue and CLDN18.2 expressed specifically in gastric tissue. CLDN18.2 is also expressed by gastric cancer cells, showing that it is not lost during malignant transformation[6]. The monoclonal antibody zolbetuximab binds CLDN18.2-positive cancer cells and causes cancer cell death by antibody-dependent cellular toxicity and complement-dependent cytotoxicity. In MONO phase 2a study of zolbetuximab as a single agent, CLDN18.2-positive patients with metastatic gastric and gastroesophageal junction (G/GEJ) adenocarcinoma received a minimum of one line of ChT and showed a 23% response rate[7]. The phase 2 FAST study of zolbetuximab plus ChT (epirubicin, oxaliplatin, capecitabine) *vs* ChT (epirubicin, oxaliplatin, capecitabine) showed superior OS and progression-free survival (PFS), defining CLDN18.2 as a new target for cancer therapy[8].

We investigated the effect of CLDN18.2 expression on clinicopathological characteristics and prognosis of patients with metastatic gastric adenocarcinoma undergoing ChT.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients admitted to the medical oncology clinic of Suleyman Demirel University hospital between January 2013 and December 2021 with metastatic gastric adenocarcinoma were enrolled in this study. All cases were histopathologically confirmed according to the 5th edition of the World Health Organization classification of digestive system tumors[9]. The Protocol for the Examination of Specimens from Patients with Cancers of the Stomach 2022 of the College of American Pathologists was used to identify histopathologic subtype, tumor location, tumor grade, and HER2 for gastric adenocarcinoma[10]. From the hospital database, the following clinical data were obtained: age, sex, histological

type and grade, family history of gastric cancer, metastatic site, HER2 expression, PFS, and OS. The ethics committee of Suleyman Demirel University approved the study with date and number 01/04/2022-102. Patients who accepted participation in the study, who were older than 18-years-old, followed up in the medical oncology clinic of Suleyman Demirel University hospital, and whose paraffin blocks for diagnosis of gastric adenocarcinoma could be reached were enrolled in the study.

Immunohistochemistry

Hematoxylin and eosin sections representing the tumor of patients diagnosed with gastric adenocarcinoma were re-examined. The best paraffin block was selected for immunohistochemistry staining. Sections with 4-micron thickness were taken from paraffin blocks and transferred onto an adhesive coated slide system. The following method was used for immunohistochemical staining with streptavidin-biotin. Sections were incubated at 56 °C for 12 h for deparaffinization. Three percent hydrogen peroxide was used to block endogenous peroxidase. Antigen retrieval was performed in a microwave oven for 20 min using 0.01 mol/L Tris/EDTA buffer pH 9.0. Sections were coated with primary antibodies including CLDN18.2 (rabbit monoclonal antibody, Clone EPR19202, at 1:500 dilution, Abcam, United Kingdom) and incubated at room temperature for 2 h. Sections were incubated for another 20 min at room temperature after the addition of binding (secondary) antibody (Goat Anti-Rabbit IgG H&L (HRP) kit, Abcam, United Kingdom). The streptavidin-biotin complex was added. 3,3′-Diaminobenzidine was used as chromogen for visualization. CLDN18.2 non-tumor gastric tissues were used as positive controls for each staining session.

Evaluation of immunohistochemical staining

Pathology slides were reviewed by two expert pathologists (ROY and NK) who did not know patient treatments and outcomes. Tumor cells were scored positive for CLDN18.2 if they showed definite membranous staining and negative if tumor nuclei and cell membrane did not have immunoreactivity. Staining intensity was scored between 0 and 3 (absent: 0, weak: 1, moderate: 2, strong: 3).

Statistical analysis

Data analysis was performed using the Statistical Package for the Social Sciences 26.0 (SPSS Inc., Chicago, IL, United States). Age and clinical characteristics were compared between patients with expression of CLDN18.2 using the Mann-Whitney *U*-test for individual samples. In patient tumor samples with expression of CLDN18.2, sex, localization, family history, Lauren classification, grade, sites of metastasis, liver and lung metastases, and history of adjuvant and neoadjuvant ChT were compared using Pearson's χ^2 test. The correlation between CLDN18.2 and HER2 was determined with the Spearman correlation test. OS and PFS were estimated using the Kaplan-Meier method, and a log-rank test was used to compare study groups in terms of survival. Multivariate analyses were performed using Cox regression analysis. A P value of < 0.05 was considered statistically significant.

RESULTS

Sixty-nine patients were screened, and sixty-five were included in the study. The mean age was 64.6 years ± 12.9 years. Among the patients, 49 (75.4%) were male, and 16 (24.6%) were female. Table 1 shows the demographic and clinicopathologic characteristics of the patients according to CLDN18.2 expression. Immunohistochemical staining was used to screen 65 metastatic gastric adenocarcinoma cases for the pathological significance of CLDN18.2 expression (Figure 1). CLDN18.2 expression was positive in 73.8% (48) of the patients.

During the median 17.7-mo follow-up period, 89.2% (58) of the patients died. Median PFS and OS were 6 mo (95% confidence interval: 1.6-10.4) and 12 mo (95% confidence interval: 7.5-16.5). There was no statistically significant correlation between CLDN18.2 expression and clinicopathological characteristics of the patients (Figure 2). In univariate and multivariate Cox regression analysis for PFS, there was no correlation between clinicopathological characteristics of patients and PFS (Table 2). In univariate and multivariate Cox regression analysis for OS, older age was an independent risk factor for poor OS (Table 3).

DISCUSSION

Gastric cancer is common and fatal. With targeted agents and immunotherapy, the median OS of patients with metastatic gastric cancer has reached 13.8-14.4 mo[11,12]. Novel therapies are critical for extending the survival of gastric adenocarcinoma patients. CLDN18.2 is a tight junction molecule found on the surface of gastric mucosa epithelium and gastric cancer cells[6]. In metastatic gastric cancer patients, the monoclonal antibody zolbetuximab targeting CLDN18.2 contributes to OS alone and when combined with ChT. It had tolerable side effects such as nausea and vomiting[7,8]. Worldwide clinical

Table 1 Clinicopathological characteristics of patients with gastric adenocarcinoma based on claudin 18.2 expression

Parameter	Number of cases		CLDN18.2 score								*P* value
			0		1		2		3		
	n	%	*n*	%	*n*	%	*n*	%	*n*	%	
Age in yr											
< 65	30	46.2	4	13.3	10	33.3	9	30.0	7	23.3	0.091
≥ 65	35	53.8	13	37.1	10	28.6	5	14.3	7	20.0	
Sex											
Male	49	75.4	14	28.6	15	30.6	11	22.4	9	18.4	0.314
Female	16	24.6	3	18.8	5	31.3	3	18.8	5	31.3	
Lauren classification											
Intestinal	41	63.1	9	22.0	12	29.3	10	24.4	10	24.4	0.221
Diffuse	24	39.9	8	33.3	8	33.3	4	16.7	4	16.7	
Tumor grade											
G1	30	46.2	9	30.0	8	26.7	7	23.3	6	20.0	0.889
G2	8	12.3	1	12.5	3	37.5	2	25.0	2	25.0	
G3	27	41.5	7	25.9	9	33.3	5	18.5	6	22.2	
Localization											
Cardia	18	27.7	3	16.7	9	50.0	3	16.0	3	16.7	0.307
Corpus	10	18.5	4	33.3	5	41.7	1	8.3	2	16.7	
Antrum	12	15.4	3	30.0	3	30.0	2	20.0	2	20.0	
Pylorus	2	2.1	0	0.0	0	0.0	2	100.0	0	0.0	
Antropyloric	23	35.4	7	30.4	3	13.0	6	26.1	7	30.4	
Her2Neu											
Negative	54	83.1	13	24.1	15	27.8	13	24.1	13	24.1	0.116
Positive	11	16.9	4	36.4	5	45.5	1	9.1	1	9.1	
Family history											
No	40	61.5	13	32.5	9	22.5	10	25.0	8	20.0	0.751
Yes	14	21.5	2	14.3	6	42.9	2	14.3	4	28.6	
Unknown	11	16.9	2	18.2	5	45.5	2	18.2	2	18.2	
Liver metastasis											
No	33	50.8	8	25.0	10	31.3	6	18.8	8	25.00	0.703
Yes	32	49.2	9	27.3	10	30.3	8	24.2	6	18.2	
Lung metastasis											
No	48	73.2	9	52.9	3	17.6	2	11.8	3	17.6	0.053
Yes	17	26.8	8	16.7	17	35.4	12	25.0	11	22.9	
Metastasis sites											
Liver	16	24.6	2	12.5	7	43.8	2	12.5	5	31.3	0.050
Lung	4	6.2	2	50.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	2	50.0	
Peritoneum	11	16.9	0	0.0	5	45.5	3	27.3	3	27.3	
LAP	14	21.5	4	28.6	2	14.3	6	42.90	2	14.30	
Brain	2	3.1	2	100.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	0	0.0	
Liver + lung	17	26.2	7	41.2	6	35.0	2	11.8	2	11.8	

Ovary	1	1.5	0	0.0	0	0.0	1	100.0	0	0.0	
Adjuvant chemotherapy											
No	29	44.6	8	27.6	9	31.0	6	20.7	6	20.7	0.793
Yes	36	55.4	9	25.0	11	30.6	8	22.2	8	22.2	
Neoadjuvant chemotherapy											
No	61	91.8	14	23.0	20	32.8	13	21.3	14	23.0	0.097
Yes	4	8.2	3	75.0	0	0.0	1	25.0	0	0.0	
Exitus											
No	7	10.8	0	0.0	3	42.9	3	42.9	1	14.3	0.401
Yes	58	89.2	17	29.3	17	29.3	11	19.0	13	22.4	

CLDN18.2: Claudin 18.2; LAP: Lymphadenopathy.

Table 2 Univariate and multivariate analysis of baseline characteristics for progression-free survival

Parameter	Progression-free survival univariate analysis				Progression-free survival multivariate analysis		
	HR	95%CI	*P*		HR	95%CI	*P*
Age in yr	1.36	0.80-2.30	0.26	Age in yr	1.29	0.71-2.33	0.41
Sex	1.40	0.76-2.56	0.28	Sex	1.49	0.73-3.05	0.28
Lauren classification	0.89	0.52-1.53	0.67	Lauren classification	0.93	0.39-2.22	0.87
Tumor grade	0.85	0.49-1.47	0.56	Tumor grade	0.91	0.58-1.43	0.69
Family history	0.87	0.45-1.77	0.75	Family history	0.51	0.20-1.28	0.15
Liver metastasis	1.09	0.64-1.85	0.75	Liver metastasis	1.07	0.60-1.91	0.82
Lung metastasis	0.93	0.52-1.66	0.79	Lung metastasis	0.98	0.49-1.94	0.95
Localization	0.94	0.42-2.11	0.88	Localization	1.01	0.81-1.24	0.98
Metastasis sites	0.83	0.27-2.60	0.75	Metastasis sites	0.99	0.84-1.18	0.94
Her2Neu	0.81	0.40-1.64	0.56	Her2Neu	0.85	0.37-1.93	0.69
CLDN18.2	1.22	0.54-2.32	0.77	CLDN18.2	1.30	0.54-3.19	0.56

CI: Confidence interval; CLDN18.2: Claudin 18.2; HR: Hazard ratio.

trials of zolbetuximab in the first-line setting, in combination with ChT and immunotherapy, are ongoing for G/GEJ adenocarcinoma (NCT03505320, NCT03504397, and NCT03653507).

Histopathological subtype was diffuse in 36.9% (24) of patients and intestinal in 63.1% (41), and there was no correlation with CLDN18.2 expression. In a study including 481 patients with gastric cancer, there was no correlation between histopathological subtype per Lauren classification and CLDN18.2 expression, as in our study[13]. However, in a study including 263 Japanese patients with gastric adenocarcinoma, diffuse histopathological subtype was associated with strong CLDN18.2 expression [14]. In another study of 85 patients with gastric adenocarcinoma, intestinal subtype was associated with strong CLDN18.2 expression[15]. There was no correlation between grades of tumors and CLDN18.2 expression in a study including 485 patients with esophageal adenocarcinoma[16]; however, grade 3 tumors were associated with strong CLDN18.2 expression in two studies[13,14].

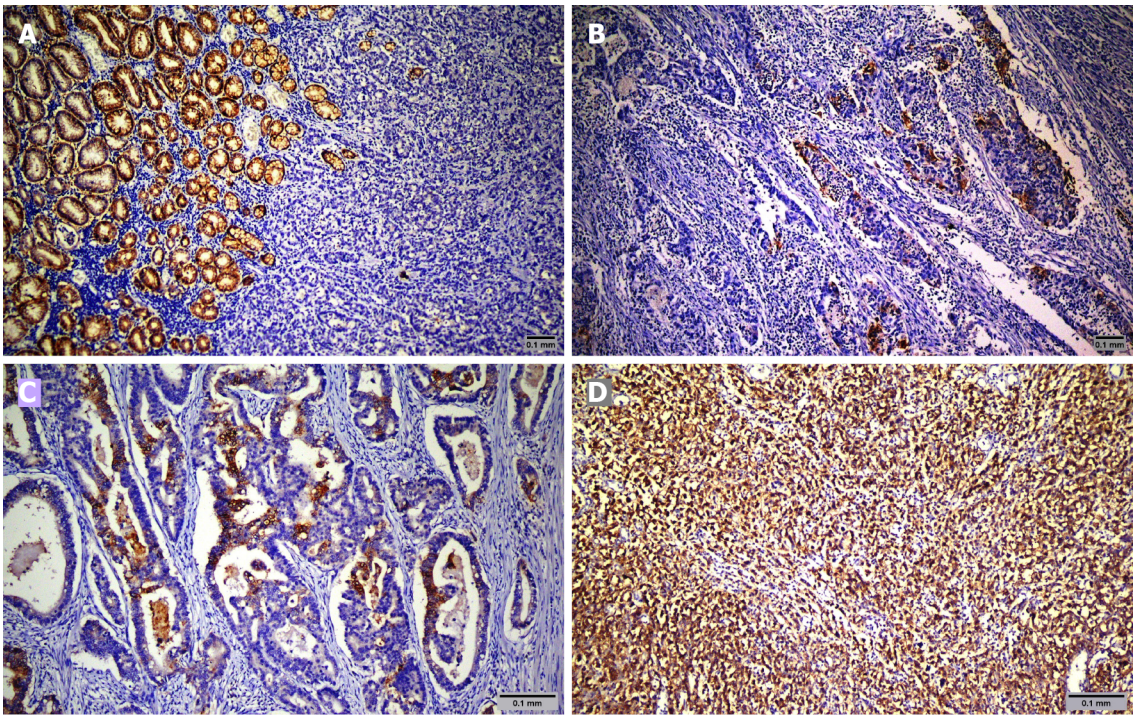
HER2 expression was positive in 16.9% (11) of patients, and there was no correlation between HER2 and CLDN18.2 expression. In three different studies, there was no correlation between HER2 and CLDN18.2 expression[13,15,17], while there was an inverse correlation in a study including patients with esophageal adenocarcinoma[16].

In the present study, CLDN18.2 expression was detected in 73.8% (48) of patients, with moderate to strong expression (≥ 2+) in 43.1% (n = 28). CLDN18.2 expression was detected in 87%, with moderate and strong expression in 51.5%, of Japanese patients in a study conducted by Rohde *et al*[14], and moderate to strong expression was present in 49% of patients with G/GEJ adenocarcinoma in the FAST study conducted by Sahin *et al*[6]. There was no correlation between clinicopathological characteristics

Table 3 Univariate and multivariate analysis of baseline characteristics for overall survival

Paragraph	Overall survival univariate analysis			Overall survival multivariate analysis			
	HR	95%CI	*P*		HR	95%CI	*P*
Age in yr	2.46	1.39-4.33	0.01	Age in yr	3.17	1.45-6.92	0.01
Sex	1.10	0.61-1.99	0.75	Sex	0.65	0.26-1.59	0.34
Lauren classification	1.28	0.66-1.94	0.66	Lauren classification	1.23	0.24-6.16	0.81
Tumor grade	0.41	0.15-1.07	0.07	Tumor grade	0.29	0.08-1.06	0.06
Family history	0.83	0.36-1.97	0.67	Family history	2.14	0.68-6.71	0.19
Liver metastasis	0.94	0.56-1.59	0.82	Liver metastasis	0.74	0.33-1.65	0.46
Lung metastasis	0.71	0.39-1.27	0.25	Lung metastasis	0.58	0.22-1.52	0.27
Localization	0.91	0.46-1.79	0.78	Localization	2.14	0.68-6.71	0.19
Metastasis sites	1.36	0.30-6.09	0.69	Metastasis sites	1.88	0.52-6.82	0.34
Her2Neu	1.11	0.56-2.22	0.77	Her2Neu	0.90	0.35-2.34	0.83
CLDN18.2	1.68	0.81-3.50	0.12	CLDN18.2	2.78	0.85-9.07	0.09

CI: Confidence interval; CLDN18.2: Claudin 18.2; HR: Hazard ratio.

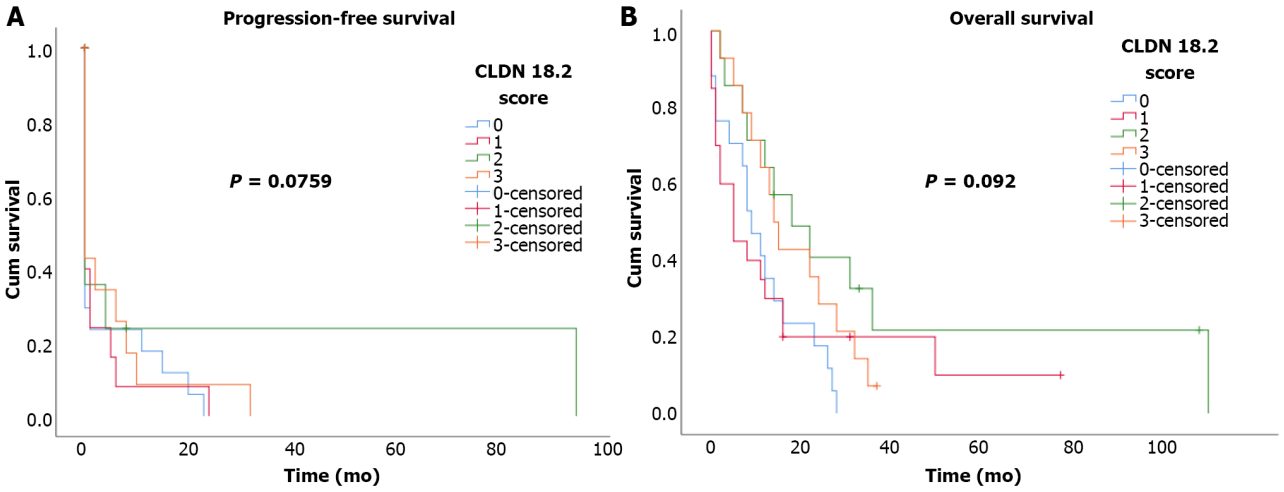


DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.343 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 1 Representative images of claudin 18.2 immunohistochemical staining in gastric adenocarcinoma. A: Score 0; B: Score 1+; C: Score 2+; D: Score 3+.

of the patients and OS in the present study, consistent with other studies[13,15,16].

Inconsistent with the present study, Türeci *et al*[7] and Sahin *et al*[8] detected CLDN18.2 expression in only 17.1% and 14.1% of patients, respectively. This could be due to the different patient cohorts in the studies as well as the different kits used to detect CLDN18.2 expression. Few studies have been published regarding the expression of CLDN18.2 in gastric adenocarcinoma. Conflicting results exist about the CLDN18.2 expression ratios and the relationship between these parameters and the clinicopathological characteristics of patients with gastric adenocarcinoma; however, the studies are consistent in showing there is no correlation between CLDN18.2 expression and OS, as in the present study. The proportion of patients with gastric adenocarcinoma in whom zolbetuximab was efficacious was determined by the MONO and FAST trials. Our findings are consistent with these studies.



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.343 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 2 Kaplan-Meier curves for according to claudin 18.2 expression scores. A: Progression-free survival; B: Overall survival according to claudin 18.2 expression (CLDN 18.2) scores.

The limitations of this study included the relatively small number of patients analyzed and the retrospective character. Additional studies with a larger number of patients are needed to define the effect of CLDN18.2 expression on OS.

CONCLUSION

CLDN18.2 expression is quite high in patients with gastric adenocarcinoma, identifying the proportion of the patients in whom zolbetuximab would be efficacious. There is no statistically significant correlation with clinicopathological characteristics and OS. CLDN18.2 is not a prognostic marker in patients with gastric adenocarcinoma.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Claudin 18.2 (CLDN18.2) is a cell surface protein expressed by gastric cancer cells and a new target for the monoclonal antibody named zolbetuximab.

Research motivation

It is unknown whether CLDN18.2 expression on gastric cancer cells is prognostic.

Research objectives

To identify the prognostic value of CLDN18.2 expression in patients with metastatic gastric adenocarcinoma.

Research methods

We investigated the effect of CLDN18.2 expression on clinicopathological characteristics (age, sex, histological grade, Lauren classification, family history, metastatic site, and HER2 expression) and prognosis for patients with metastatic gastric adenocarcinoma.

Research results

There was no statistically significant correlation between CLDN18.2 expression and clinicopathological characteristics of the patients. In univariate and multivariate Cox regression analysis, there was no correlation between clinicopathological characteristics of patients and progression-free survival or overall survival. The expression of CLDN18.2 was predictive for zolbetuximab in metastatic gastric adenocarcinoma, but it is not prognostic.

Research conclusions

CLDN18.2 expression is high in metastatic gastric adenocarcinoma and predictive for zolbetuximab, but it is not prognostic.

Research perspectives

Detection of new prognostic and predictive markers will make gastric cancer more manageable.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Kayikcioglu E contributed to conceptualization; Yüceer RO, Kayikcioglu E, Karahan N, and Cetin B contributed to formal analysis and investigation; Kayikcioglu E and Cetin B contributed to supervision; Kayikcioglu E, Yüceer RO, and Yüceer K contributed to resources; Yüceer K contributed to visualization; Kayikcioglu E, Yüceer RO, Yüceer K, Karahan N, and Cetin B contributed to writing and original draft preparation; Kayikcioglu E, Karahan N, and Cetin B contributed to reviewing and editing.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Ethics Committee of Suleyman Demirel University (Approval No. 01/04/2022-102).

Informed consent statement: The informed consent was obtained from the patients.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare no conflicts of interest.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

STROBE statement: The authors have read the STROBE Statement—checklist of items, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the STROBE Statement—checklist of items.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: Turkey

ORCID number: Erkan Kayikcioglu 0000-0002-7401-5446; Ramazan Oğuz Yüceer 0000-0002-9418-8862; Bulent Cetin 0000-0001-8628-0864; Kamuran Yüceer 0000-0002-7721-5646; Nermin Karahan 0000-0003-0883-4037.

S-Editor: Chen YL
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Chen YL

REFERENCES

1 **Sung H**, Ferlay J, Siegel RL, Laversanne M, Soerjomataram I, Jemal A, Bray F. Global Cancer Statistics 2020: GLOBOCAN Estimates of Incidence and Mortality Worldwide for 36 Cancers in 185 Countries. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2021; **71**: 209-249 [PMID: 33538338 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21660]

2 **Allum W**, Lordick F, Alsina M, Andritsch E, Ba-Ssalamah A, Beishon M, Braga M, Caballero C, Carneiro F, Cassinello F, Dekker JW, Delgado-Bolton R, Haustermans K, Henning G, Hutter B, Lövey J, Netíková IŠ, Obermannová R, Oberst S, Rostoft S, Saarto T, Seufferlein T, Sheth S, Wynter-Blyth V, Costa A, Naredi P. ECCO essential requirements for quality cancer care: Oesophageal and gastric cancer. *Crit Rev Oncol Hematol* 2018; **122**: 179-193 [PMID: 29458786 DOI: 10.1016/j.critrevonc.2017.12.019]

3 **Cunningham D**, Allum WH, Stenning SP, Thompson JN, Van de Velde CJ, Nicolson M, Scarffe JH, Lofts FJ, Falk SJ, Iveson TJ, Smith DB, Langley RE, Verma M, Weeden S, Chua YJ, MAGIC Trial Participants. Perioperative chemotherapy versus surgery alone for resectable gastroesophageal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2006; **355**: 11-20 [PMID: 16822992 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa055531]

4 **Ychou M**, Boige V, Pignon JP, Conroy T, Bouché O, Lebreton G, Ducourtieux M, Bedenne L, Fabre JM, Saint-Aubert B, Genève J, Lasser P, Rougier P. Perioperative chemotherapy compared with surgery alone for resectable gastroesophageal adenocarcinoma: an FNCLCC and FFCD multicenter phase III trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 1715-1721 [PMID: 21444866 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2010.33.0597]

5 **Smyth EC**, Nilsson M, Grabsch HI, van Grieken NC, Lordick F. Gastric cancer. *Lancet* 2020; **396**: 635-648 [PMID: 32861308 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)31288-5]

6 **Sahin U**, Koslowski M, Dhaene K, Usener D, Brandenburg G, Seitz G, Huber C, Türeci O. Claudin-18 splice variant 2 is a pan-cancer target suitable for therapeutic antibody development. *Clin Cancer Res* 2008; **14**: 7624-7634 [PMID: 19047087

DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-08-1547]

7 **Türeci O**, Sahin U, Schulze-Bergkamen H, Zvirbule Z, Lordick F, Koeberle D, Thuss-Patience P, Ettrich T, Arnold D, Bassermann F, Al-Batran SE, Wiechen K, Dhaene K, Maurus D, Gold M, Huber C, Krivoshik A, Arozullah A, Park JW, Schuler M. A multicentre, phase IIa study of zolbetuximab as a single agent in patients with recurrent or refractory advanced adenocarcinoma of the stomach or lower oesophagus: the MONO study. *Ann Oncol* 2019; **30**: 1487-1495 [PMID: 31240302 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdz199]

8 **Sahin U**, Türeci Ö, Manikhas G, Lordick F, Rusyn A, Vynnychenko I, Dudov A, Bazin I, Bondarenko I, Melichar B, Dhaene K, Wiechen K, Huber C, Maurus D, Arozullah A, Park JW, Schuler M, Al-Batran SE. FAST: a randomised phase II study of zolbetuximab (IMAB362) plus EOX versus EOX alone for first-line treatment of advanced CLDN18.2-positive gastric and gastro-oesophageal adenocarcinoma. *Ann Oncol* 2021; **32**: 609-619 [PMID: 33610734 DOI: 10.1016/j.annonc.2021.02.005]

9 **Nagtegaal ID**, Odze RD, Klimstra D, Paradis V, Rugge M, Schirmacher P, Washington KM, Carneiro F, Cree IA; WHO Classification of Tumours Editorial Board. The 2019 WHO classification of tumours of the digestive system. *Histopathology* 2020; **76**: 182-188 [PMID: 31433515 DOI: 10.1111/his.13975]

10 **Shi C**, Badgwell BD, Grabsch HI, Gibson MK, Hong SM, Kumarasinghe P, Lam AK, Lauwers G, O'Donovan M, van der Post RS, Tang L, Ushiku T, Vieth M, Selinger CI, Webster F, Nagtegaal ID. Data Set for Reporting Carcinoma of the Stomach in Gastrectomy. *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 2022; **146**: 1072-1083 [PMID: 34919649 DOI: 10.5858/arpa.2021-0225-OA]

11 **Bang YJ**, Van Cutsem E, Feyereislova A, Chung HC, Shen L, Sawaki A, Lordick F, Ohtsu A, Omuro Y, Satoh T, Aprile G, Kulikov E, Hill J, Lehle M, Rüschoff J, Kang YK; ToGA Trial Investigators. Trastuzumab in combination with chemotherapy versus chemotherapy alone for treatment of HER2-positive advanced gastric or gastro-oesophageal junction cancer (ToGA): a phase 3, open-label, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2010; **376**: 687-697 [PMID: 20728210 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(10)61121-X]

12 **Janjigian YY**, Shitara K, Moehler M, Garrido M, Salman P, Shen L, Wyrwicz L, Yamaguchi K, Skoczylas T, Campos Bragagnoli A, Liu T, Schenker M, Yanez P, Tehfe M, Kowalyszyn R, Karamouzis MV, Bruges R, Zander T, Pazo-Cid R, Hitre E, Feeney K, Cleary JM, Poulart V, Cullen D, Lei M, Xiao H, Kondo K, Li M, Ajani JA. First-line nivolumab plus chemotherapy versus chemotherapy alone for advanced gastric, gastro-oesophageal junction, and oesophageal adenocarcinoma (CheckMate 649): a randomised, open-label, phase 3 trial. *Lancet* 2021; **398**: 27-40 [PMID: 34102137 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(21)00797-2]

13 **Dottermusch M**, Krüger S, Behrens HM, Halske C, Röcken C. Expression of the potential therapeutic target claudin-18.2 is frequently decreased in gastric cancer: results from a large Caucasian cohort study. *Virchows Arch* 2019; **475**: 563-571 [PMID: 31332522 DOI: 10.1007/s00428-019-02624-7]

14 **Rohde C**, Yamaguchi R, Mukhina S, Sahin U, Itoh K, Türeci Ö. Comparison of Claudin 18.2 expression in primary tumors and lymph node metastases in Japanese patients with gastric adenocarcinoma. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 2019; **49**: 870-876 [PMID: 31087075 DOI: 10.1093/jjco/hyz068]

15 **Hong JY**, An JY, Lee J, Park SH, Park JO, Park YS, Lim HY, Kim KM, Kang WK, Kim ST. Claudin 18.2 expression in various tumor types and its role as a potential target in advanced gastric cancer. *Transl Cancer Res* 2020; **9**: 3367-3374 [PMID: 35117702 DOI: 10.21037/tcr-19-1876]

16 **Moentenich V**, Gebauer F, Comut E, Tuchscherer A, Bruns C, Schroeder W, Buettner R, Alakus H, Loeser H, Zander T, Quaas A. Claudin 18.2 expression in esophageal adenocarcinoma and its potential impact on future treatment strategies. *Oncol Lett* 2020; **19**: 3665-3670 [PMID: 32391091 DOI: 10.3892/ol.2020.11520]

17 **Arnold A**, Daum S, von Winterfeld M, Berg E, Hummel M, Rau B, Stein U, Treese C. Prognostic impact of Claudin 18.2 in gastric and esophageal adenocarcinomas. *Clin Transl Oncol* 2020; **22**: 2357-2363 [PMID: 32488802 DOI: 10.1007/s12094-020-02380-0]

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2023 February 15; 15(2): 352-367

DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.352

ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

META-ANALYSIS

Immune-related adverse events associated with immune checkpoint inhibitors for advanced gastric and gastroesophageal junction cancer: A meta-analysis

Wen-Guang Pei, Wen-Zheng Chen, Yu-Kang Wu, Sheng-Xing Tan, Zhi-Gang Jie

Specialty type: Oncology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Khayyat YM, Saudi Arabia; Mehta V, India; Zha B, China

Received: October 10, 2022
Peer-review started: October 10, 2022
First decision: October 20, 2022
Revised: October 23, 2022
Accepted: November 28, 2022
Article in press: November 28, 2022
Published online: February 15, 2023

Wen-Guang Pei, Wen-Zheng Chen, Yu-Kang Wu, Sheng-Xing Tan, Zhi-Gang Jie, Department of Gastrointestinal Surgery, First Affiliated Hospital of Nanchang University, Nanchang 330006, Jiangxi Province, China

Corresponding author: Zhi-Gang Jie, MMed, Chief Doctor, Professor, Department of Gastrointestinal Surgery, First Affiliated Hospital of Nanchang University, No. 17 Yongwai Main Street, Donghu District, Nanchang 330006, Jiangxi Province, China. jiezg123@126.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICIs) have shown promising efficacy in treatment and clinical management of advanced gastric and gastroesophageal junction cancer. However, the inhibitors also cause immune-related adverse events (irAEs). The current systematic review and meta-analysis study aimed to investigate the incidence and nature of irAEs caused by ICIs.

AIM

To investigate the incidence and nature of irAEs in advanced gastric and gastroesophageal junction cancer.

METHODS

This systematic review was registered with PROSPERO (Reg. number: CRD42020152291). Data included in this study were collected from patients diagnosed with advanced gastric cancer or gastroesophageal junction cancer and treated with ICIs. A systematic literature search was conducted using the PubMed, EMBASE, and Cochrane Library databases. Meta-analysis was carried out using the single sample rate method. Synthesis and analysis of the data was conducted using Stata/SE and Review Manager Software.

RESULTS

The patients enrolled in the present study included 14 patients from 14 case reports, 326 patients from 6 case series, and 1249 patients from 8 clinical trials. It was found that the overall incidence of irAEs was 16% [95% confidence interval (CI): 11-20] for all grades and 3% (95%CI: 2-4) for the severe grade. It was evident that the incidence of irAEs varied with the type of inhibitor and organs. A comparative study of the anti-programmed cell death receptor-1 (PD-1) and anti-programmed death receptor-ligand 1 (PD-L1) treatments showed that the anti-

PD-1 group had a higher overall incidence of irAEs (20%) as compared with that of the anti-PD-L1 group (13%). Results of this study showed that the endocrine system experienced the highest incidence of organ-specific irAEs (7.4%), including hypothyroidism, hyperthyroidism, thyroiditis, diabetes, and adrenal insufficiency, followed by gastroenterology (2.2%), pulmonology (1.8%), neurology (1.4%), dermatology (1.4%), hematology (0.8%), and hepatology (0.7%). In clinical trials, it was found that the incidence of death related to irAEs was 1% (95%CI: 0-2.0), whereby colitis and interstitial lung diseases were the leading causes of death.

CONCLUSION

It was evident that the incidence and nature of irAEs are both organ- and inhibitor-specific. The anti-PD-1 group had the highest incidence of all irAEs grades including the severe grades of irAEs. Early identification and management of irAEs allows clinical oncologists to effectively consider the pros and cons and hence enables them to strike a balance.

Key Words: Immune checkpoint inhibitors; Advanced gastric and gastroesophageal junction cancer; Systematic review; Meta-analysis.

©The Author(s) 2023. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: This systematic review shows that there is an increasing number of immune-related adverse events (irAEs) associated with immune checkpoint inhibitors that are being reported in patients with gastric cancer or gastroesophageal junction cancer. This is particularly severe organ-specific irAEs and death because of irAEs, which poses significant challenges for clinical oncologists. Therefore, to help clinicians effectively identify and manage irAEs as well as strike a balance, a comprehensive understanding, systematic prediction, and appropriate management of the adverse events are critical.

Citation: Pei WG, Chen WZ, Wu YK, Tan SX, Jie ZG. Immune-related adverse events associated with immune checkpoint inhibitors for advanced gastric and gastroesophageal junction cancer: A meta-analysis. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2023; 15(2): 352-367

URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v15/i2/352.htm

DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.352

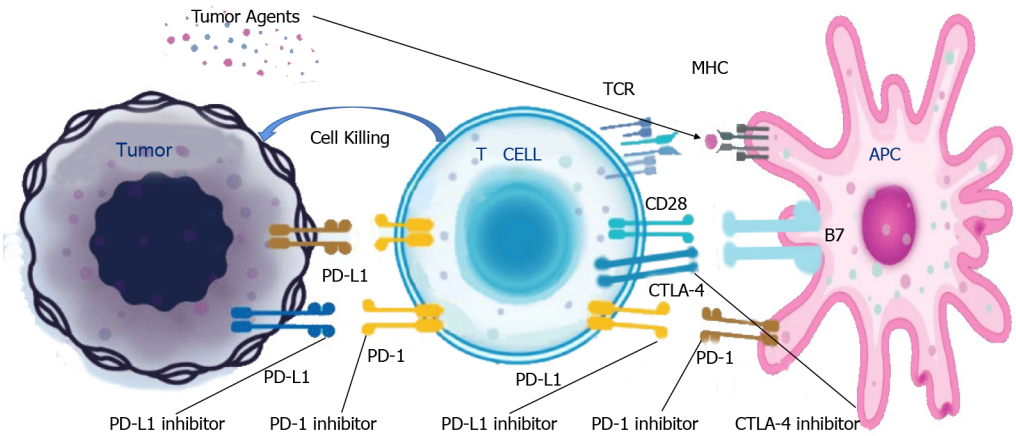
INTRODUCTION

Gastric cancer (GC) is one of the most prevalent malignancies of the digestive tract in the world whereby the global incidence and mortality of GC ranks fifth and fourth of the malignancies, respectively[1]. Furthermore, it has been found that the global incidence and mortality rates of GC are 15.59 *per* 100000 and 11.88 *per* 100000, respectively, as well as 30.64 *per* 100000 and 21.72 *per* 100000, respectively in China[2]. Although the most effective treatment for GC or gastroesophageal junction cancer (GEJC) is a surgical operation, the majority of patients cannot undergo radical surgery because of the advanced stage of the disease at the time of diagnosis. Instead, the patients receive chemotherapy, targeted therapy, and other medical treatment. Recently, immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICIs) have also made significant progress in the treatment and management of GC/GEJC.

The first ICI, ipilimumab [Yervoy, anti-cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen-4 (CTLA-4)], was approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in 2011 for the treatment of metastatic melanoma[3]. Following the approval of the first programmed cell death receptor-1 (PD-1)/programmed death receptor-ligand 1 (PD-L1) inhibitor (pembrolizumab) in 2014, several ICIs have later been utilized in clinical practice[4-5]. In 2021, the FDA approved two anti-PD-1 drugs (pembrolizumab and nivolumab) for treatment of different forms of GC. Generally, ICIs are divided into three categories: inhibitors of PD-1, PD-L1, and CTLA-4. Activation of PD-1 or PD-L1 signaling acts as the principal mechanism by which tumors evade antigen-specific T-cell immunologic responses. However, antibody blockage of PD-1 or PD-L1 reverses this process and enhances anti-tumor immune activity[6].

CTLA-4 possesses structural homology with CD28 and binds to the B7 molecules on APC with a higher affinity than the CD28. This results in a competitive inhibition of costimulatory CD28 signaling and damage to the T cell signaling[7-8]. ICIs exert anti-tumor effects by damaging co-inhibitory T cell signaling (Figure 1, source: Beida Pharmaceutical official website).

ICIs offer patients with GC or GEJC a glimmer of hope. A previous study suggested that pembrolizumab monotherapy may provide a potential treatment benefit for GC or GEJC[9]. However, ICIs result in severe or even fatal immune-related adverse events (irAEs) whereby they cause immune



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.352 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 1 The action mechanism of programmed cell death receptor-1, programmed death receptor-ligand 1, and cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen-4 inhibitors. PD-1: Programmed cell death receptor-1; PD-L1: Programmed death receptor-ligand 1; CTLA-4: Cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen-4; TCR: T-cell receptor; MHC: Major histocompatibility complex; APC: Antigen-presenting cell.

system hyperactivation in the normal tissues, which may be the underlying cause of irAEs[10]. Organ-specific irAEs associated with ICIs mainly occur in endocrinopathy, gastroenterology, hepatology, neurology, hematology, dermatology, pulmonology, nephrology, cardiology, and rheumatic immunology.

The irAEs can result in a reduction in dosage, drug withdrawal, a decrease in compliance, delayed treatment, organ function damage, and eventual death. These adverse events have been reported in other tumors, but there has been no systematic review of the events in GC or GEJC. Therefore, this meta-analysis was aimed to assess the incidence and nature of irAEs by conducting a systematic review of their adverse events in patients with GC or GEJC. The objective of the current systematic review and meta-analysis study was to assist clinicians in effective identification, and strike a balance by considering the pros and cons in management approaches of irAEs.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Literature sources and searches

Three major databases (PubMed, EMBASE, and Cochrane Library) were used to perform a systematic literature search for the present study. The search was conducted for the studies published between January, 2000 and January, 2022. Population, Intervention, Comparison, Outcome, and Study design was utilized as a framework to conduct the literature search (Table 1). The relevant searching terms corresponded to terms of the Medical Subject Heading. In addition, the searches were immediately repeated before the final analyses to identify any additional studies for inclusion[11]. This study adhered to the guidelines of the Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Reviews and Meta-Analyses and was registered with PROSPERO (Registration number: CRD42020152291)[12]. Detailed search strategies in the three major databases (PubMed, EMBASE, and Cochrane Library) were as shown in Supplementary Tables 1-3. The retrieved documents were lastly managed using the EndNote 20.

Eligibility criteria and study selection

Inclusion criteria of the participants of this systematic review and meta-analysis study were: Adults diagnosed with advanced GC, GEJC, and treated with ICIs. On the other hand, the included studies were randomized controlled trials (RCTs), case series, and case reports published in peer-reviewed journals without language or time restrictions. In addition, there were no set restrictions on sex, race, ethnicity, education, and economic status in the study.

Exclusion criteria of this systematic review and meta-analysis study were: Patients receiving other therapies such as chemotherapy, radiotherapy, targeted therapy, or other immunotherapy. Further, the studies excluded were: Cohort studies, case-control studies, cross-sectional studies, and other nonrandomized studies.

First, duplications were filtered using the automatic screening function of EndNote 20. The unqualified documents were then filtered after reading the title and abstract. Finally, the studies were further filtered by reading their full text *via* the online databases and school libraries. Corresponding authors were also contacted for further clarification during the filtering process. The search was carried out by two independent reviewers. Differences were resolved through consensus after discussion and

Table 1 Population, Intervention, Comparison, Outcome, and Study design

Query	Search term
#1	P (Neoplasm, Stomach[Title/Abstract] OR Stomach oplasm[Title/Abstract] OR Neoplasms, Stomach[Title/Abstract] OR Gastric Neoplasms[Title/Abstract] OR Gastric Neoplasm[Title/Abstract] OR Neoplasm, Gastric[Title/Abstract] OR Cancer of Stomach[Title/Abstract] OR Stomach Cancers[Title/Abstract] OR Gastric Cancer[Title/Abstract] OR Cancer, Gastric[Title/Abstract] OR gastroesophageal junction cancer[Title/Abstract] OR gastroesophageal junction adenocarcinoma[Title/Abstract] OR adenocarcinoma gastroesophageal junction[Title/Abstract])
#2	I (Checkpoint Inhibitors, Immune[Title/Abstract] OR Immune Checkpoint Inhibitor[Title/Abstract] OR PD-L1 Inhibitors[Title/Abstract] OR PD L1 Inhibitors[Title/Abstract] OR PD-L1 Inhibitor[Title/Abstract] OR PD L1 Inhibitor[Title/Abstract] OR CTLA-4 Inhibitors[Title/Abstract] OR CTLA 4 Inhibitors[Title/Abstract] OR ipilimumab[Title/Abstract] OR ticilimumab[Title/Abstract] OR nivolumab[Title/Abstract] OR pembrolizumab[Title/Abstract] OR pidilizumab[Title/Abstract] OR atezolizumab[Title/Abstract] OR durvalumab[Title/Abstract] OR avelumab[Title/Abstract])
#3	O (immune-related adverse events[Title/Abstract] OR immune related adverse events checkpoint inhibitors[Title/Abstract] OR immune related adverse events checkpoint blockade[Title/Abstract] OR management of immune related adverse events[Title/Abstract] OR immune related adverse events in patients[Title/Abstract] OR immune related adverse events systemic immunosuppression[Title/Abstract])
#4	S ("randomized controlled trial"[pt] OR "controlled clinical trial"[pt] OR randomized[tiab] OR placebo[tiab] OR "drug therapy"[sh] OR randomly[tiab] OR trial[tiab] OR groups[tiab] OR "randomized controlled trial"[pt] OR "controlled clinical trial"[pt] OR "clinical trials as topic"[mesh] OR "random allocation"[mesh] OR "double-blind method"[mesh] OR "single-blind method"[mesh])
#5	#1 AND #2 AND #3 AND #4

PD-1: Programmed cell death receptor-1; PD-L1: Programmed death receptor-ligand 1; CTLA-4: Cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen-4.

consultation with a senior third party.

Outcomes

Incidences of irAEs and organ-specific adverse events associated with ICIs in the treatment of GC/GEJC were documented in the present meta-analysis. The irAEs were described using version 2, 3, or 4 of the Common Terminology Criteria for Adverse Events of the National Cancer Institute. Adverse events were graded on a scale of 1 to 5 and grades 3 to 5 were regarded as the severe grade.

Data extraction

The data for each study were independently extracted and recorded by the two reviewers. The data collected for clinical trials were: Author(s), year, clinical trial information, study design, enrollment size, types of tumors, type and dose of monoclonal antibodies, version of the Common Terminology Criteria for Adverse Events, frequency of irAEs and organ-specific irAEs, and the median time.

The data collected for case reports and case series were: Patient characteristics, previous oncologic treatment, cancer outcome (oncologic response or progressive disease), the nature of each irAE, as well as irAE onset, treatment, and outcome. The final results were cross-checked and any disagreements (Kappa score: 0.76) were resolved through consensus after discussion or consultation with a senior third party.

Quality assessment

The Cochrane Risk of Bias Tool was used to assess the risk of bias and quality of the RCTs[13]. The tool consists of seven aspects: Random sequence generation (selection bias), allocation concealment (selection bias), blinding of participants and personnel (performance bias), blinding of outcome assessment (detection bias), incomplete outcome data (attrition bias), selective reporting (reporting bias), and other biases. Each aspect of the Cochrane Risk of Bias Tool was assigned a high, low, or unclear risk of bias[13]. Quality assessment was conducted using Review Manager Software (version 5.4.1). This quality assessment was independently conducted by two reviewers who reached an agreement through consensus.

Data synthesis and analysis

All analyses in the present systemic review and meta-analysis were performed using Stata/SE (version 12.0) and Review Manager (version 5.4.1) software. The following was the procedure involved in conducting the statistical analysis in the study.

Effect values combination

First, the incidence of irAEs was determined in each study based on the sample size and total number of irAEs. The incidence of irAEs was then combined, and the effect value was determined based on a meta-analysis of sample rate and standard error. Stata/SE software (version 12.0) was used to draw the forest map and obtain the 95% confidence intervals (CIs) for the weighted average of all studies[14]. The combined effect value was conducted using Stata/SE (version 12.0) with the metan and metafunnel

commands of meta-analysis.

Heterogeneity test

Statistical heterogeneity between the selected studies was analyzed using the Q test and I^2 statistic. When the *P*-value of Q statistic was > 0.10 or $I^2 \leq 50\%$, there was no heterogeneity or acceptable heterogeneity between the studies. Further, when the *P* value was ≤ 0.10 or $I^2 > 50\%$, there was a greater degree of heterogeneity between the studies[15]. The random-effect model, which accounts for the heterogeneity between the studies was used to examine the effect size because the heterogeneity between the studies was greater[16]. A Galbraith plot for heterogeneity was drawn to evaluate heterogeneity in the present study. The heterogeneity test was conducted using Stata/SE with the galbr command of meta-analysis.

Publication bias test

Initially, the risk of publication bias was evaluated using a funnel plot with pseudo 95% confidence limits and the publication bias was then assessed in the present study by observing the symmetry of the funnel plot. Furthermore, the funnel plot was evaluated using both the Begg and Egger methods. Therefore, the funnel plot was quantified and publication bias was assessed by examining the P-value. The test of publication bias was conducted using Stata/SE with the metabias command of meta-analysis.

Subgroup analysis

Subgroup analysis is a common method for addressing heterogeneity. The studies in the present review were grouped according to the types of ICIs and organ-specific adverse events studied. The analysis was conducted using Stata/SE with the metan command of meta-analysis.

Sensitivity analysis

A new meta-analysis was conducted to determine whether the effect size had changed whenever research was deleted. However, the deleted study was considered when result of the new meta-analysis differed from that of the previous one to influence the total effect size. Influence analysis was conducted using Stata/SE with the metaninf command of meta-analysis.

RESULTS

Study selection

The literature search was conducted in the current systematic review based on the pre-established strategy. A total of 285 pieces of literature were searched including 38, 146, and 101 in the PubMed, EMBASE, and Cochrane databases, respectively. Initially, a total of 62 duplicated literature were excluded. A total of 155 articles that did not meet the criteria were then excluded after reading their titles and abstracts. A total of 28 articles (8 clinical trials, 14 case reports, and 6 case series) that met the inclusion criteria were finally selected after reading the full text (Figure 2). A reference list of all the excluded studies and reasons for their exclusion was as shown in the Supplementary Table 4.

Nature of irAEs: Data from clinical trials

General characteristics: A total of 8 clinical trials were included in this meta-analysis including 2 PD-1 (pembrolizumab)[17-18], 5 PD-L1 (avelumab)[19-23], and 1 CTLA-4 (ipilimumab)[24]. All reviewed trials showed total irAEs, with 6 of them describing organ-specific irAEs. The remaining 2 trials only reported total irAEs. The general characteristics of the included studies were as shown in Table 2, which included a total of 1249 participants from 8 clinical trials. All trials included in the meta-analysis were open-label, multicenter, and randomized trials. Further, it was found that there was only one phase II clinical trial, three phase I clinical trials, and four phase III clinical trials. The average immunotherapy duration for the all included trials was 2.9 mo [interquartile range (IQR): 2.4 to 3.1 mo], whereas the median follow-up time was 15.5 mo (IQR: 9.9 to 20.5 mo). The median overall survival (OS) of these trials ranged between 4.6 (95%CI: 3.6 to 5.7) to 12.7 mo (95%CI: 10.5 to 18.9) whereas the median PFS ranged between 1.4 (95%CI: 1.4 to 1.5) and 3.2 mo (95%CI: 2.8 to 4.1).

Global incidence of irAEs: The global incidence of irAEs for overall grades was 20% (95%CI: 16 to 23) in the anti-PD-1 group, 13% (95%CI: 8 to 19) in the anti-PD-L1 group, and 18% (95%CI: 8 to 27) in the anti-CTLA-4 group, whereas 4% (95%CI: 2 to 5) in the anti-PD-1 group and 3% (95%CI: 1 to 4) in the anti-PD-L1 group for severe grade (Supplementary Figures 1-3). It was found that the anti-PD-1 group had the highest incidence of irAEs at all grades and severe grades as compared with that of the other three inhibitors. In addition, the overall incidence of irAEs was 16% (95%CI: 11 to 21) for all grades and 3% (95%CI: 2 to 4) for severe grade in the anti-PD-1 combined with the anti-PD-L1 group (Supplementary Figure 4), which was comparable with that in the anti-PD-1 combined with anti-PD-L1,

Table 2 Study characteristics of included clinical trials

Trial	Design	Design details	Cancer types	Enrollment size, *n*	ICIs	Dose, mg/kg	IrAEs, all grades, *n*	IrAEs, severe grades, *n*	mOS	mPFS
Shitara *et al*[17], 2018	RCT	Open-label, multicenter, phase III	Advanced GC/GEJC	294	PD-1 (pembrolizumab)	200 mg, q3w	61	10	9.1 mo (95%CI: 6.2 to 10.7 mo)	1.5 mo (95%CI: 1.4 to 2.0 mo)
Fuchs *et al* [18], 2022	RCT	Open-label, multicenter, phase III	Advanced GC/GEJC	294	PD-1 (pembrolizumab)	200 mg, q3w	55	11	NA	NA
Moehler *et al*[19], 2021	RCT	Open-label, multicenter, phase III	Advanced GC/GEJC	249	PD-L1 (avelumab)	10, q2w	32	8	10.4 mo (95%CI: 9.1 to 12.0 mo)	3.2 mo (95%CI: 2.8 to 4.1 mo)
Doi *et al* [20], 2019	RCT	Open-label, multicenter, phase I	Advanced GC/GEJC	40	PD-L1 (avelumab)	10, q2w	9	0	9.1 mo (95%CI: 7.2 to 11.2 mo)	2.4 mo (95%CI: 1.4 to 2.8 mo)
Doi *et al* [21], 2018	RCT	Open-label, multicenter, phase I	Advanced GC/GEJC	40	PD-L1 (avelumab)	10, q2w	5	0	9.1 mo (95%CI: 7.2 to 11.2 mo)	2.5 mo (95%CI: 1.4 to 2.8 mo)
Chung *et al*[22], 2019	RCT	Open-label, multicenter, phase I	Advanced GC/GEJC	90	PD-L1 (avelumab)	10, q2w	17	2	NA	NA
Bang *et al* [23], 2018	RCT	Open-label, multicenter, phase III	Advanced GC/GEJC	185	PD-L1 (avelumab)	10, q2w	12	4	4.6 mo (95%CI: 3.6 to 5.7 mo)	1.4 mo (95%CI: 1.4 to 1.5 mo)
Bang *et al* [24], 2017	RCT	Open-label, multicenter, phase II	Advanced GC/GEJC	57	CTLA-4 (ipilimumab)	10, q3w	10	0	12.7 mo (95%CI: 10.5 to 18.9 mo)	2.7 mo

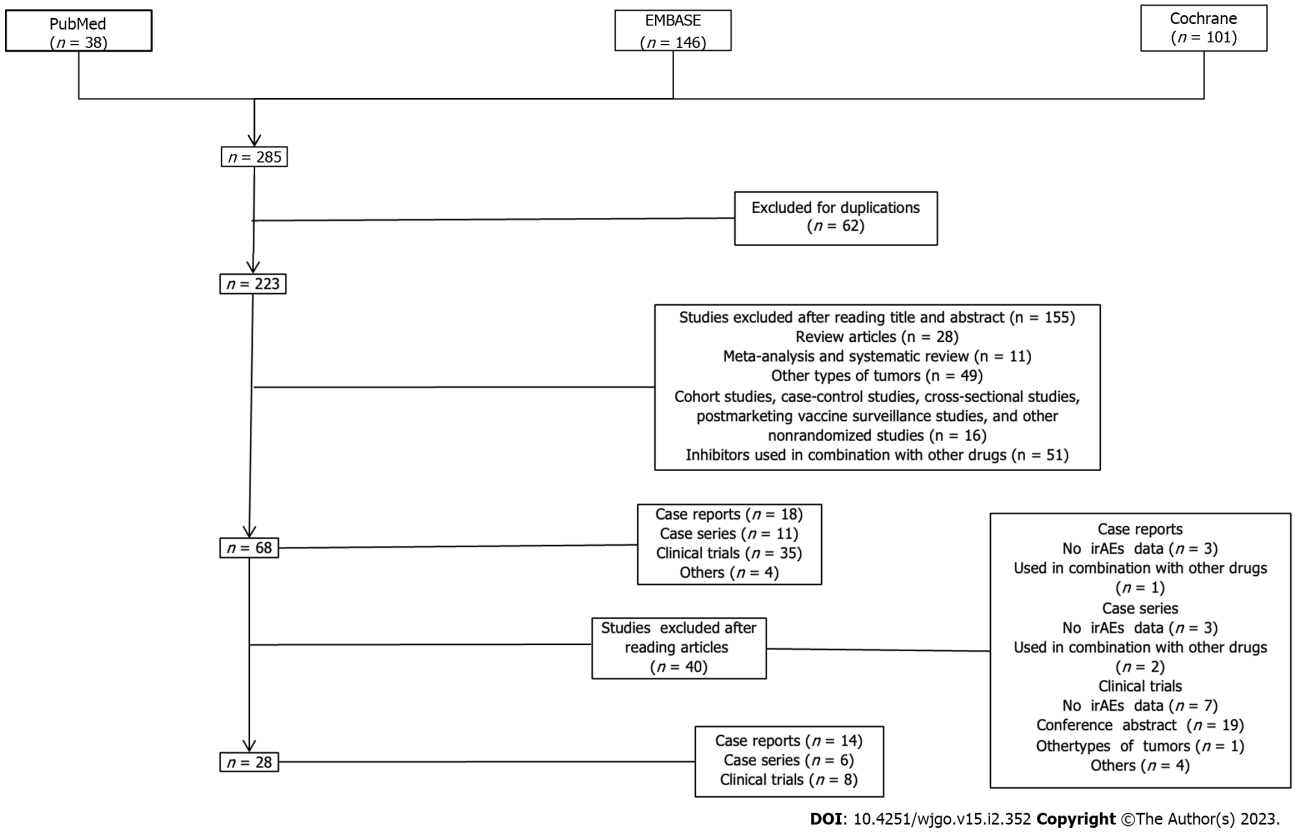
ICIs: Immune checkpoint inhibitors; irAEs: Immune-related adverse events; mOS: Median overall survival; mPFS: Median progression-free survival; RCT: Randomized controlled trial; GC: Gastric cancer; GEJC: Gastroesophageal junction cancer; NA: Not available; PD-1: Programmed cell death receptor-1; PD-L1: Programmed death receptor-ligand 1; CTLA-4: Cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen-4.

and anti-CTLA-4 groups (Figure 3A and B).

Incidence of organ-specific irAEs: Organ-specific irAEs and their incidence were described as shown in Figure 3C. It was found that only one article documented an irAEs associated with dermatology[21]. In addition, it was noted that there were only two articles that showed the incidence of total irAEs without describing organ-specific irAEs[22-23]. The most common organ-specific irAEs occurred in the endocrine system, accounting for 7.4% (95%CI: 5.9-8.8), and included hypothyroidism, hyperthyroidism, thyroiditis and diabetes, followed by gastroenterology, pulmonology, neurology, and dermatology, accounting for 2.2% (95%CI: 1.4-3.1), 1.8% (95%CI: 1.0-2.5), 1.4% (95%CI: 0.8-2.1) and 1.4% (95%CI: 0.8-2.1), respectively.

On the other hand, it was found that organ-specific irAEs with a lower incidence occurred in hematology and hepatology, accounting for 0.8% (95%CI: 0.3-1.3) and 0.7% (95%CI: 0.3-1.2), respectively. However, it was evident that the incidence of severe grade organ-specific irAEs was higher in hematology and hepatology than in other systems which was comparable with the results observed in the anti-PD-1 group (Figure 3C). In the group of anti-PD-1 combined with the anti-PD-L1, it was found that the most common organ-specific irAEs occurred in endocrinology accounting for 7.7% (95%CI: 6.2-9.2), whereas the rarest organ-specific irAEs occurred in hepatology and accounted for 0.7% (95%CI: 0.4-1.0). Incidence of organ-specific irAEs related to endocrinopathy, gastroenterology, hepatology, neurology, hematology, dermatology, pulmonology, nephrology, cardiology, and rheumatic immunology was displayed in forest plots for all grade and severe grade in anti-PD-1, anti-PD-L1, anti-CTLA-4, or anti-PD-1 combined with anti-PD-L1 groups (Supplementary Figures 5-23).

Incidence of death related to irAEs: Results of this study found that the incidence of death related to irAEs was 1% (95%CI: 0-2.0) in all the included trials and a total of 6 deaths were reported in the anti-PD-1 group (Supplementary Figure 24). Further, it was evident that the main causes of death were



DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.352 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 2 Flowchart of study selection and design.

colitis and interstitial lung disease.

Nature of irAEs: Data from case reports and case series

General characteristics: A total of 14 case reports[25-38] and 6 case series[39-44] were included in this meta-analysis. In the case of reports, one patient received pembrolizumab treatment and thirteen received nivolumab treatment. The general characteristics of the patients were as shown in Attached file 4 (Supplementary Table 5). The average age of the enrolled patients was 70 years and 79% of them were male. Before receiving the anti-PD-1 therapy, it was found that 13 patients (93%) had failed at least one course of chemotherapy. Twelve patients (86%) reported occurrence of irAEs in a single system[25,27-33,35-38], whereas two patients (14%) reported occurrence of irAEs in more than one system.

Results of case reports indicated an average immunotherapy duration of 14.6 cycles (IQR: 5.5 to 17.5) and a mean onset time of 8.2 mo (IQR: 3.0 to 6.0). Four patients (29%) continued to receive anti-PD-1 treatment despite irAEs[25,27,29-30]. In the case series, all 326 patients received nivolumab treatment and their general characteristics were as shown in Table 3. Furthermore, the median OS in these case series ranged from 2.5 mo (95%CI: 0 to 5.0) to 7.9 mo (95%CI: 5.9 to 13.5), and the median PFS ranged from 1.0 mo (95%CI: 0.9 to 1.1) to 2.3 mo (95%CI: 0.5 to 24.8).

Incidence and nature of irAEs: Results of the present study showed that organ-specific irAEs in the case of reports were as described in the Supplementary Table 6. It was found that the endocrine system had the highest incidence of organ-specific irAEs, accounting for 36% (n = 5), including hyperthyroidism (n = 1)[37], thyroiditis (n = 2)[34,38], ACTH deficiency (n = 2)[30,38], and diabetes (n = 1)[31]. On the other hand, neurology and dermatology had the lowest incidence of organ-specific irAEs, accounting for 7% for each (n = 2)[26,29], including dizziness, nausea, truncal ataxia, rash, and sequential herpes zoster virus activation.

One patient experienced irAEs in multiple systems[26], including hematology, nephrology, dermatology, cardiology, and pulmonology. Although the patient was cured of irAEs, after receiving steroid treatment, he later suffered severe irAEs[38], developed grade 3 thyroiditis, and ACTH deficiency. It was found that treatment with anti-PD-1 induced an oncologic response in three patients (21%), and disease progression in five patients (36%). A total of 11 (79%) patients with irAEs were treated with steroids, 6 (43%) had cured irAEs, 3 (21%) had persistent irAEs, and 2 (14%) remained uncertain. Two (14%) of the 3 patients who were not treated with steroids developed persistent irAEs, and 1 (7%) died.

Table 3 Characteristics of the included case series studies

Case series	Enrollment size, *n*	Cancer types	ICIs	IrAEs, all grades, *n*	IrAEs, severe grades, *n*	mOS	mPFS
Suzuki *et al*[44], 2021 (Low ascites burden)	50	AGC	PD-1 (nivolumab)	9	1	5.3 mo (95%CI: 3.4 to 7.3 mo)	1.5 mo (95%CI: 1.0 to 2.0 mo)
Suzuki *et al*[44], 2021 (High ascites burden)	22	AGC	PD-1 (nivolumab)	5	0	2.5 mo (95%CI: 0 to 5.0 mo)	1.0 mo (95%CI: 0.9 to 1.1 mo)
Ohta *et al*[43], 2020	15	AGC	PD-1 (nivolumab)	5	0	6.3 mo	NA
Namikawa *et al*[42], 2020	29	AGC	PD-1 (nivolumab)	10	0	5.6 mo (95%CI: 0.6 to 26.8 mo)	2.3 mo (95%CI: 0.5 to 24.8 mo)
Kono *et al*[41], 2021	52	AGC	PD-1 (nivolumab)	13	1	7.9 mo (95%CI: 5.9 to 13.5 mo)	1.9 mo (95%CI: 1.4 to 3.0 mo)
Booka *et al*[40], 2021	50	GEA/ESCC	PD-1 (nivolumab)	13	5	NA	NA
Ando *et al*[39], 2021	108	AGC	PD-1 (nivolumab)	17	5	3.6 mo (95%CI: 3.0 to 5.3 mo)	1.4 mo (95%CI: 1.2 to 1.8 mo)

ICIs: Immune checkpoint inhibitors; irAEs: Immune-related adverse events; mOS: Median overall survival; mPFS: Median progression-free survival; NA: Not available; PD-1: Programmed cell death receptor-1; AGC: Advanced gastric cancer; GEA: Gastroesophageal adenocarcinoma; ESCC: Esophageal squamous cell carcinoma.

Results showed that the overall incidence of irAEs in the case series was 22% (95%CI: 17 to 27) for all grades and 3% (95%CI: 1 to 6) for severe grade (Figure 4). It was noted that[39] the overall incidence of organ-specific irAEs was reported in only one article but did not describe organ-specific irAEs. Further, 7.1% of all grade organ-specific irAEs occurred in the endocrine system, including hypothyroidism (n = 6), hyperthyroidism (n = 2), thyroiditis (n = 3), hypopituitarism (n = 2), hyperglycemia (n = 1), thyroid insufficiency (n = 3), type 1 diabetes mellitus (n = 1) and others (n = 5). This was then followed by pulmonology (4.3%, n = 14), gastroenterology (3.7%, n = 12), and dermatology (3.4%, n = 11), whereas organ-specific irAEs with a lower incidence included, myocarditis, infusion reaction, arthritis, liver insufficiency, loss of appetite, taste disorder, myopathy, adrenal insufficiency, and mucositis.

Interstitial pneumonia and myocarditis were the most common organ-specific irAEs for severe grade. It was found that two patients died due to severe myocarditis and interstitial pneumonia. Furthermore, one article[43] reported that the incidence of irAEs in patients with advanced GC and a high ascites burden was 23% (95%CI: 5 to 40), as compared with 18% (95%CI: 7 to 29) in patients with a low ascites burden. In addition, the median OS in the high and low ascites burden groups was 2.5 mo (95%CI: 0 to 5.0) and 5.3 mo (95%CI: 3.4 to 7.3), respectively. Comparatively, the median PFS in the high and low ascites burden groups were 1.0 mo (95%CI: 0.9 to 1.1) and 1.5 mo (95%CI: 1.0 to 2.0), respectively.

Quality of included studies and sensitivity analysis: Quality assessment: The risk of bias in each of the included RCTs was as shown in the attached file 5. The risk of selection bias was rated as high in 3 studies (37.5%) whereas the risk of reporting bias was rated as high in 5 studies (62.5%) (Supplementary Figures 25 and 26).

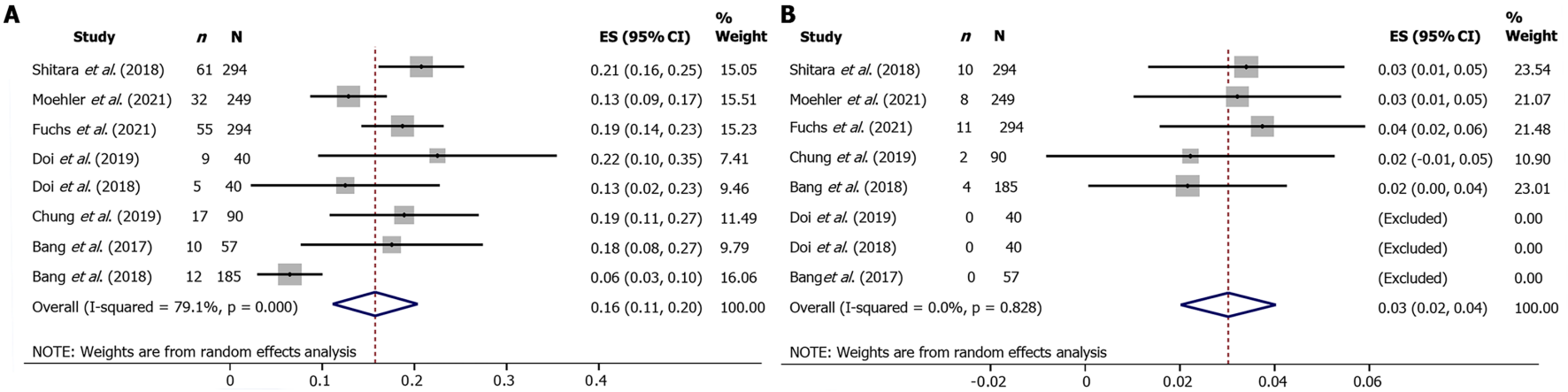
Sensitivity analysis: The sensitivity analysis of all clinical trials was as shown in Attached file 5. It was found that the influence of a single study on the total merger effect was not significant except for one study[22] (Supplementary Figure 27).

Heterogeneity test: Galbraith plot indicated that there existed heterogeneity between the included studies (Supplementary Figure 28). Therefore, sensitivity analysis was used to explain the source of heterogeneity and the random effect model was used to determine the effect quantity.

Publication bias test: The Begg's funnel plot and Egger's publication bias plot showed that there was existence of publication bias among the included studies (Supplementary Figures 29 and 30).

DISCUSSION

This meta-analysis analyzed the irAEs of ICIs for advanced GC/GEJC according to different targets, tumor types, drug types, doses, and organ specificity to improve the understanding of the safety and efficacy of the emerging cancer drugs. A total of 8 clinical trials, 14 case reports, and 6 case series were included in this study. It was evident that the overall incidence of irAEs was high in patients with advanced GC/GEJC, at a rate of 16% (95%CI: 11 to 21) in clinical trials and 22% (95%CI: 17 to 27) in case series. It noted that the most common organ-specific irAEs were endocrine system disorders, including



C

		IRAES,(95%CI)													
	Intervention	**Endocrinopathy**		**Gastroenterology**		**Hepatology**		**Neurology**		**Hematology**		**Dermatology**		**Pulmonology**	
Drug		Any (%)	Severe (%)	Any (%)	Severe (%)	Any (%)	Severe (%)	Any (%)	Severe (%)	Any (%)	Severe (%)	Any (%)	Severe (%)	Any (%)	Severe (%)
Pembrolizumab (Anti-PD-1)	588	13.9 (11.1-16.7)	0.9 (0.1-1.6)	3.7 (2.2-5.3)	0.7 (0-1.3)	1.4 (0.4-2.3)	1.4 (0.4-2.3)	3.1 (1.7-4.5)	0.2 (-0.2-0.5)	1.7 (0.7-2.7)	1.2 (0.3-2.1)	0.3 (-0.1-0.8)	0.3 (-0.1-0.8)	2.7 (1.4-4.0)	0.7 (0-1.3)
Avelumab (Anti-PD-Ll)	604	1.7 (0.6-2.7)	0	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	2.6 (1.4-0.03.9)	0	1.0 (0.2-1.8)	0
Anti-PD-1 and anti-PD-Ll	1192	7.7 (6.2-9.2)	0.4 (0.1-0.8)	1.8 (1.1-2.6)	0.3 (0-0.7)	0.7(0.2-1.1)	0.7 (0.2-1.1)	1.5 (0.8-2.2)	0.1 (-0.1-0.2)	0.8 (0.3-1.4)	0.6 (0.2-1.0)	1.5 (0.8-2.2)	0.2 (-0.1-0.4)	1.8 (1.1-2.6)	0.3 (0-0.7)
Ipilimumab (Anti-CTLA-4)	57	NA	NA	10.5 (2.6-18.5)	0	1.8 (-1.7-5.2)	0	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Total	2441	7.5 (6.5-8.6)	0.4 (0.2-0.7)	2.0 (1.5-2.6)	0.3 (0.1-0.6)	0.7 (0.4-1.0)	0.7 (0.3-1.0)	1.5 (1.0-2.0)	0.1 (0-0.2)	0.8 (0.5-1.2)	0.6 (0.3-0.9)	1.5 (1.0-2.0)	0.2 (0-0.3)	1.8 (1.3-2.3)	0.3 (0.1-0.6)
Author															
Shitara *et al.* (2018)	294	13.6 (9.7-17.5)	0.7 (-0.3-1.6)	6.5 (3.7-9.3)	0.7 (-0.3-1.6)	1.4 (0-2.7)	1.4 (0-2.7)	6.1 (3.4-8.9)	0.3 (-0.3-1.0)	3.4 (1.3-5.5)	2.4 (0.6-4.1)	0.3 (-0.3-1.0)	0.3 (-0.3-1.0)	2.7 (0.9-4.6)	0.7 (-0.3-1.6)
Fuchs *et al.* (2021)	294	14.3 (10.3-18.3)	1.0 (-0.1-2.2)	1.0 (-0.1-2.2)	0.7 (-0.3-1.6)	1.4 (0-2.7)	1.4 (0-2.7)	NA	NA	NA	NA	0.3 (-0.3-1.0)	0.3 (-0.3-1.0)	2.7 (0.9-4.6)	0.7 (-0.3-1.6)
Moehler *et al.* (2021)	249	2.8 (0.8-4.9)	0	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	2.0 (0.3-3.8)	0	2.4 (0.5-4.3)	0
Doi *et al.* (2019)	40	7.5 (-0.7-15.7)	0	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	15.0 (3.9-26.1)	0	NA	NA
Doi *et al.* (2018)	40	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	12.5 (2.3-22.7)	0	NA	NA
Chung *et al.* (2019)	90	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Bang *et al.* (2017)	57	NA	NA	10.5 (2.6-18.5)	0	1.8 (-1.7-5.2)	0	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Bang *et al.* (2018)	185	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Total	1249	7.4 (5.9-8.8)	0.4 (0.1-0.8)	2.2 (1.4-3.1)	0.3 (0-0.6)	0.7 (0.3-1.2)	0.6 (0.2-1.1)	1.4 (0.8-2.1)	0.1 (-0.1-0.2)	0.8 (0.3-1.3)	0.6 (0.1-1.0)	1.4 (0.8-2.1)	0.2 (-0.1-0.4)	1.8 (1.0-2.5)	0.3 (0-0.6)

DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.352 **Copyright** ©The Author(s) 2023.

Figure 3 Incidence of global immune-related adverse events associated with anti- programmed cell death receptor-1, anti-programmed death receptor-ligand 1, and anti-cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen-4. A: All grade; B: Severe grade; C: Incidence of organ specific immune-related adverse events, value are percentage (95% confidence intervals). Any: includes all Common Terms classified by Clinical Adverse Events grades; Severe: includes CTCAE grades 3,4, or 5. NA: Not available; PD-1: Programmed cell death receptor-1; PD-L1: Programmed death receptor-ligand 1; CTLA-4: Cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen-4.

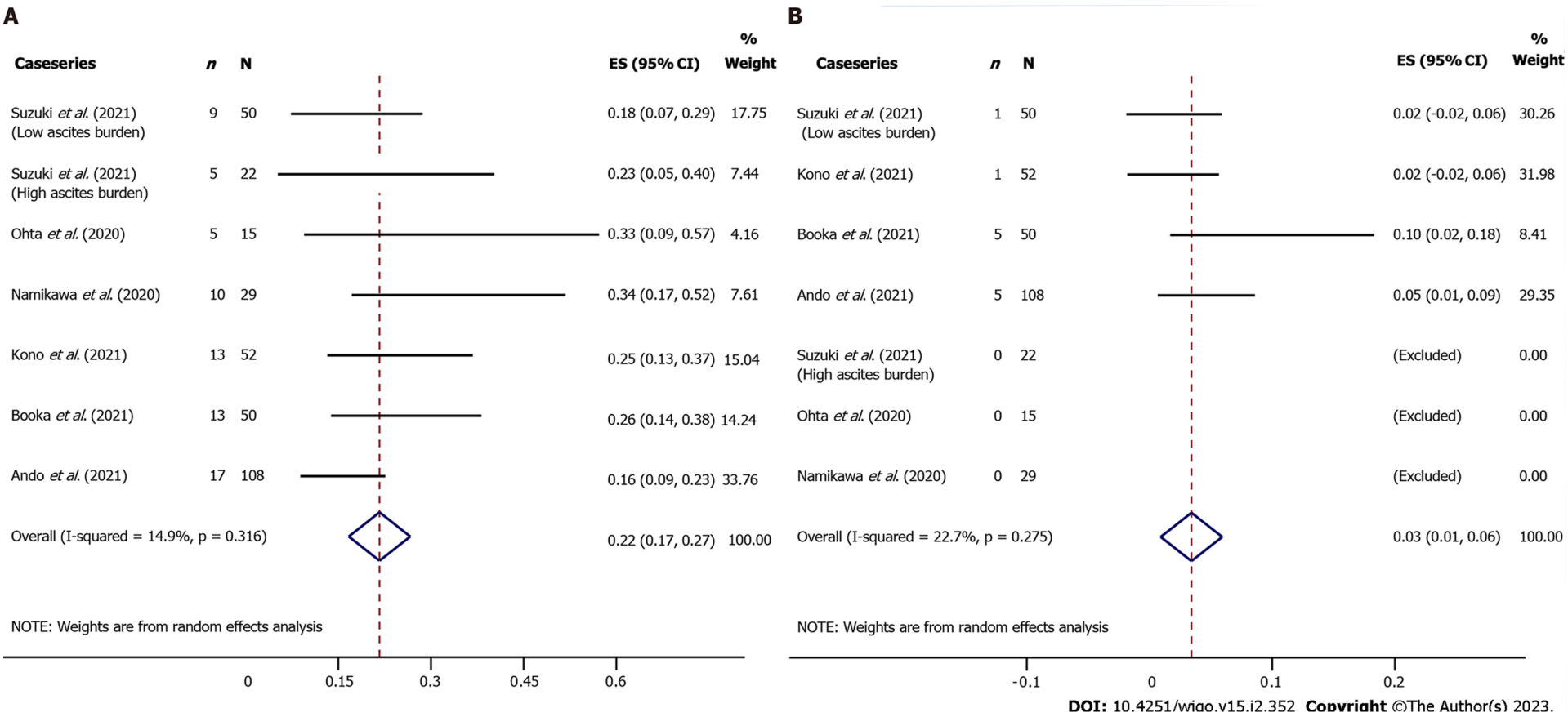


Figure 4 Incidence of immune-related adverse events associated with anti-anti- programmed cell death receptor-1 (nivolumab) in case series. A: All grade; B: Severe grade.

hypothyroidism, hyperthyroidism, thyroiditis, and diabetes. The incidence of irAEs for severe grade (3%), and especially the death rate (1%) were relatively low whereas the interstitial pneumonia was the leading cause of death.

Consistent with results of a previous study, it was found that treatment with anti-PD-1 was significantly associated with a higher prevalence of all irAEs grades and severe grade irAEs as compared with that of anti-PD-L1 treatment[45]. This could be because the variation in the irAEs associated with anti-PD-1 and anti-PD-L1. Anti-PD-1 drugs may increase the risk of immune-related pneumonia whereas anti-PD-L1 drugs may increase the risk of hypothyroidism[45]. However, results of the current research showed that both anti-PD-1 and anti-PD-L1 drugs were associated with an increase in risk of endocrinopathy, which could be caused by different types of cancer.

In addition, findings of a previous meta-analysis showed that the overall incidence of irAEs with anti-CTLA-4 treatment was 72% (95%CI: 65 to 79) for all grade and 24% (95%CI: 18 to 30) for severe grade [46], which was higher than 18% (95%CI: 8 to 27) and 0% in the present meta-analysis. This conclusion may have been caused by insufficient sample sizes of our study, or that the definition of irAEs required to be further clarified. Based on the findings of this study, there is need for additional research on irAEs with a particular focus on comparing anti-PD-1 and anti-PD-L1 medications to provide future guidance for clinical practices.

The relationship between irAEs and efficacy of ICI is the subject of current debate. IrAEs have been associated with improved outcomes and high heterogeneity[47]. A previous meta-analysis showed that anti-PD-1 or anti-PD-L1 treatment improved the clinical benefits of long-term OS and prolonged duration of response in the patients as compared with that of chemotherapy[48]. The median OS for these trials was 9.2 mo and the median PFS was 2.3 mo which was higher than the best supportive therapy or placebo. However, irAEs cannot be ignored when ICIs improve the clinical outcome of oncology. It was found that the overall incidence of irAEs was particularly high in patients with advanced GC/GEJC. In addition, more than 50% of patients experienced intolerable toxicity caused by the reduction of irAEs or discontinuation of their medication. Therefore, it is essential to predict and manage irAEs in cancer immunotherapy.

The findings of the current study showed that incidence of all grade organ-specific irAEs in hematology and hepatology was low. However, the incidence of severe grade irAEs was high. Although hypothyroidism is the most common irAE of the endocrine system, its specific pathophysiological mechanism is still unknown. Furthermore, there was no association between hypothyroidism and cancer outcomes and the strongest associations for hypothyroidism were higher baseline thyroid-stimulating hormone and female sex[49]. Therefore, there is a need for positive clinical tests, such as thyroid function tests (T3, T4, and TSH) which should be performed before and during treatment. Further standardization and improvement are also required for the clinical indicators of other irAEs.

Increasing numbers of drugs targeting immunotherapy and molecular pathways are moving from clinical trials to the clinic. However, the selection of the most appropriate therapy, timing of drug administration, and management of adverse events remain a challenge for severe toxicity and disease progression. Meanwhile, patients are treated with steroids and it has been found that the irAEs either persists or disappears.

Several studies have demonstrated that the use of steroids may inhibit the anti-tumor immune response and hence cause poor prognosis[50-51]. Drug withdrawal and decrease in compliance of patients may also contribute to occurrence of a poor prognosis. On the contrary, a different study has indicated that groups with poor prognoses were more likely to receive steroid treatment and that steroids were less likely to affect the efficacy of immunotherapy[52]. Therefore, there is a need for more research to show the relationship between toxicity and clinical outcomes.

In this systemic review, 14 case reports and 6 case series were included to qualitatively supplement the quantitative findings of the meta-analysis. The statistical analysis is usually constrained because the case studies typically report only novel or rare irAEs. Nonetheless, case studies included in the present review provide an opportunity to assess and study the incidence and nature of irAEs.

Case studies demonstrated that endocrine-related irAEs were the most common and this was in agreement with the findings of another previous meta-analysis[53]. It was evident that the incidence of irAEs was comparable in both case studies and clinical trials of anti-PD-1 therapy. Similar situations apply to deaths caused by irAEs. IrAEs resulted in a 2% mortality rate in case series and a 1% mortality rate in clinical trials, with colitis, myocarditis, and interstitial lung disease being the leading causes of death. This meta-analysis showed a higher mortality rate than a previous one which involved 112 trials and 19,217 patients whereby toxicity-related deaths occurred at 0.36% (anti-PD-1), 0.38% (anti-PD-L1), and 1.08% (anti-CTLA-4)[54].

This study had some advantages. First, it systematically evaluated the incidence of global irAEs and organ-specific irAEs associated with the ICIs monotherapy for advanced GC or GEJC. There are currently very few meta-analyses on irAEs in patients with GC and GEJC. Second, the trials selected for this meta-analysis were RCTs, with large samples, and a high evidence-based value. In addition, a random-effect model and subgroup analysis was used based on different targets, tumor types, drug types, organ specificity, and irAE grade to reduce both variance and bias. Third, the study included both case reports and case series, as well as a comprehensive evaluation of the occurrence, treatment, and prognosis of irAEs. Therefore, these improved the quality of the results and in strengthening the validity of the conclusions made in this study.

This study also had some limitations. First, there were selection, reporting, and publication biases among the included studies. Second, common symptoms such as fatigue, nausea, infusion reactions, and malaise were more likely to be diagnosed as treatment-related adverse events (trAEs) rather than irAEs and hence missed the diagnoses. Therefore, there is urgent need for standardization of the quantifiable standards between irAEs and trAEs, irAEs and non-irAEs. To effectively diagnose and manage irAEs and trAEs, clinicians must also avoid confusing clinical symptoms with test indicators. Third, our study was a meta-analysis of irAEs with a single sample rate. Therefore, odds ratio could not be used for statistical analysis. Lastly, the number of articles included in our analysis is limited. Numerous indicators may be heterogeneous, and the outcome may readily amplify research findings and

inaccuracies. This was because of the limited number of published clinical studies on immunotherapy for GC/GEJC and even fewer studies describing irAEs. Consequently, the results of this study should be interpreted with caution and there is additional research to validate the obtained results.

CONCLUSION

This systematic review shows that there is an increasing number of irAEs associated with ICIs that are being reported in patients with GC or GEJC. This is particularly severe organ-specific irAEs and death because of irAEs, which poses significant challenges for clinical oncologists. Therefore, to help clinicians effectively identify and manage irAEs as well as strike a balance, a comprehensive understanding, systematic prediction, and appropriate management of the adverse events are critical.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

In recent years, there has been a steep rise in the development and implementation of anti-cancer immunotherapies. Although there has been a large amount of research focusing on adverse events associated with immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICIs), few studies have focused specifically on advanced gastric cancer (GC) and gastroesophageal junction cancer (GEJC).

Research motivation

By unbalancing the immune system, these new immunotherapies also generate dysimmune toxicities, called immune-related adverse events (irAEs) that mainly involve the gut, skin, endocrine glands, liver, and lung but can potentially affect any tissue. Although steroids can be used to treat these IRAEs, the associated immunosuppression may compromise the antitumor response. To help clinicians effectively identify and manage irAEs as well as strike a balance are critical.

Research objectives

This study focuses on the mechanisms of irAEs generation, putative relationship between dysimmune toxicity and antitumor efficacy.

Research methods

In the study, we systematically evaluated the incidence of global irAEs and organ-specific irAEs and proposed a random-effect model and subgroup analysis based on different targets, tumor types, drug types, organ specificity, and irAE grade to reduce variance and bias.

Research results

It was found that the overall incidence of irAEs was 16% (95%CI: 11-20) for all grades and 3% (95%CI: 2-4) for the severe grade. It was evident that the incidence of irAEs varied with the type of inhibitor and organs. In clinical trials, it was found that the incidence of death related to irAEs was 1% (95%CI: 0-2.0) whereby colitis and interstitial lung diseases were the leading causes of death.

Research conclusions

This systematic review shows that there is an increasing number of irAEs associated with ICIs that are being reported in patients with GC or GEJC. This is particularly severe for organ-specific irAEs and death because of irAEs, which poses significant challenges for clinical oncologists. Therefore, to help clinicians effectively identify and manage irAEs as well as strike a balance, a comprehensive understanding, systematic prediction, and appropriate management of the adverse events are critical.

Research perspectives

In the study, we systematically evaluated the incidence of global irAEs and organ-specific irAEs and proposed a random-effect model and subgroup analysis based on different targets, tumor types, drug types, organ specificity, and irAE grade to reduce variance and bias. Another strength of our study is that both case reports and case series were included, as well as a comprehensive evaluation of the occurrence, treatment, and prognosis of irAEs. The study would be of great interest to a broad range of readers including oncologists, clinical researchers, patients, and other researchers in related fields.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Authors are grateful to the scholars who participated in this study for their contributions. Thanks to the reviewers and editors of this work for their valuable suggestions on this article.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Pei WG, Jie ZG, Chen WZ, Tan SX, Wu YK contributed to the conception and design; Pei WG, Jie ZG, Chen WZ, Tan SX, Wu YK contributed to the data collection and extraction, statistical data analysis and software utilization; Pei WG, Chen WZ, Wu YK was involved in methodology, data curation and formal analysis; Pei WG, Jie ZG contributed to the manuscript drafting; Pei WG, Jie ZG, Chen WZ, Tan SX, Wu YK contributed to the manuscript revision, and approval of the final manuscript.

Supported by The National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 81960503.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All the authors report having no relevant conflicts of interest for this article.

PRISMA 2009 Checklist statement: The authors have read the PRISMA 2009 Checklist, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the PRISMA 2009 Checklist.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Wen-Guang Pei 0000-0003-3028-4975; Zhi-Gang Jie 0000-0002-6369-7306.

S-Editor: Liu GL
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Liu GL

REFERENCES

1 **Sung H**, Ferlay J, Siegel RL, Laversanne M, Soerjomataram I, Jemal A, Bray F. Global Cancer Statistics 2020: GLOBOCAN Estimates of Incidence and Mortality Worldwide for 36 Cancers in 185 Countries. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2021; **71**: 209-249 [PMID: 33538338 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21660]
2 **He Y**, Wang Y, Luan F, Yu Z, Feng H, Chen B, Chen W. Chinese and global burdens of gastric cancer from 1990 to 2019. *Cancer Med* 2021; **10**: 3461-3473 [PMID: 33931958 DOI: 10.1002/cam4.3892]
3 **Bagchi S**, Yuan R, Engleman EG. Immune Checkpoint Inhibitors for the Treatment of Cancer: Clinical Impact and Mechanisms of Response and Resistance. *Annu Rev Pathol* 2021; **16**: 223-249 [PMID: 33197221 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-pathol-042020-042741]
4 **Karlsson AK**, Saleh SN. Checkpoint inhibitors for malignant melanoma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clin Cosmet Investig Dermatol* 2017; **10**: 325-339 [PMID: 28883738 DOI: 10.2147/CCID.S120877]
5 **Liu B**, Song Y, Liu D. Recent development in clinical applications of PD-1 and PD-L1 antibodies for cancer immunotherapy. *J Hematol Oncol* 2017; **10**: 174 [PMID: 29195503 DOI: 10.1186/s13045-017-0541-9]
6 **Gong J**, Chehrazi-Raffle A, Reddi S, Salgia R. Development of PD-1 and PD-L1 inhibitors as a form of cancer immunotherapy: a comprehensive review of registration trials and future considerations. *J Immunother Cancer* 2018; **6**: 8 [PMID: 29357948 DOI: 10.1186/s40425-018-0316-z]
7 **Alegre ML**, Noel PJ, Eisfelder BJ, Chuang E, Clark MR, Reiner SL, Thompson CB. Regulation of surface and intracellular expression of CTLA4 on mouse T cells. *J Immunol* 1996; **157**: 4762-4770 [PMID: 8943377]
8 **Takahashi T**, Tagami T, Yamazaki S, Uede T, Shimizu J, Sakaguchi N, Mak TW, Sakaguchi S. Immunologic self-tolerance maintained by CD25(+)CD4(+) regulatory T cells constitutively expressing cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen 4. *J Exp Med* 2000; **192**: 303-310 [PMID: 10899917 DOI: 10.1084/jem.192.2.303]
9 **Fuchs CS**, Doi T, Jang RW, Muro K, Satoh T, Machado M, Sun W, Jalal SI, Shah MA, Metges JP, Garrido M, Golan T, Mandala M, Wainberg ZA, Catenacci DV, Ohtsu A, Shitara K, Geva R, Bleeker J, Ko AH, Ku G, Philip P, Enzinger PC, Bang YJ, Levitan D, Wang J, Rosales M, Dalal RP, Yoon HH. Safety and Efficacy of Pembrolizumab Monotherapy in Patients With Previously Treated Advanced Gastric and Gastroesophageal Junction Cancer: Phase 2 Clinical KEYNOTE-059 Trial. *JAMA Oncol* 2018; **4**: e180013 [PMID: 29543932 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2018.0013]
10 **Postow MA**, Sidlow R, Hellmann MD. Immune-Related Adverse Events Associated with Immune Checkpoint Blockade. *N Engl J Med* 2018; **378**: 158-168 [PMID: 29320654 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra1703481]
11 **Baumann N**. How to use the medical subject headings (MeSH). *Int J Clin Pract* 2016; **70**: 171-174 [PMID: 26763799 DOI: 10.1111/ijcp.12767]

12 **Knobloch K**, Yoon U, Vogt PM. Preferred reporting items for systematic reviews and meta-analyses (PRISMA) statement and publication bias. *J Craniomaxillofac Surg* 2011; **39**: 91-92 [PMID: 21145753 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcms.2010.11.001]

13 **Higgins JP**, Altman DG, Gøtzsche PC, Jüni P, Moher D, Oxman AD, Savovic J, Schulz KF, Weeks L, Sterne JA; Cochrane Bias Methods Group; Cochrane Statistical Methods Group. The Cochrane Collaboration's tool for assessing risk of bias in randomised trials. *BMJ* 2011; **343**: d5928 [PMID: 22008217 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.d5928]

14 **Chaimani A**, Mavridis D, Salanti G. A hands-on practical tutorial on performing meta-analysis with Stata. *Evid Based Ment Health* 2014; **17**: 111-116 [PMID: 25288685 DOI: 10.1136/eb-2014-101967]

15 **Higgins JP**, Thompson SG, Deeks JJ, Altman DG. Measuring inconsistency in meta-analyses. *BMJ* 2003; **327**: 557-560 [PMID: 12958120 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.327.7414.557]

16 **Nikolakopoulou A**, Mavridis D, Salanti G. Demystifying fixed and random effects meta-analysis. *Evid Based Ment Health* 2014; **17**: 53-57 [PMID: 24692250 DOI: 10.1136/eb-2014-101795]

17 **Shitara K**, Özgüroğlu M, Bang YJ, Di Bartolomeo M, Mandalà M, Ryu MH, Fornaro L, Olesiński T, Caglevic C, Chung HC, Muro K, Goekkurt E, Mansoor W, McDermott RS, Shacham-Shmueli E, Chen X, Mayo C, Kang SP, Ohtsu A, Fuchs CS; KEYNOTE-061 investigators. Pembrolizumab versus paclitaxel for previously treated, advanced gastric or gastro-oesophageal junction cancer (KEYNOTE-061): a randomised, open-label, controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet* 2018; **392**: 123-133 [PMID: 29880231 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(18)31257-1]

18 **Fuchs CS**, Özgüroğlu M, Bang YJ, Di Bartolomeo M, Mandala M, Ryu MH, Fornaro L, Olesinski T, Caglevic C, Chung HC, Muro K, Van Cutsem E, Elme A, Thuss-Patience P, Chau I, Ohtsu A, Bhagia P, Wang A, Shih CS, Shitara K. Pembrolizumab versus paclitaxel for previously treated PD-L1-positive advanced gastric or gastroesophageal junction cancer: 2-year update of the randomized phase 3 KEYNOTE-061 trial. *Gastric Cancer* 2022; **25**: 197-206 [PMID: 34468869 DOI: 10.1007/s10120-021-01227-z]

19 **Moehler M**, Dvorkin M, Boku N, Özgüroğlu M, Ryu MH, Muntean AS, Lonardi S, Nechaeva M, Bragagnoli AC, Coşkun HS, Cubillo Gracian A, Takano T, Wong R, Safran H, Vaccaro GM, Wainberg ZA, Silver MR, Xiong H, Hong J, Taieb J, Bang YJ. Phase III Trial of Avelumab Maintenance After First-Line Induction Chemotherapy Versus Continuation of Chemotherapy in Patients With Gastric Cancers: Results From JAVELIN Gastric 100. *J Clin Oncol* 2021; **39**: 966-977 [PMID: 33197226 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.20.00892]

20 **Doi T**, Iwasa S, Muro K, Satoh T, Hironaka S, Esaki T, Nishina T, Hara H, Machida N, Komatsu Y, Shimada Y, Otsu S, Shimizu S, Watanabe M. Phase 1 trial of avelumab (anti-PD-L1) in Japanese patients with advanced solid tumors, including dose expansion in patients with gastric or gastroesophageal junction cancer: the JAVELIN Solid Tumor JPN trial. *Gastric Cancer* 2019; **22**: 817-827 [PMID: 30515672 DOI: 10.1007/s10120-018-0903-1]

21 **Doi T**, Iwasa S, Muro K, Satoh T, Hironaka S, Esaki T, Nishina T, Hara H, Machida N, Komatsu Y, Shimada Y, Otsu S, Shimizu S, Chand V, Watanabe M. Avelumab (anti-PD-L1) in Japanese patients with advanced gastric or gastroesophageal junction cancer (GC/GEJC): Updated results from the phase Ib JAVELIN solid tumour JPN trial. *Ann Oncol* 2018; **21**: viii205-viii270 [DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdy282]

22 **Chung HC**, Arkenau HT, Lee J, Rha SY, Oh DY, Wyrwicz L, Kang YK, Lee KW, Infante JR, Lee SS, Kemeny M, Keilholz U, Melichar B, Mita A, Plummer R, Smith D, Gelb AB, Xiong H, Hong J, Chand V, Safran H. Avelumab (anti-PD-L1) as first-line switch-maintenance or second-line therapy in patients with advanced gastric or gastroesophageal junction cancer: phase 1b results from the JAVELIN Solid Tumor trial. *J Immunother Cancer* 2019; **7**: 30 [PMID: 30717797 DOI: 10.1186/s40425-019-0508-1]

23 **Bang YJ**, Ruiz EY, Van Cutsem E, Lee KW, Wyrwicz L, Schenker M, Alsina M, Ryu MH, Chung HC, Evesque L, Al-Batran SE, Park SH, Lichinitser M, Boku N, Moehler MH, Hong J, Xiong H, Hallwachs R, Conti I, Taieb J. Phase III, randomised trial of avelumab versus physician's choice of chemotherapy as third-line treatment of patients with advanced gastric or gastro-oesophageal junction cancer: primary analysis of JAVELIN Gastric 300. *Ann Oncol* 2018; **29**: 2052-2060 [PMID: 30052729 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdy264]

24 **Bang YJ**, Cho JY, Kim YH, Kim JW, Di Bartolomeo M, Ajani JA, Yamaguchi K, Balogh A, Sanchez T, Moehler M. Efficacy of Sequential Ipilimumab Monotherapy versus Best Supportive Care for Unresectable Locally Advanced/Metastatic Gastric or Gastroesophageal Junction Cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2017; **23**: 5671-5678 [PMID: 28655793 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-17-0025]

25 **Besaw RJ**, Smith MP, Zerillo JA, Bullock AJ. Chronic intestinal pseudo-obstruction in a patient with metastatic gastro-oesophageal junction cancer receiving treatment with pembrolizumab. *BMJ Case Rep* 2019; **12** [PMID: 31843780 DOI: 10.1136/bcr-2019-232388]

26 **Ai L**, Gao J, Zhao S, Li Q, Cui YH, Liu Q, Wu D, Wang Y, Jin X, Ji Y, Li J, Yu Y, Liu T. Nivolumab-associated DRESS in a genetic susceptible individual. *J Immunother Cancer* 2021; **9** [PMID: 34599025 DOI: 10.1136/jitc-2021-002879]

27 **Higashi T**, Miyamoto H, Yoshida R, Furuta Y, Nagaoka K, Naoe H, Naito H, Nakayama H, Tanaka M. Sjögren's Syndrome as an Immune-related Adverse Event of Nivolumab Treatment for Gastric Cancer. *Intern Med* 2020; **59**: 2499-2504 [PMID: 32581160 DOI: 10.2169/internalmedicine.4701-20]

28 **Kimura A**, Sakai D, Kudo T, Nishida N, Katou A, Inagaki C, Otsuru T, Miyazaki Y, Tanaka K, Makino T, Takahashi T, Kurokawa Y, Yamasaki M, Mori M, Doki Y, Satoh T. Nivolumab-induced interstitial lung disease in a patient with gastric cancer. *Oxf Med Case Reports* 2019; **2019**: omz007 [PMID: 30863551 DOI: 10.1093/omcr/omz007]

29 **Maetani Y**, Nezu T, Ueno H, Aoki S, Hosomi N, Maruyama H. Steroid-responsive Nivolumab-induced Involuntary Movement with Anti-thyroid Antibodies. *Intern Med* 2019; **58**: 3577-3581 [PMID: 31462589 DOI: 10.2169/internalmedicine.3200-19]

30 **Namikawa T**, Shimizu S, Yokota K, Tanioka N, Fukudome I, Munekage M, Uemura S, Maeda H, Kitagawa H, Hanazaki K. Isolated adrenocorticotropic hormone deficiency induced by nivolumab treatment for advanced gastric cancer. *Clin J Gastroenterol* 2021; **14**: 988-993 [PMID: 33715100 DOI: 10.1007/s12328-021-01384-9]

31 **Ohara N**, Kobayashi M, Ikeda Y, Hoshi T, Morita S, Kanefuji T, Yagi K, Suda T, Takada T, Hasegawa G, Sato Y, Hirano K, Kosugi SI. Non-insulin-dependent Diabetes Mellitus Induced by Immune Checkpoint Inhibitor Therapy in an Insulinoma-associated Antigen-2 Autoantibody-positive Patient with Advanced Gastric Cancer. *Intern Med* 2020; **59**: 551-556 [PMID: 31708539 DOI: 10.2169/internalmedicine.3208-19]

32 **Sawada K**, Shonaka T, Nishikawa Y, Hasegawa K, Hayashi H, Hasebe T, Nakajima S, Ikuta K, Fujiya M, Furukawa H, Okumura T. Successful Treatment of Nivolumab-related Cholangitis with Prednisolone: A Case Report and Review of the Literature. *Intern Med* 2019; **58**: 1747-1752 [PMID: 30799364 DOI: 10.2169/internalmedicine.2330-18]

33 **Shiraishi K**, Tokoro Y, Kanai Y, Hayashi F, Marusawa H, Kanaya S, Tsumura T. [A Case of Gastric Cancer with Pericardial Effusion as an Immune-Reactive Adverse Events]. *Gan To Kagaku Ryoho* 2020; **47**: 1237-1240 [PMID: 32829363]

34 **Taira K**, Kimura A, Nakata A, Nadatani Y, Fukunaga S, Otani K, Hosomi S, Tanaka F, Kamata N, Nagami Y, Watanabe T, Fujiwara Y. A case of nivolumab-induced cervical lymphadenopathy in a patient with gastric cancer. *J Gastrointest Oncol* 2021; **12**: 880-884 [PMID: 34012675 DOI: 10.21037/jgo-20-315]

35 **Takeda Y**, Kubota T, Choda Y, Toi Y, Ichimura K, Ishida M, Yano T, Sato D, Yoshimitsu M, Nakano K, Harano M, Matsukawa H, Idani H, Shiozaki S, Okajima M. [Two Cases of Stevens-Johnson Syndrome after Nivolumab Therapy for Gastric Cancer]. *Gan To Kagaku Ryoho* 2021; **48**: 154-156 [PMID: 33468752]

36 **Tanabe K**, Kanzaki H, Wada T, Nakashima Y, Sugiyama H, Okada H, Wada J. Nivolumab-induced IgA nephropathy in a patient with advanced gastric cancer: A case report. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2020; **99**: e20464 [PMID: 32481351 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000020464]

37 **Yamada H**, Okajima F, Onda T, Fujimori S, Emoto N, Sugihara H. New-onset graves' disease after the initiation of nivolumab therapy for gastric cancer: a case report. *BMC Endocr Disord* 2020; **20**: 132 [PMID: 32847555 DOI: 10.1186/s12902-020-00613-5]

38 **Yatsuda Y**, Hirose S, Ito Y, Onoda T, Sugiyama Y, Nagafuchi M, Suzuki H, Niisato Y, Tange Y, Ikeda T, Yamada T, Yamamoto Y, Ohyama Osawa M, Sakamoto N, Moriwaki T, Mizokami Y. A Durable Response after the Discontinuation of Nivolumab in an Advanced Gastric Cancer Patient. *Intern Med* 2021; **60**: 1011-1017 [PMID: 33162479 DOI: 10.2169/internalmedicine.5893-20]

39 **Ando T**, Ueda A, Ogawa K, Motoo I, Kajiura S, Nakajima T, Hirano K, Okumura T, Tsukada K, Hara T, Suzuki N, Nakada N, Horikawa N, Fujii T, Yasuda I. Prognosis of Immune-related Adverse Events in Patients With Advanced Gastric Cancer Treated With Nivolumab or Pembrolizumab: A Multicenter Retrospective Analysis. *In Vivo* 2021; **35**: 475-482 [PMID: 33402499 DOI: 10.21873/invivo.12281]

40 **Booka E**, Kikuchi H, Haneda R, Soneda W, Kawata S, Murakami T, Matsumoto T, Hiramatsu Y, Takeuchi H. Impact of Immune-related Adverse Events on Nivolumab Efficacy in Patients With Upper Gastrointestinal Cancer. *In Vivo* 2021; **35**: 2321-2326 [PMID: 34182512 DOI: 10.21873/invivo.12506]

41 **Kono Y**, Choda Y, Nakagawa M, Miyahara K, Ishida M, Kubota T, Seo K, Hirata T, Obayashi Y, Gotoda T, Moritou Y, Okikawa Y, Iwamoto Y, Okada H. Association Between Immune-Related Adverse Events and the Prognosis of Patients with Advanced Gastric Cancer Treated with Nivolumab. *Target Oncol* 2021; **16**: 237-248 [PMID: 33475927 DOI: 10.1007/s11523-021-00790-w]

42 **Namikawa T**, Yokota K, Tanioka N, Fukudome I, Iwabu J, Munekage M, Uemura S, Maeda H, Kitagawa H, Kobayashi M, Hanazaki K. Systemic inflammatory response and nutritional biomarkers as predictors of nivolumab efficacy for gastric cancer. *Surg Today* 2020; **50**: 1486-1495 [PMID: 32542414 DOI: 10.1007/s00595-020-02048-w]

43 **Ohta A**, Komatsu S, Tsuji R, Tanaka S, Kumano T, Imura K, Shimomura K, Ikeda J, Taniguchi F, Doi T, Yamada S, Tomatsuri N, Yoshida N, Shioaki Y. [Clinical Evaluation of the Efficacy and Adverse Effects of Nivolumab Treatment for Patients with Advanced Gastric Cancer]. *Gan To Kagaku Ryoho* 2020; **47**: 725-727 [PMID: 32389997]

44 **Suzuki H**, Yamada T, Sugaya A, Ueyama S, Yamamoto Y, Moriwaki T, Hyodo I. Retrospective analysis for the efficacy and safety of nivolumab in advanced gastric cancer patients according to ascites burden. *Int J Clin Oncol* 2021; **26**: 370-377 [PMID: 33090284 DOI: 10.1007/s10147-020-01810-x]

45 **Huang YF**, Xie WJ, Fan HY, Du J. Comparative Safety of PD-1/PD-L1 Inhibitors for Cancer Patients: Systematic Review and Network Meta-Analysis. *Front Oncol* 2019; **9**: 972 [PMID: 31632907 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2019.00972]

46 **Bertrand A**, Kostine M, Barnetche T, Truchetet ME, Schaeverbeke T. Immune related adverse events associated with anti-CTLA-4 antibodies: systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMC Med* 2015; **13**: 211 [PMID: 26337719 DOI: 10.1186/s12916-015-0455-8]

47 **Dall'Olio FG**, Rizzo A, Mollica V, Massucci M, Maggio I, Massari F. Immortal time bias in the association between toxicity and response for immune checkpoint inhibitors: a meta-analysis. *Immunotherapy* 2021; **13**: 257-270 [PMID: 33225800 DOI: 10.2217/imt-2020-0179]

48 **Chen C**, Zhang F, Zhou N, Gu YM, Zhang YT, He YD, Wang L, Yang LX, Zhao Y, Li YM. Efficacy and safety of immune checkpoint inhibitors in advanced gastric or gastroesophageal junction cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Oncoimmunology* 2019; **8**: e1581547 [PMID: 31069144 DOI: 10.1080/2162402X.2019.1581547]

49 **Muir CA**, Clifton-Bligh RJ, Long GV, Scolyer RA, Lo SN, Carlino MS, Tsang VHM, Menzies AM. Thyroid Immune-related Adverse Events Following Immune Checkpoint Inhibitor Treatment. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2021; **106**: e3704-e3713 [PMID: 33878162 DOI: 10.1210/clinem/dgab263]

50 **Faje AT**, Lawrence D, Flaherty K, Freedman C, Fadden R, Rubin K, Cohen J, Sullivan RJ. High-dose glucocorticoids for the treatment of ipilimumab-induced hypophysitis is associated with reduced survival in patients with melanoma. *Cancer* 2018; **124**: 3706-3714 [PMID: 29975414 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.31629]

51 **Arbour KC**, Mezquita L, Long N, Rizvi H, Auclin E, Ni A, Martínez-Bernal G, Ferrara R, Lai WV, Hendriks LEL, Sabari JK, Caramella C, Plodkowski AJ, Halpenny D, Chaft JE, Planchard D, Riely GJ, Besse B, Hellmann MD. Impact of Baseline Steroids on Efficacy of Programmed Cell Death-1 and Programmed Death-Ligand 1 Blockade in Patients With Non-Small-Cell Lung Cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2018; **36**: 2872-2878 [PMID: 30125216 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2018.79.0006]

52 **Ricciuti B**, Genova C, De Giglio A, Bassanelli M, Dal Bello MG, Metro G, Brambilla M, Baglivo S, Grossi F, Chiari R. Impact of immune-related adverse events on survival in patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer treated with nivolumab: long-term outcomes from a multi-institutional analysis. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 2019; **145**: 479-485 [PMID: 30506406 DOI: 10.1007/s00432-018-2805-3]

53 **Zhong L**, Wu Q, Chen F, Liu J, Xie X. Immune-related adverse events: promising predictors for efficacy of immune checkpoint inhibitors. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2021; **70**: 2559-2576 [PMID: 33576872 DOI:

10.1007/s00262-020-02803-5]

54 **Wang DY**, Salem JE, Cohen JV, Chandra S, Menzer C, Ye F, Zhao S, Das S, Beckermann KE, Ha L, Rathmell WK, Ancell KK, Balko JM, Bowman C, Davis EJ, Chism DD, Horn L, Long GV, Carlino MS, Lebrun-Vignes B, Eroglu Z, Hassel JC, Menzies AM, Sosman JA, Sullivan RJ, Moslehi JJ, Johnson DB. Fatal Toxic Effects Associated With Immune Checkpoint Inhibitors: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. *JAMA Oncol* 2018; **4**: 1721-1728 [PMID: 30242316 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2018.3923]

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2023 February 15; 15(2): 368-371

DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.368

ISSN 1948-5204 (online)

LETTER TO THE EDITOR

Comment on "Crosstalk between gut microbiota and COVID-19 impacts pancreatic cancer progression"

Jian Yang, Ying Liu, Shi Liu

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Mahmoud MZ, Saudi Arabia; Masyeni S, Indonesia

Received: November 19, 2022
Peer-review started: November 19, 2022
First decision: December 25, 2022
Revised: January 3, 2023
Accepted: February 2, 2023
Article in press: February 2, 2023
Published online: February 15, 2023

Jian Yang, Shi Liu, Central Laboratory, The Third Affiliated Hospital, Qiqihar Medical University, Qiqihar 161000, Heilongjiang Province, China

Ying Liu, Department of Medical Oncology, The Third Affiliated Hospital, Qiqihar Medical University, Qiqihar 161000, Heilongjiang Province, China

Corresponding author: Shi Liu, PhD, Chief Physician, Central Laboratory, the Third Affiliated Hospital, Qiqihar Medical University, No. 27 Taishun Street, Tiefeng District, Qiqihar 161000, Heilongjiang Province, China. shiliu2199@163.com

Abstract

The coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic has become a global burden, further exacerbating the occurrence of risk events in cancer patients. The high risk of death from pancreatic cancer makes it one of the most lethal malignancies. Recently, it was reported in the *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology* that COVID-19 influences pancreatic cancer progression *via* the lung–gut–pancreatic axis, and the authors provided insights into the intrinsic crosstalk mechanisms in which the gut microbiota is involved, the characteristics and effects of inflammatory factors, and immunotherapeutic strategies for treating both diseases. Here, we review the latest cutting-edge researches in the field of the lung-gut-pancreatic axis and discuss future perspectives to address the severe survival challenges posed by the COVID-19 pandemic in patients with pancreatic cancer.

Key Words: COVID-19; Pancreatic cancer; Lung–gut–pancreatic axis; Gut microbiota; Inflammatory factors; Immunotherapeutic

©The Author(s) 2023. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

Core Tip: The coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic has become a global burden, further exacerbating the occurrence of mortality risk events in patients with pancreatic cancer. The aim of this new article is to highlight the need for lung-gut-pancreatic axis-based studies with a focus on intra-axis microbiota crosstalk and potential mechanisms of association to address the severe survival challenges posed by the COVID-19 pandemic in patients with pancreatic cancer.

Citation: Yang J, Liu Y, Liu S. Comment on "Crosstalk between gut microbiota and COVID-19 impacts pancreatic cancer progression". *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2023; 15(2): 368-371
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5204/full/v15/i2/368.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4251/wjgo.v15.i2.368

TO THE EDITOR

The coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic has become a global burden, further exacerbating the occurrence of risk events in patients with cancer[1,2]. Contracting COVID-19 significantly increases the risk of morbidity, mortality, and ICU admission in patients with cancer[3]. Additionally, cancer patients have a 60% increased risk of contracting COVID-19 compared with patients without cancer[4]. Owing to the worsening disease and poorer prognosis resulting from COVID-19 in patients with cancer, this patient group is considered a high-risk vulnerable population[5]. The high risk of death from pancreatic cancer makes it one of the most lethal malignancies[6], and the COVID-19 pandemic not only poses a survival challenge for patients with pancreatic cancer but also seriously threatens the execution of pancreatic cancer research[7]. We are very interested in the review by Zhang *et al*[8] published in the August 2022 issue of the *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Oncology*. We consider it to be a good quality review because the authors included in their article many articles from international high-quality journals, such as *Lancet, JAMA, Nature*, and *Cell*, and the article conclusions accurately and clearly summarize the findings of the included literature. From the 98 literature reviews included by the authors, they identified a key connector between COVID-19 and pancreatic cancer; that is, the gut microbiota regulates the host systemic immune response. The question highlighted by Zhang *et al*[8] is how COVID-19 affects pancreatic cancer progression, *i.e.*, *via* the lung–gut–pancreatic axis, and the authors explained the physiological basis, relevance, and potential biological mechanisms of targeting this axis. The novelty of the article is that, the authors highlight therapeutic perspectives in response to COVID-19 and pancreatic cancer based on the intrinsically linked mechanisms of the lung-gut-pancreatic axis, including dietary interventions to stabilize the endostasis of the intestinal flora, the therapeutic efficacy of pharmacological interventions, and strategies to manage inflammatory storms. We thank Zhang *et al*[8] for their review, which has been instrumental in exploring pancreatic cancer treatment options and the development of risk event prevention programs in the context of the severe challenges of the COVID-19 pandemic.

Regional citrate anticoagulation (RCA) is an artificial intelligence technology-based open multidisciplinary citation analysis database. We searched the RCA database for articles in cutting-edge fields in the last 2 years using the search terms "COVID-19", "pancreatic cancer", and "gut microbiota". In addition to highlighting that the gut microbiota regulates immune and inflammatory responses to influence disease severity in COVID-19 and pancreatic cancer[9,10], recent studies have revealed a complex intrinsic association between the three. Current studies indicate that the microbiota alters the malignant phenotype and prognosis of pancreatic cancer in ways that include stimulating persistent inflammation, altering the tumor microenvironment, modulating the anti-tumor immune system, and affecting cellular metabolism[11]. The emerging link between the gut microbiota and pancreatic cancer has recently highlighted the concept of local (direct pancreatic effects) and remote (non-pancreatic) effects of bacteria on organ physiology, which offers potential therapeutic options for pancreatic cancer[12]. However, research on the microbiota influencing pancreatic cancer progression has focused mainly on bacteria, and studies involving intestinal fungi and viruses are just starting to be published[12]. Future work on how these gut microbes are intrinsically linked and on the exact mechanisms by which they influence pancreatic cancer progression is needed. The latest cutting-edge research has bridged the gap between COVID-19 and the gut microbiota, discovering mechanisms that link the gut microbiota to the expression of the viral entry receptor angiotensin-converting enzyme 2 (ACE2)[13], the inflammatory response[14], the immune homeostasis[15], the microbiota metabolism[16], and the "gut–lung axis"[17]. In COVID-19, the main factor associated with disease severity is the involvement of a cytokine storm in the immune response, *i.e.*, tissue damage and systemic inflammation[13]. The gut microbiota may influence the severity of COVID-19 by regulating the host immune response[18]. However, it is unclear whether the reported gut microbial changes are directly responsible for the inflammatory storm in patients with COVID-19 or if they represent the result of severe disease[19], and future studies investigating these possibilities are pending. Zhang *et al*[8] reported that the inflammation-induced immune response is an intrinsic mechanism through which the lung–gut–pancreatic axis produces crosstalk between COVID-19 and pancreatic cancer. On the basis of this mechanism, the authors proposed some strategies on how to manage COVID-19 and pancreatic cancer, including the regulation of microbiota homeostasis to improve patient immunity and the application of anti-inflammatory drugs to reduce the amount of inflammatory damage[8]. However, the survival outcomes of applying these strategies for treating COVID-19 and pancreatic cancer co-morbidity and the effectiveness of such strategies during radiotherapy are not yet known. Future studies could focus on these issues. In conclusion, COVID-19 impacts pancreatic cancer progression based on lung–gut–pancreatic axis, nevertheless, more studies

investigating the potential mechanisms of the crosstalk between COVID-19, pancreatic cancer and gut microbiota are needed in patients with COVID-19 and pancreatic cancer co-morbidity to achieve a better management. Focusing on the lung-gut-pancreatic axis is expected to move us into a new paradigm of treatment for COVID-19 in patients with pancreatic cancer.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Yang J designed and wrote this report; Liu S gave guidance on article revision; Liu Y reviewed the literature and contributed to drafting the manuscript; all authors issued final approval for the version to be submitted.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All the authors report no relevant conflicts of interest for this article.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article that was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution NonCommercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: https://creativecommons.org/Licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Jian Yang 0000-0002-5282-1383; Ying Liu 0000-0002-7461-0691; Shi Liu 0000-0001-6959-6904.

S-Editor: Xing YX
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Xing YX

REFERENCES

1 **Kuderer NM**, Choueiri TK, Shah DP, Shyr Y, Rubinstein SM, Rivera DR, Shete S, Hsu CY, Desai A, de Lima Lopes G Jr, Grivas P, Painter CA, Peters S, Thompson MA, Bakouny Z, Batist G, Bekaii-Saab T, Bilen MA, Bouganim N, Larroya MB, Castellano D, Del Prete SA, Doroshow DB, Egan PC, Elkrief A, Farmakiotis D, Flora D, Galsky MD, Glover MJ, Griffiths EA, Gulati AP, Gupta S, Hafez N, Halfdanarson TR, Hawley JE, Hsu E, Kasi A, Khaki AR, Lemmon CA, Lewis C, Logan B, Masters T, McKay RR, Mesa RA, Morgans AK, Mulcahy MF, Panagiotou OA, Peddi P, Pennell NA, Reynolds K, Rosen LR, Rosovsky R, Salazar M, Schmidt A, Shah SA, Shaya JA, Steinharter J, Stockerl-Goldstein KE, Subbiah S, Vinh DC, Wehbe FH, Weissmann LB, Wu JT, Wulff-Burchfield E, Xie Z, Yeh A, Yu PP, Zhou AY, Zubiri L, Mishra S, Lyman GH, Rini BI, Warner JL; COVID-19 and Cancer Consortium. Clinical impact of COVID-19 on patients with cancer (CCC19): a cohort study. *Lancet* 2020; **395**: 1907-1918 [PMID: 32473681 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)31187-9]

2 **Lee LY**, Cazier JB, Angelis V, Arnold R, Bisht V, Campton NA, Chackathayil J, Cheng VW, Curley HM, Fittall MW, Freeman-Mills L, Gennatas S, Goel A, Hartley S, Hughes DJ, Kerr D, Lee AJ, Lee RJ, McGrath SE, Middleton CP, Murugaesu N, Newsom-Davis T, Okines AF, Olsson-Brown AC, Palles C, Pan Y, Pettengell R, Powles T, Protheroe EA, Purshouse K, Sharma-Oates A, Sivakumar S, Smith AJ, Starkey T, Turnbull CD, Várnai C, Yousaf N; UK Coronavirus Monitoring Project Team, Kerr R, Middleton G. COVID-19 mortality in patients with cancer on chemotherapy or other anticancer treatments: a prospective cohort study. *Lancet* 2020; **395**: 1919-1926 [PMID: 32473682 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(20)31173-9]

3 **Arayici ME**, Kipcak N, Kayacik U, Kelbat C, Keskin D, Kilicarslan ME, Kilinc AV, Kirgoz S, Kirilmaz A, Kizilkaya MA, Kizmaz IG, Kocak EB, Kochan E, Kocpinar B, Kordon F, Kurt B, Ellidokuz H. Effects of SARS-CoV-2 infections in patients with cancer on mortality, ICU admission and incidence: a systematic review with meta-analysis involving 709,908 participants and 31,732 cancer patients. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 2022; 1-14 [PMID: 35831763 DOI: 10.1007/s00432-022-04191-y]

4 **Lee KA**, Ma W, Sikavi DR, Drew DA, Nguyen LH, Bowyer RCE, Cardoso MJ, Fall T, Freidin MB, Gomez M, Graham M, Guo CG, Joshi AD, Kwon S, Lo CH, Lochlainn MN, Menni C, Murray B, Mehta R, Song M, Sudre CH, Bataille V, Varsavsky T, Visconti A, Franks PW, Wolf J, Steves CJ, Ourselin S, Spector TD, Chan AT; COPE consortium. Cancer and Risk of COVID-19 Through a General Community Survey. *Oncologist* 2021; **26**: e182-e185 [PMID: 32845538 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2020-0572]

5 **Zhang L**, Zhu F, Xie L, Wang C, Wang J, Chen R, Jia P, Guan HQ, Peng L, Chen Y, Peng P, Zhang P, Chu Q, Shen Q, Wang Y, Xu SY, Zhao JP, Zhou M. Clinical characteristics of COVID-19-infected cancer patients: a retrospective case study in three hospitals within Wuhan, China. *Ann Oncol* 2020; **31**: 894-901 [PMID: 32224151 DOI: 10.1016/j.annonc.2020.03.296]

6 **Park W**, Chawla A, O'Reilly EM. Pancreatic Cancer: A Review. *JAMA* 2021; **326**: 851-862 [PMID: 34547082 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2021.13027]

7 **Casolino R**, Biankin AV; PanCaCovid-19 Study Group. Impact of COVID-19 on Pancreatic Cancer Research and the Path Forward. *Gastroenterology* 2021; **161**: 1758-1763 [PMID: 34389342 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2021.06.080]

8 **Zhang CY**, Liu S, Yang M. Crosstalk between gut microbiota and COVID-19 impacts pancreatic cancer progression.

World J Gastrointest Oncol 2022; **14**: 1456-1468 [PMID: 36160747 DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v14.i8.1456]

9 **Donlan AN**, Sutherland TE, Marie C, Preissner S, Bradley BT, Carpenter RM, Sturek JM, Ma JZ, Moreau GB, Donowitz JR, Buck GA, Serrano MG, Burgess SL, Abhyankar MM, Mura C, Bourne PE, Preissner R, Young MK, Lyons GR, Loomba JJ, Ratcliffe SJ, Poulter MD, Mathers AJ, Day AJ, Mann BJ, Allen JE, Petri WA Jr. IL-13 is a driver of COVID-19 severity. *JCI Insight* 2021; **6** [PMID: 34185704 DOI: 10.1172/jci.insight.150107]

10 **Moslim MA**, Hall MJ, Meyer JE, Reddy SS. Pancreatic cancer in the era of COVID-19 pandemic: Which one is the lesser of two evils? *World J Clin Oncol* 2021; **12**: 54-60 [PMID: 33680873 DOI: 10.5306/wjco.v12.i2.54]

11 **Chen Z**, Zhang S, Dong S, Xu H, Zhou W. Association of the Microbiota and Pancreatic Cancer: Opportunities and Limitations. *Front Immunol* 2022; **13**: 844401 [PMID: 35309293 DOI: 10.3389/fimmu.2022.844401]

12 **Thomas RM**, Jobin C. Microbiota in pancreatic health and disease: the next frontier in microbiome research. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **17**: 53-64 [PMID: 31811279 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-019-0242-7]

13 **Matheson NJ**, Lehner PJ. How does SARS-CoV-2 cause COVID-19? *Science* 2020; **369**: 510-511 [PMID: 32732413 DOI: 10.1126/science.abc6156]

14 **Del Valle DM**, Kim-Schulze S, Huang HH, Beckmann ND, Nirenberg S, Wang B, Lavin Y, Swartz TH, Madduri D, Stock A, Marron TU, Xie H, Patel M, Tuballes K, Van Oekelen O, Rahman A, Kovatch P, Aberg JA, Schadt E, Jagannath S, Mazumdar M, Charney AW, Firpo-Betancourt A, Mendu DR, Jhang J, Reich D, Sigel K, Cordon-Cardo C, Feldmann M, Parekh S, Merad M, Gnjatic S. An inflammatory cytokine signature predicts COVID-19 severity and survival. *Nat Med* 2020; **26**: 1636-1643 [PMID: 32839624 DOI: 10.1038/s41591-020-1051-9]

15 **Sun Z**, Song ZG, Liu C, Tan S, Lin S, Zhu J, Dai FH, Gao J, She JL, Mei Z, Lou T, Zheng JJ, Liu Y, He J, Zheng Y, Ding C, Qian F, Chen YM. Gut microbiome alterations and gut barrier dysfunction are associated with host immune homeostasis in COVID-19 patients. *BMC Med* 2022; **20**: 24 [PMID: 35045853 DOI: 10.1186/s12916-021-02212-0]

16 **Zhang F**, Wan Y, Zuo T, Yeoh YK, Liu Q, Zhang L, Zhan H, Lu W, Xu W, Lui GCY, Li AYL, Cheung CP, Wong CK, Chan PKS, Chan FKL, Ng SC. Prolonged Impairment of Short-Chain Fatty Acid and L-Isoleucine Biosynthesis in Gut Microbiome in Patients With COVID-19. *Gastroenterology* 2022; **162**: 548-561.e4 [PMID: 34687739 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2021.10.013]

17 **Zhang D**, Li S, Wang N, Tan HY, Zhang Z, Feng Y. The Cross-Talk Between Gut Microbiota and Lungs in Common Lung Diseases. *Front Microbiol* 2020; **11**: 301 [PMID: 32158441 DOI: 10.3389/fmicb.2020.00301]

18 **Yeoh YK**, Zuo T, Lui GC, Zhang F, Liu Q, Li AY, Chung AC, Cheung CP, Tso EY, Fung KS, Chan V, Ling L, Joynt G, Hui DS, Chow KM, Ng SSS, Li TC, Ng RW, Yip TC, Wong GL, Chan FK, Wong CK, Chan PK, Ng SC. Gut microbiota composition reflects disease severity and dysfunctional immune responses in patients with COVID-19. *Gut* 2021; **70**: 698-706 [PMID: 33431578 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2020-323020]

19 **Zhang F**, Lau RI, Liu Q, Su Q, Chan FKL, Ng SC. Gut microbiota in COVID-19: key microbial changes, potential mechanisms and clinical applications. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2022; 1-15 [PMID: 36271144 DOI: 10.1038/s41575-022-00698-4]

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
7041 Koll Center Parkway, Suite 160, Pleasanton, CA 94566, USA
Telephone: +1-925-3991568
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: https://www.f6publishing.com/helpdesk
https://www.wjgnet.com

© 2023 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.